



Lexmark CXx10 MFP

Machine Type 7527-2xx, -4xx, -63x

Service Manual

- **Start diagnostics**
- **Maintenance**
- **Safety and notices**
- **Trademarks**

Product information

Product name:

Lexmark CXx10 Series

Machine type:

7527

Model(s):

2xx, 4xx, 63x

Edition notice

December 2012

The following paragraph does not apply to any country where such provisions are inconsistent with local law: LEXMARK INTERNATIONAL, INC., PROVIDES THIS PUBLICATION "AS IS" WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. Some states do not allow disclaimer of express or implied warranties in certain transactions; therefore, this statement may not apply to you.

This publication could include technical inaccuracies or typographical errors. Changes are periodically made to the information herein; these changes will be incorporated in later editions. Improvements or changes in the products or the programs described may be made at any time.

References in this publication to products, programs, or services do not imply that the manufacturer intends to make these available in all countries in which it operates. Any reference to a product, program, or service is not intended to state or imply that only that product, program, or service may be used. Any functionally equivalent product, program, or service that does not infringe any existing intellectual property right may be used instead. Evaluation and verification of operation in conjunction with other products, programs, or services, except those expressly designated by the manufacturer, are the user's responsibility.

Trademarks

Lexmark, Lexmark with diamond design, and MarkNet are trademarks of Lexmark International, Inc., registered in the United States and/or other countries.

PrintCryption is a trademark of Lexmark International, Inc.

PCL® is a registered trademark of the Hewlett-Packard Company. PCL is Hewlett-Packard Company's designation of a set of printer commands (language) and functions included in its printer products. This printer is intended to be compatible with the PCL language. This means the printer recognizes PCL commands used in various application programs, and that the printer emulates the functions corresponding to the commands.

All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners.

© 2012 Lexmark International, Inc.

All rights reserved.

Contents

Product information.....	2
Edition notice.....	2
Notices and safety information.....	11
Laser notices.....	11
Safety.....	14
Preface.....	17
Service manual conventions.....	17
General information.....	18
Media guidelines.....	20
Characteristics that affect print quality	20
Unacceptable paper.....	21
Selecting paper	22
Selecting preprinted forms and letterhead	22
Using recycled paper and other office papers	22
Storing paper	23
Data security notice.....	23
Tools required for service.....	24
Diagnostic information.....	25
Troubleshooting overview.....	25
Performing the initial troubleshooting check	25
Error code number key	26
Power-on Reset (POR) sequence.....	26
Entering Safe Mode.....	26
Fixing print quality issues.....	27
Initial print quality check	27
Print quality toner rubs off service check	28
Print quality background service check	29
Print quality blank page service check.....	30
Print quality blurred or fuzzy print service check	31
Print quality half-color page service check	32
Print quality horizontal banding service check	32
Print quality horizontal line service check	32
Print quality missing image at edge service check.....	33

Print quality mottle (2-5 mm speckles) service check	33
Print quality narrow vertical line service check	33
Print quality random marks service check	33
Print quality residual image service check	34
Print quality solid color page service check	35
Print quality vertical banding service check	35
Print quality light print on solids service check	35
Print quality color problems service check	36
Paper jams	36
Understanding jam numbers and locations	36
Clearing jams	36
200 paper jams	39
200.xx Input (S2) sensor service check	41
202 paper jams	42
202.xx fuser exit sensor service check	47
203 paper jams	49
230 paper jams	52
230.xx Duplex/manual feed sensor (S1) service check	53
232 paper jams	56
242 paper jams	57
243 paper jams	58
244 paper jams	59
250 paper jams	60
28x.xx paper jams	62
29x.xx paper jams	64
xxx.xx paper jams	65
User messages	66
Understanding the printer messages	66
Service errors	74
1xx service error messages	75
110.xx Printhead service check	81
121.xx Fuser service check	82
133.xx Toner meter sensors (Y, C, M, K) on TMC card service check	86
141.xx—Cartridge motor error service check	88
147.xx Paper pick motor drive assembly service check	90
171.xx Fan error service check	92
84x.xx service error messages	93
840.xx service check	94
843.xx service check	95
ADF service check	96
Flatbed legal scan service check	97
9xx service error messages	98
900.xx System software error service check	102
91x.xx (910.xx-919.xx) Engine software service check	106

950.xx NVRAM failure service check.....	106
Network service check.....	108
Symptoms.....	110
Base printer symptoms.....	111
Narrow media sensor service check.....	112
Toner meter cycle (TMC) card service check.....	114
Dead printer service check.....	114
Front door sensor or switches service check.....	116
Operator panel (display is dim and unchanging) service check.....	120
Operator panel (displays all diamonds, no beeps, or five beeps) service check.....	122
Operator panel (display blank) service check.....	124
Operator panel (one or more operator panel buttons fail) service check.....	126
Operator panel USB cable service check.....	128
USB service check.....	128
550-sheet and 650-sheet trays input option symptoms.....	129
Trays 2 and 3 (optional) service check.....	129
Tray 2 service check.....	131
Tray (x) sensor service check.....	131
550 and 650 input option service check.....	132
Scan/fax/copy symptoms.....	134
Black or blank page copy service check.....	135
CCD service check.....	135
Flatbed motor service check.....	136
Flatbed home position service check.....	136
ADF cover open service check.....	137
ADF streak service check.....	138
ADF paper jam service check.....	138
ADF feed errors service check.....	140
ADF duplex service check.....	141
Modem/fax card service check.....	142
Fax reception service check.....	143
Fax transmission service check.....	145
Fax error log codes.....	147
Escalating a fax issue to second-level support.....	151
Service menus.....	152
Understanding the operator panel and menus.....	152
Using the operator panel for CX310.....	152
Using the operator panel for CX410 models.....	153
Using the operator panel for CX510 models.....	154
understanding-the-lights.....	154
understanding-the-home-screen-for-middle-and-high-models.....	155
Understanding the scanner.....	157
understanding-scanner-functions.....	157

Diagnostics menu.....	158
Entering diagnostics mode	159
Available tests.....	159
REGISTRATION	161
Skew.....	163
Quick Test	163
Alignment Menu	165
Scanner calibration	165
MISC TESTS	166
PRINT TESTS	167
Print quality test pages	168
HARDWARE TESTS	168
DUPLEX TESTS	169
INPUT TRAY TESTS	172
BASE SENSOR TEST.....	173
DEVICE TESTS.....	174
PRINTER SETUP	174
EP SETUP	177
TPS Setup: Right or Left	178
TPS Setup: Cal Ref Adj.....	178
TPS Setup: Reset Color Cal.....	178
Reports: Menu Settings Page.....	179
EVENT LOG.....	179
Scanner tests.....	180
Exit Diagnostics	185
Configuration menu.....	185
Entering configuration mode.....	186
Available tests.....	186
Action for prompts.....	187
ADF Edge Erase	187
Size sensing.....	188
Print Quality Pages.....	188
Color Trapping	188
Reports	189
Panel Menus	189
PPDS Emulation	189
Download emuls	189
Safe Mode.....	189
Demo Mode.....	190
Factory Defaults.....	190
Energy Conserve	191
Fax low power support	191
Min copy memory.....	191
Num pad job assist.....	191

Format fax storage.....	191
Flatbed edge erase.....	192
Scanner manual registration.....	192
Disable scanner.....	193
Auto Color Adjustment.....	193
Font Sharpening.....	194
Exit Config.....	194
Entering invalid engine mode.....	194
Entering recovery mode.....	194
Accessing the Network SE menu.....	194
Accessing the service engineer (SE) menu.....	195
Accessing the fax SE menu.....	195
Repair information.....	196
Removal precautions.....	196
Handling ESD-sensitive parts.....	196
Controller board/control panel replacement.....	197
eSF solutions backup.....	197
Ribbon cable connectors.....	198
Zero Insertion Force (ZIF) connectors.....	198
Horizontal top contact connector.....	199
Horizontal bottom contact connector.....	202
Vertical mount contact connector.....	205
Horizontal sliding contact connector.....	208
Low Insertion Force (LIF) connector.....	211
Removal procedures.....	212
Cover removals.....	212
Output bin tray and exit bail removal.....	213
Front cover assembly removal.....	214
Front middle cover removal.....	216
Left cover assembly removal.....	216
Rear cover removal.....	218
Rear scanner cover removal.....	219
Right cover assembly removal.....	220
Right scanner cover removal.....	220
Top cover assembly removal.....	222
Top cover ADF sheet feed removal.....	226
Base printer removals.....	226
ADF assembly removal.....	228
ADF input tray removal.....	230
ADF separator roll removal.....	230
ADF separator pad removal.....	231
AIO toner cover removal.....	232

AIO link removal	233
AIO release lever removal.....	234
Bin-full flag removal.....	235
Controller board removal	235
Developer unit removal	237
Duplex reference edge removal	238
Duplex sensor removal	241
EP drive assembly removal	242
Flatbed pivot link removal	248
Flatbed scanner assembly removal.....	249
Front logo cover removal.....	253
Fuser assembly removal	254
Fuser drive motor assembly removal	255
Fuser exit sensor removal.....	256
High-voltage power supply (HVPS) removal.....	258
Imaging unit (IU) removal	262
Low-voltage power supply (LVPS) assembly removal.....	264
Lower left frame removal	266
Lower right frame removal	272
Narrow media sensor removal	276
Narrow media sensor flag removal.....	277
Operator panel bezel removal.....	278
Operator panel logo plate removal	278
Operator panel removal (for CX310 and CX410 models only).....	279
Operator panel removal (for CX510 models only).....	285
Paper pick motor drive assembly (standard tray) removal.....	286
Printhead removal	288
Redrive unit removal	289
Speaker removal	290
System fan removal	290
Toner cartridge contacts removal.....	290
Toner density sensor (TDS) (left or right sensor) removal.....	292
Toner meter cycle (TMC) card removal	294
Transfer module removal	296
Tray present sensor removal	298
USB port connector removal	299
Waste toner bottle removal	300
Waste toner bottle contact block removal.....	301
Options removal.....	302
650-sheet duo drawer tray assembly removal	303
650-sheet duo drawer assembly removal	303
Dust cover removal.....	305
Pick tires removal	305

Component locations.....	307
Connectors.....	307
Maintenance.....	314
Inspection guide.....	314
Scheduled maintenance.....	316
Maintenance kits	316
Resetting the Roller Kit counter.....	316
Preventive maintenance.....	317
Device-specific preventive maintenance	317
Lubrication specification.....	317
Cleaning the printer.....	318
Cleaning the exterior of the printer.....	318
Cleaning the scanner glass.....	318
Cleaning the printhead lenses	319
Parts catalog.....	320
Legend.....	320
Assembly 1: Covers.....	321
Assembly 2: Scanner.....	323
Assembly 3: Paperpath.....	325
Assembly 4: Operator panels.....	329
Assembly 5: Electronics.....	333
Assembly 6: Cables.....	337
Assembly 7: Media drawers and trays.....	339
Assembly 8: Options and miscellaneous.....	341
Screw and retainer identification table.....	342
Appendix A: Printer specifications.....	345
Power specifications.....	345
Electrical specifications.....	345
Operating clearances for CX310 models.....	346
Operating clearances for CX410 and CX510 models.....	347
Acoustics.....	347
Environment.....	348
Processor.....	348

Appendix B: Options and features.....	349
Available internal options.....	349
Media handling options.....	349
Option configurations.....	350
Appendix C: Theory of operation.....	352
Paper path and transport components.....	352
Paper path information	352
Transport components	353
Bubble sensors.....	353
Duplexing	354
Print engine theory.....	355
Electrophotographic process (EP process).....	355
Electrophotographic process basics	355
ADF theory.....	359
ADF theory of operation	359
Color theory.....	361
Color theory.....	361
Appendix D: Acronyms.....	365
Acronyms.....	365
Index.....	367
Part number index.....	368
Part name index.....	372

Notices and safety information

Laser notices

Laser notice

The printer is certified in the U.S. to conform to the requirements of DHHS 21 CFR, Chapter I, Subchapter J for Class I (1) laser products, and elsewhere is certified as a Class I laser product conforming to the requirements of IEC 60825-1.

Class I laser products are not considered to be hazardous. The printer contains internally a Class IIIb (3b) laser that is nominally a 7 milliwatt gallium arsenide laser operating in the wavelength of 655-675 nanometers. The laser system and printer are designed so there is never any human access to laser radiation above a Class I level during normal operation, user maintenance, or prescribed service condition.

Laser-Hinweis

Der Drucker wurde in den USA zertifiziert und entspricht den DHHS-Vorschriften 21 CFR, Kapitel I, Unterkapitel J für Laserprodukte der Klasse I (1); andernorts ist er als Laserprodukt der Klasse I zertifiziert, das den IEC 60825-1-Anforderungen entspricht.

Laserprodukte der Klasse I werden nicht als gefährlich eingestuft. Der Drucker enthält im Inneren einen Laser der Klasse IIIb (3b), und zwar einen 7-Milliwatt-Gallium-Arsenid-Laser, der im Wellenlängenbereich von 655 bis 675 Nanometern arbeitet. Das Lasersystem und der Drucker sind so konstruiert, dass unter normalen Betriebsbedingungen, bei der Wartung durch den Benutzer oder bei den vorgeschriebenen Wartungsbedingungen Menschen keiner Laserstrahlung ausgesetzt sind, die die Werte für Klasse I überschreitet.

Avis relatif à l'utilisation du laser

L'imprimante est certifiée conforme aux exigences de la réglementation des Etats-Unis relative aux produits laser (DHHS 21 CFR, Chapter I, Subchapter J for Class I (1)). Pour les autres pays, elle est certifiée conforme aux exigences des normes IEC 60825-1 relatives aux produits laser de classe I.

Les produits laser de Classe I ne sont pas considérés comme dangereux. L'imprimante contient un laser de classe IIIb (3b), laser arséniure de gallium 7 milliwatts opérant sur une longueur d'onde de l'ordre de 655 à 675 nanomètres. Le système laser ainsi que l'imprimante ont été conçus de manière à ce que personne ne soit exposé à des rayonnements laser dépassant le niveau de classe I dans le cadre d'un fonctionnement normal, de l'entretien par l'utilisateur ou de la maintenance.

Avvertenze sui prodotti laser

La stampante è certificata negli Stati Uniti come stampante conforme ai requisiti DHHS 21 CFR, Capitolo I, Sottocapitolo J per i prodotti laser di Classe I (1), mentre in altri paesi è certificata come prodotto laser di Classe I conforme ai requisiti IEC 60825-1.

I prodotti laser di Classe I non sono considerati pericolosi. La stampante contiene un laser di Classe IIIb (3b), che è nominalmente un laser ad arseniuro di gallio a 7 milliwatt funzionante a una lunghezza d'onda di 655-675 nanometri. Il sistema laser e la stampante sono stati progettati in modo da impedire l'esposizione a radiazioni laser superiori al livello previsto dalla Classe I durante le normali operazioni di stampa, manutenzione o assistenza.

Aviso de láser

Esta impresora se ha certificado en EE. UU. de conformidad con los requisitos de DHHS 21 CFR, capítulo I, subcapítulo J, para los productos láser de Clase I (1), y en otros países está certificada como un producto láser de Clase I de acuerdo con los requisitos de IEC 60825-1.

Los productos láser de Clase I no se consideran peligrosos. La impresora contiene un láser interno de Clase IIIb (3b) que nominalmente es un láser de arseniuro de galio de 7 milivatios que funciona en una longitud de onda de 655-675 nanómetros. El sistema láser y la impresora se han diseñado para que ningún individuo acceda nunca a las radiaciones láser por encima del nivel de Clase I durante su uso normal, ni en tareas de mantenimiento o intervenciones de servicio técnico prescritas.

Aviso sobre laser

A impressora foi certificada nos EUA por estar em conformidade com os requisitos do DHHS 21 CFR, capítulo I, subcapítulo J, para produtos a laser de Classe I (1) e, nos demais países, foi certificada como produto a laser de Classe I em conformidade com os requisitos da IEC 60825-1.

Os produtos a laser de Classe I não são considerados perigosos. A impressora contém, internamente, um laser de Classe IIIb (3b) que é um laser de arsenieto de gálio de 7 miliwatts operando no comprimento de onda de 655-675 nanômetros. O sistema do laser e a impressora foram projetados para que jamais haja acesso humano à radiação do laser acima do nível da Classe I durante a operação normal ou a manutenção pelo usuário ou sob as condições de manutenção prescritas.

Laserinformatie

Deze printer is in de Verenigde Staten gecertificeerd als een product dat voldoet aan de vereisten van DHHS 21 CFR, hoofdstuk 1, paragraaf J voor laserproducten van klasse I (1). Elders is de printer gecertificeerd als een laserproduct van klasse I dat voldoet aan de vereisten van IEC 60825-1.

Laserproducten van klasse I worden geacht geen gevaar op te leveren. De printer bevat intern een laser van klasse IIIb (3b), een galliumarsenide laser met een nominaal vermogen van 7 milliwatt en een golflengtebereik van 655-675 nanometer. Het lasersysteem en de printer zijn zodanig ontworpen dat gebruikers nooit blootstaan aan laserstraling die hoger is dan het toegestane niveau voor klasse I-apparaten, tijdens normaal gebruik, onderhoudswerkzaamheden door de gebruiker of voorgeschreven servicewerkzaamheden.

Lasererklæring

Denne printer er certificeret i USA i henhold til kravene i DHHS 21 CFR, afsnit I, underafsnit J, for Klasse I-laserprodukter (1) og certificeret andetsteds som et Klasse I-laserprodukt i henhold til kravene i IEC 60825-1.

Klasse I-laserprodukter anses ikke for at være farlige. Printerens indeholder internt en klasse IIIb (3b)-laser, der nominelt er en 7 milliwatt galliumarsenid-laser, som fungerer i bølglængdeområdet 655-675 nanometer. Lasersystemet og printerens er udviklet på en sådan måde, at der ikke er en direkte laserstråling, der overskrider Klasse I-niveauet under normal brug, brugers vedligeholdelse eller de foreskrevne servicebetingelser.

Laserilmoitus

Tämä tulostin on sertifioitu Yhdysvalloissa DHHS 21 CFR, Chapter I, Subchapter J -standardin mukaiseksi luokan I (1) -lasertuotteeksi ja muualla IEC 60825-1 -standardin mukaiseksi luokan I lasertuotteeksi.

Luokan I lasertuotteita ei pidetä haitallisina. Tulostimen sisällä on luokan IIIb (3b) laser, joka on nimellistehoaltaan 7 mW:n galliumarsenidilaser ja toimii 655–675 nanometrinen aallonpituuksilla. Laserjärjestelmä ja tulostin ovat rakenteeltaan sellaisia, että käyttäjä ei joudu alttiiksi luokkaa 1 suuremmalle säteilylle normaalin käytön, ylläpidon tai huollon aikana.

Lasermeddelande

Skrivaren är certifierad i USA enligt kraven i DHHS 21 CFR, avsnitt I, underavsnitt J för laserprodukter av klass I (1) och i andra länder är den certifierad som en laserprodukt av klass I som uppfyller kraven i IEC 60825-1.

Laserprodukter av klass I anses inte vara skadliga. Skrivaren innehåller en klass IIIb (3b)-laser, vilket är en 7 mW galliumarseniklaser som arbetar inom en våglängd på 655–675 nm. Lasersystemet och skrivaren är utformade så att människor aldrig utsätts för laserstrålning över klass I-nivå under normala förhållanden vid användning, underhåll eller service.

Lasermerknad

Skrivaren er sertifisert i USA for samsvar med kravene i DHHS 21 CFR, kapittel I, underkapittel J for laserprodukter av klasse I (1), og er andre steder sertifisert som et laserprodukt av klasse I som samsvarer med kravene i IEC 60825-1.

Laserprodukter av klasse I anses ikke som helseskadelige. Skriveren inneholder en intern laser av klasse IIIb (3b) som nominelt er en 7 milliwatt galliumarsenid-laser, og som opererer i bølgelengder på 655-675 nanometer. Lasersystemet og skriveren er utformet slik at mennesker ikke utsettes for laserstråling utover nivået i klasse I under normal drift, vedlikehold eller foreskrevet service.

Avís sobre el làser

Als EUA, la impressora està certificada de conformitat amb els requisits del capítol I, apartat J del CFR 21 del Departament de Salut i Serveis Humans per a productes làser de classe I (1) i a la resta de països està certificada com a producte làser de classe I d'acord amb els requisits de la norma IEC 60825-1.

Els productes làser de classe I no es consideren perillosos. A l'interior de la impressora hi ha un làser de classe IIIb (3b) que nominalment es un arsenur de galió de 7 mil·liwatts que funciona a una longitud d'ona de 655-675 nanòmetres. El sistema làser y la impressora s'han dissenyat amb l'objectiu d'impedir l'accés humà de la radiació làser superior al nivell de classe I durant un funcionament normal, el manteniment per part de l'usuari o les condicions de servei prescrites.

レーザーに関する通知

本機は、米国においてクラス I (1) レーザー製品に対する DHHS 21 CFR、Chapter I、Subchapter J の要件に準拠し、その他の国では IEC 60825-1 の要件に準拠するクラス I レーザー製品として認可されています。

クラス I レーザー製品は、危険性がないとみなされています。本機には、クラス IIIb (3b) レーザーが内蔵されています。これは、655 ~ 675 ナノメートルの波長で動作する定格 7 ミリワットのガリウムヒ素レーザーです。レーザーシステムとプリンタは、通常の操作、ユーザーによるメンテナンス、または所定のサービス条件の下で、ユーザーがクラス I レベルを超えるレーザー放射に絶対にさらされないように設計されています。

레이저 관련 공지

이 프린터는 미국에서 DHHS 21 CFR, Chapter I, Subchapter J 의 요구 사항을 준수하는 클래스 I(1) 레이저 제품으로 승인되었으며 이외 지역에서 IEC 60825-1 의 요구 사항을 준수하는 클래스 I 레이저 제품으로 승인되었습니다.

Class I 레이저 제품은 위험한 제품으로 간주되지 않습니다. 프린터에는 655-675 나노미터의 파장 영역에서 작동하는 공칭 7 밀리와트 갈륨 비소 레이저인 클래스 IIIb(3b) 레이저가 내부에 포함되어 있습니다. 레이저 시스템과 프린터는 정상적인 작동, 사용자 유지 관리 또는 사전 설명된 서비스 조건에는 사람에게 클래스 I 수준 이상의 레이저 방사가 노출되지 않도록 설계되었습니다.

激光注意事项

本打印机在美国认证合乎 DHHS 21 CFR Chapter I, Subchapter J 对分类 I (1) 激光产品的标准, 而在其他地区则被认证是合乎 IEC 60825-1 的分类 I 激光产品。

一般认为分类 I 激光产品不具有危险性。本打印机内部含有分类 IIIb (3b) 的激光, 在操作过程中会产生额定 7 毫瓦的砷化镓激光, 其波长范围在 655-675nm 之间。本激光系统及打印机的设计, 在一般操作、使用者维护或规定内的维修情况下, 不会使人体接触分类 I 以上等级的辐射。

雷射聲明

本印表機係經過美國核可, 符合 DHHS 21 CFR, Chapter I, Subchapter J 規定的 I (1) 級雷射產品激光注意事項; 在美國以外的地區, 為符合 IEC 60825-1 規定的 I 級雷射產品。

根據 I 級雷射產品的規定, 這類產品不會對人體造成傷害。本機所採用之 IIIb (3b) 級雷射只會產生 7 百萬分之一瓦特 (milliwatt)、波長 655 至 675 億分之一米 (nanometer) 的鎵砷放射線 (gallium arsenide laser)。使用者只要以正確的方法操作及維護保養, 並依照先前所述之維修方式進行修護, 此印表機與其雷射系統絕不會產生 I 級以上的放射線, 而對人體造成傷害。

Safety

Safety information

- The safety of this product is based on testing and approvals of the original design and specific components. The manufacturer is not responsible for safety in the event of use of unauthorized replacement parts.
- The maintenance information for this product has been prepared for use by a professional service person and is not intended to be used by others.
- There may be an increased risk of electric shock and personal injury during disassembly and servicing of this product. Professional service personnel should understand this and take necessary precautions.



CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY

The lithium battery in this product is not intended to be replaced. There is a danger of explosion if a lithium battery is incorrectly replaced. Do not recharge, disassemble, or incinerate a lithium battery. Discard used lithium batteries according to the manufacturer's instructions and local regulations.

Consignes de sécurité

- La sécurité de ce produit repose sur des tests et des agréments portant sur sa conception d'origine et sur des composants particuliers. Le fabricant n'assume aucune responsabilité concernant la sécurité en cas d'utilisation de pièces de rechange non agréées.
- Les consignes d'entretien et de réparation de ce produit s'adressent uniquement à un personnel de maintenance qualifié.
- Le démontage et l'entretien de ce produit pouvant présenter certains risques électriques, le personnel d'entretien qualifié devra prendre toutes les précautions nécessaires.

ATTENTION : Ce symbole indique la présence d'une tension dangereuse dans la partie du produit sur laquelle vous travaillez. Débranchez le produit avant de commencer ou faites preuve de vigilance si l'exécution de la tâche exige que le produit reste sous tension.

Norme di sicurezza

- La sicurezza del prodotto si basa sui test e sull'approvazione del progetto originale e dei componenti specifici. Il produttore non è responsabile per la sicurezza in caso di sostituzione non autorizzata delle parti.
- Le informazioni riguardanti la manutenzione di questo prodotto sono indirizzate soltanto al personale di assistenza autorizzato.
- Durante lo smontaggio e la manutenzione di questo prodotto, il rischio di subire scosse elettriche e danni alla persona è più elevato. Il personale di assistenza autorizzato deve, quindi, adottare le precauzioni necessarie.

ATTENZIONE: Questo simbolo indica la presenza di tensione pericolosa nell'area del prodotto. Scollegare il prodotto prima di iniziare o usare cautela se il prodotto deve essere alimentato per eseguire l'intervento.

Sicherheitshinweise

- Die Sicherheit dieses Produkts basiert auf Tests und Zulassungen des ursprünglichen Modells und bestimmter Bauteile. Bei Verwendung nicht genehmigter Ersatzteile wird vom Hersteller keine Verantwortung oder Haftung für die Sicherheit übernommen.
- Die Wartungsinformationen für dieses Produkt sind ausschließlich für die Verwendung durch einen Wartungsfachmann bestimmt.
- Während des Auseinandernehmens und der Wartung des Geräts besteht ein zusätzliches Risiko eines elektrischen Schlags und körperlicher Verletzung. Das zuständige Fachpersonal sollte entsprechende Vorsichtsmaßnahmen treffen.

ACHTUNG: Dieses Symbol weist auf eine gefährliche elektrische Spannung hin, die in diesem Bereich des Produkts auftreten kann. Ziehen Sie vor den Arbeiten am Gerät den Netzstecker des Geräts, bzw. arbeiten Sie mit großer Vorsicht, wenn das Produkt für die Ausführung der Arbeiten an den Strom angeschlossen sein muß.

Pautas de Seguridad

- La seguridad de este producto se basa en pruebas y aprobaciones del diseño original y componentes específicos. El fabricante no es responsable de la seguridad en caso de uso de piezas de repuesto no autorizadas.
- La información sobre el mantenimiento de este producto está dirigida exclusivamente al personal cualificado de mantenimiento.
- Existe mayor riesgo de descarga eléctrica y de daños personales durante el desmontaje y la reparación de la máquina. El personal cualificado debe ser consciente de este peligro y tomar las precauciones necesarias.

PRECAUCIÓN: este símbolo indica que el voltaje de la parte del equipo con la que está t

Informações de Segurança

- A segurança deste produto baseia-se em testes e aprovações do modelo original e de componentes específicos. O fabricante não é responsável pela segurança, no caso de uso de peças de substituição não autorizadas.
- As informações de segurança relativas a este produto destinam-se a profissionais destes serviços e não devem ser utilizadas por outras pessoas.
- Risco de choques eléctricos e ferimentos graves durante a desmontagem e manutenção deste produto. Os profissionais destes serviços devem estar avisados deste facto e tomar os cuidados necessários.

CUIDADO: Quando vir este símbolo, existe a possível presença de uma potencial tensão perigosa na zona do produto em que está a trabalhar. Antes de começar, desligue o produto da tomada eléctrica ou seja cuidadoso caso o produto tenha de estar ligado à corrente eléctrica para realizar a tarefa necessária.

Informació de Seguretat

- La seguretat d'aquest producte es basa en l'avaluació i aprovació del disseny original i els components específics. El fabricant no es fa responsable de les qüestions de seguretat si s'utilitzen peces de recanvi no autoritzades.
- La informació pel manteniment d'aquest producte està orientada exclusivament a professionals i no està destinada a ningú que no ho sigui.
- El risc de xoc elèctric i de danys personals pot augmentar durant el procés de desmuntatge i de servei d'aquest producte. El personal professional ha d'estar-ne assabentat i prendre les mesures convenients.

PRECAUCIÓ: aquest símbol indica que el voltatge de la part de l'equip amb la qual esteu t

Preface

This manual contains maintenance procedures for service personnel.

It is divided into the following chapters:

- **General information** contains a general description of the printer and the maintenance approach used to repair it. Special tools and test equipment, as well as general environmental and safety instructions, are discussed.
- **Diagnostic information** contains diagnostic aids you can use to isolate failing field replaceable units. These diagnostic aids include error code tables, symptom tables, and service checks.
- **Diagnostic aids** contains descriptions of the printer interface, the user and service menus, and the basic theory of printer operation.
- **Repair** information provides instructions for making printer adjustments and removing and installing FRUs.
- **Connector locations** uses illustrations to identify the connector locations.
- **Preventive maintenance** contains the lubrication specifications and recommendations to prevent problems.
- **Parts catalog** contains illustrations and part numbers for individual FRUs.
- Appendix A—Contains service tips and detailed information about the product, including the basic theory of printer operation.
- Appendix B—Contains representative print samples.

Service manual conventions

Note: A *note* provides additional information.

Warning—Potential Damage: A *warning* identifies something that might damage the product hardware or software.

This service manual uses several different types of caution statements:



CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY: A *caution* identifies something that might cause the service technician harm.



CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD: This type of caution indicates a danger from hazardous voltage in the area of the product where you are working. Unplug the product before you start working, or use caution if the product must receive power to perform the task.



CAUTION—HOT SURFACE: This type of caution indicates a hot surface.



CAUTION—TIPPING HAZARD: This type of caution indicates a tipping hazard.

General information

The Lexmark™ CX310, CX410, and CX510 (7527-2xx, 7527-4xx, 7527-6xx) are network-capable, multi-function laser printers that print both four-color and monochrome print jobs. All information in this service manual pertains to all models unless explicitly noted.

The printers are available in the following models:

CX310 models

Model	Configurations	Machine type / model
CX310dn	Duplex network printer, simplex ADF/scanner, 2.4 inch touchscreen	7527-211, 7527-231



CX410 models

Model	Configurations	Machine type / model
CX410e	Simplex network printer, 4.3 inch touchscreen, FAX	7527-415
CX410de	Duplex network printer, duplex ADF/scanner, FAX	7527-436

**CX510 models**

Model	Configurations	Machine type / model
CX510e	Simplex network printer, duplex ADF/scanner, 7 inch touchscreen, FAX	7527-636
CX510de	Duplex Network, Duplex ADF/scanner, 7 inch touchscreen, FAX, Hard drive	7527-696



The diagnostic information in this manual leads you to the correct field replaceable unit (FRU) or part. Use the error code charts, symptom index, and service checks to determine the symptom and then repair the failure. After you complete the repair, perform tests as needed to verify the repair.

To begin diagnosing a problem, go to “Diagnostic information” on page 25. See “Repair information” on page 196 for information about removing and reinstalling parts. See “Parts catalog” on page 320 to help identify parts.

Media guidelines

- “Characteristics that affect print quality” on page 20
- “Unacceptable paper” on page 21
- “Selecting paper” on page 22
- “Selecting preprinted forms and letterhead” on page 22
- “Using recycled paper and other office papers” on page 22
- “Storing paper” on page 23

Characteristics that affect print quality

Selecting the appropriate media for the printer can help avoid printing problems.

For detailed information about media characteristics, see the *Card Stock & Label Guide* available on the Lexmark Support Web site at <http://support.lexmark.com>.

The following paper characteristics affect print quality and reliability. Consider these characteristics when evaluating new paper stock.

- **Weight**—The printer can automatically feed paper weights from 60 to 220 g/m² (16 to 58 lb bond) grain long. Paper lighter than 60 g/m² might not be stiff enough to feed properly, causing jams. For best performance, use 75 g/m² (20 lb bond) grain long paper. For paper smaller than 182 x 257 mm (7.2 x 10.1 in.), we recommend 90 g/m² (24 lb) or heavier paper.

Note: Duplex is supported only for 63 g/m²–170 g/m² (17 lb–45 lb bond) paper.

- **Curl**—*Curl* is the tendency for paper to curl at its edges. Excessive curl can cause paper feeding problems. Curl can occur after the paper passes through the printer, where it is exposed to high temperatures. Storing paper unwrapped in hot, humid, cold, or dry conditions, even in the trays, can contribute to paper curling prior to printing.
- **Smoothness**—Paper *smoothness* directly affects print quality. If paper is too rough, toner cannot fuse to it properly. If paper is too smooth, it can cause paper feeding or print quality issues. Always use paper between 100 and 300 Sheffield points; smoothness between 150 and 200 Sheffield points produces the best print quality.
- **Moisture content**—The amount of *moisture* in paper affects both print quality and the ability of the printer to feed the paper correctly. Leave paper in its original wrapper until it is time to use it. This limits the exposure of paper to moisture changes that can degrade its performance. To condition paper before printing, store it in its original wrapper in the same environment as the printer for 24 to 48 hours before printing. Extend the time several days if the storage or transportation environment is very different from the printer environment. Thick paper may also require a longer conditioning period.
- **Grain direction**—*Grain* refers to the alignment of the paper fibers in a sheet of paper. Grain is either *grain long*, running the length of the paper, or *grain short*, running the width of the paper. For 60 to 135 g/m² (16 to 36 lb bond) paper, use grain long paper. For papers heavier than 135 g/m², use grain short.
- **Fiber content**—Most high-quality xerographic paper is made from 100% chemically treated pulped wood. This content provides the paper with a high degree of stability, resulting in fewer paper-feeding problems and better print quality. Paper containing fibers such as cotton can negatively affect paper handling.

Unacceptable paper

The following paper types are not recommended for use with the printer:

- Chemically treated papers used to make copies without carbon paper, also known as carbonless papers, carbonless copy paper (CCP), or no carbon required (NCR) paper
- Preprinted papers with chemicals that may contaminate the printer
- Preprinted papers that can be affected by the temperature in the printer fuser
- Preprinted papers that require a registration (the precise print location on the page) greater than ±2.3 mm (±0.9 in.), such as optical character recognition (OCR) forms

Note: In some cases, registration can be adjusted with a software application to successfully print on these forms.

- Coated papers (erasable bond), synthetic papers, thermal papers
- Rough-edged, rough or heavily textured surface papers, or curled papers
- Recycled paper that fails EN12281:2002 (European)
- Paper weighing less than 60 g/m² (16 lb)
- Multiple-part forms or documents

Selecting paper

To help avoid jams and poor print quality:

- Always use new, undamaged paper.
- Before loading paper, know the recommended print side of the paper. This information is usually indicated on the paper package.
- Do not use paper that has been cut or trimmed by hand.
- Do not mix paper sizes, types, or weights in the same source; mixing results in jams.
- Do not use coated papers unless they are specifically designed for electrophotographic printing.

Selecting preprinted forms and letterhead

Use these guidelines when selecting preprinted forms and letterhead:

- Use grain long for 60 to 176 g/m² weight paper.
- Use only forms and letterhead printed using an offset lithographic or engraved printing process.
- Avoid papers with rough or heavily textured surfaces.

Use papers printed with heat-resistant inks designed for use in xerographic copiers. The ink must be able to withstand temperatures up to 200°C (392°F) without melting or releasing hazardous emissions. Use inks that are not affected by the resin in toner. Inks that are oxidation-set or oil-based generally meet these requirements; latex inks might not. When in doubt, contact the paper supplier.

Preprinted papers such as letterhead must be able to withstand temperatures up to 200°C (392°F) without melting or releasing hazardous emissions.

Using recycled paper and other office papers

As an environmentally conscientious company, Lexmark supports the use of recycled paper produced specifically for use in printhead LED (electrophotographic) printers.

While no blanket statement can be made that all recycled paper will feed well, Lexmark consistently tests papers that represent recycled cut size copier papers available on the global market. This scientific testing is conducted with rigor and discipline.

Many factors are taken into consideration both separately and as a whole, including the following:

- Amount of post-consumer waste (Lexmark tests up to 100% post-consumer waste content.)
- Temperature and humidity conditions (Testing chambers simulate climates from all over the world.)
- Moisture content (Business papers should have low moisture: 4–5%.)
- Bending resistance and proper stiffness means optimum feeding through the printer.
- Thickness (impacts how much can be loaded into a tray)
- Surface roughness (measured in Sheffield units, impacts print clarity and how well toner fuses to the paper)
- Surface friction (determines how easily sheets can be separated)
- Grain and formation (impacts curling, which also influences the mechanics of how the paper behaves as it moves through the printer)
- Brightness and texture (look and feel)

Recycled papers are better than ever; however, the amount of recycled content in paper affects the degree of control over foreign matter. And while recycled papers are one good path to printing in an environmentally responsible manner, they are not perfect. The energy required to de-ink and deal with additives such as colorants and “glue” often generates more carbon emissions than does normal paper production. However, using recycled papers enables better resource management overall.

Lexmark concerns itself with the responsible use of paper in general based on life cycle assessments of its products. To gain a better understanding of the impact of printers on the environment, the company commissioned a number of life cycle assessments and found that paper was identified as the primary contributor (up to 80%) of carbon emissions caused throughout the entire life of a device (from design to end-of-life). This is due to the energy-intensive manufacturing processes required to make paper.

Thus, Lexmark seeks to educate customers and partners on minimizing the impact of paper. Using recycled paper is one way. Eliminating excessive and unnecessary paper consumption is another. Lexmark is well-equipped to help customers minimize printing and copying waste. In addition, the company encourages purchasing paper from suppliers who demonstrate their commitment to sustainable forestry practices.

Lexmark does not endorse specific suppliers, although a converter’s product list for special applications is maintained.

The following paper choice guidelines will help alleviate the environmental impact of printing:

- 1 Minimize paper consumption.
- 2 Be selective about the origin of wood fiber. Buy from suppliers who carry certifications such as the Forestry Stewardship Council (FSC) or The Program for the Endorsement of Forest Certification (PEFC). These certifications guarantee that the paper manufacturer uses wood pulp from forestry operators that employ environmentally and socially responsible forest management and restoration practices.
- 3 Choose the most appropriate paper for printing needs: normal 75 or 80 g/m² certified paper, lower weight paper, or recycled paper.

Storing paper

Use these paper storage guidelines to help avoid jams and uneven print quality:

- For best results, store paper where the temperature is 21°C (70°F) and the relative humidity is 40%. Most label manufacturers recommend printing in a temperature range of 18 to 24°C (65 to 75°F) with relative humidity between 40 and 60%.
- Store paper in cartons when possible, on a pallet or shelf, rather than on the floor.
- Store individual packages on a flat surface.
- Do not store anything on top of individual paper packages.

Data security notice

This printer contains various types of memory that are capable of storing device and network settings, information from embedded solutions, and user data. The types of memory, along with the types of data stored by each, are described below.

- Volatile memory—This device utilizes standard Random Access Memory (RAM) to temporarily buffer user data during simple print and copy jobs.
- Non-volatile memory—This device may utilize two forms of non-volatile memory: EEPROM and NAND (flash memory). Both types are used to store the operating system, device settings, network information, scanner and bookmark settings, and embedded solutions.

- Hard disk memory—Some devices have a hard disk drive installed. The printer hard disk is designed for device-specific functionality and cannot be used for long term storage for data that is not print-related. The hard disk does not provide the capability for users to extract information, create folders, create disk or network file shares, or transfer FTP information directly from a client device. The hard disk can retain buffered user data from complex print jobs, as well as form data and font data.

To erase volatile memory, turn off the printer.

To erase non-volatile memory, see the menu item under “Configuration menu” on page 185 pertaining to this.

To erase the printer hard disk, see the menu item under “Configuration menu” on page 185 pertaining to this.

The printer control panel and RIP/controller board contain NVRAM. After removing the old part, it must be returned to your next level of support.

Tools required for service

- Flat-blade screwdrivers, various sizes
- #1 Phillips screwdriver, magnetic
- #2 Phillips screwdriver, magnetic
- #2 Phillips screwdriver, magnetic short-blade
- Slotted-head screwdriver
- 7/32 inch (5.5 mm) open-end wrench
- 7.0 mm nut driver
- Needlenose pliers
- Diagonal side cutters
- Spring hook
- Feeler gauges
- Analog or digital multimeter
- Flash light (optional)
- 3mm hex wrench

Diagnostic information

- “Troubleshooting overview” on page 25
- “Power-on Reset (POR) sequence” on page 26
- “Entering Safe Mode” on page 26
- “Fixing print quality issues” on page 27
- “Paper jams” on page 36
- “User messages” on page 66
- “Service errors” on page 74
- “Symptoms” on page 110

 **CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD:** Remove the power cord from the electrical outlet before you connect or disconnect any cable or electronic card or assembly for personal safety and to prevent damage to the printer. Disconnect any connections between the printer and PCs/peripherals.

 **CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY:** The printer weight is greater than 18kg (40 lb) and requires two or more trained personnel to lift it safely. Use the hand holds on the side of the printer. Make sure your fingers are not under the printer when you lift or set the printer on the floor or another stable surface.

 **CAUTION—HOT SURFACE:** The inside of the printer might be hot. To reduce the risk of injury from a hot component, allow the surface to cool before touching.

Troubleshooting overview

- “Performing the initial troubleshooting check” on page 25
- “Error code number key” on page 26

Performing the initial troubleshooting check

Before you start the troubleshooting procedures, perform the following checks:

- With the power cord unplugged from the wall outlet, check that the cord is free from breakage, short-circuits, disconnected wires, or incorrect connections.
- Make sure the printer is properly grounded. Check the power cord ground terminal.
- Make sure the power supply line voltage is within 10% of the rated line voltage.
- Make sure the machine is securely installed on a level surface in a well-ventilated area.
- Make sure the room temperature is between 16 and 32°C (60 and 90°F) and that the relative humidity is between 20 and 80%.
- Avoid sites generating ammonia gas, high temperature, high humidity (near water faucets, kettles, humidifiers), cold spaces, near open flames, and dusty areas.
- Avoid sites exposed to direct sunlight.
- Make sure the paper is the recommended paper for this printer.
- Make a trial print with paper from a newly opened package, and check the result.

Error code number key

The following chart identifies the error code numbers that should be consistent across product lines.

Range	Description	Go to page
Text prompts	User prompts without code numbers	"Understanding the printer messages" on page 66
100–199	Printer hardware errors	"1xx service error messages" on page 75
200–299	Printer and input option paper jams	"Paper jams" on page 36
800–899	Scanner hardware errors	"84x.xx service error messages" on page 93
900–999	Firmware and/or system electronics errors	"9xx service error messages" on page 98

Power-on Reset (POR) sequence

When you turn the printer on, it performs a Power-on Reset (POR) sequence.

Check for correct POR functioning of the base printer by observing the following:

- 1 The LED turns on.
- 2 The main fan turns on.
- 3 The operator panel turns on.
- 4 The fuser heater turns on. The fuser takes longer to warm up from a cold start than a warm start.
- 5 The operator panel LED starts blinking.
- 6 A splash screen appears on the display. The following errors or messages may appear:
 - Close Door or Insert Cartridge appear if the front access door is open or the print cartridge is missing
 - Cartridge errors, such as Defective Cartridge or Missing Cartridge
- 7 Ready appears on the display.
- 8 The main drive motor turns on.
- 9 The EP drive assembly drives the developer shaft located in the print cartridge.
- 10 The exit rollers turn.
- 11 The printer may begin calibration.

Entering Safe Mode

Safe Mode lets the device continue to operate in a special mode in which it attempts to continue offering as much functionality as possible despite known issues.

You can enter Safe Mode in one of the following ways:

- Enter Safe Mode from the Configuration menu. See "Safe Mode" on page 189.
- POR the printer while pressing the **Stop** and **Back** keys.

- For LED models, you must contact the next level of technical support for assistance.

Fixing print quality issues

- “Initial print quality check” on page 27
- “Print quality toner rubs off service check” on page 28
- “Print quality background service check” on page 29
- “Print quality blank page service check” on page 30
- “Print quality blurred or fuzzy print service check” on page 31
- “Print quality half-color page service check” on page 32
- “Print quality horizontal banding service check” on page 32
- “Print quality horizontal line service check” on page 32
- “Print quality missing image at edge service check” on page 33
- “Print quality mottle (2-5 mm speckles) service check” on page 33
- “Print quality narrow vertical line service check” on page 33
- “Print quality random marks service check” on page 33
- “Print quality residual image service check” on page 34
- “Print quality solid color page service check” on page 35
- “Print quality vertical banding service check” on page 35
- “Print quality light print on solids service check” on page 35
- “Print quality color problems service check” on page 36

The symptoms described in this chapter might require replacement of one or more CRUs (Customer Replaceable Units) designated as supplies or maintenance items, which are the responsibility of the customer. With the customer's permission, you might need to install a developer (toner) cartridge.

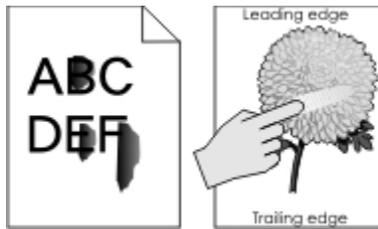
Initial print quality check

Before troubleshooting specific print problems, complete the following initial print quality check:

- 1 Print a menu settings page, and then check the life status of all supplies. Any supplies that are low should be replaced. Be sure to keep the original menu page to restore the customer's custom settings if needed.
- 2 On the menu page, make sure the following settings are at the default level:
 - Color Correction: Set to Auto.
 - Print Resolution: Set to 4800 dpi (print quality problems should be checked at different resolution settings).
 - Toner Darkness: Set to 4 (default).
 - Color Saver: Set to OFF.
 - RGB Brightness, RGB Contrast, RGB Saturation: Set to 0.
 - Color Balance: Select **Reset Defaults** to zero out all colors.
 - Check the paper type, texture and weight settings against the paper that is loaded in the printer.
- 3 Inspect the transfer module for damage. Replace, if damaged.
- 4 Inspect the print cartridges for damage. Replace, if damaged.

- 5 If paper other than 20 lb plain letter/A4 paper is being used, load 20 lb plain letter/A4 and print the Print Quality pages to see if the problem remains. Use Tray 1 to test print quality problems.
- 6 Print the Print Quality Pages (in Diagnostics), and then look for variations in the print from what is expected.
- 7 Check to ensure the correct printer driver for the installed software is being used. An incorrect printer driver for the installed software can cause problems. Incorrect characters could print, and the copy may not fit the page correctly.

Print quality toner rubs off service check



Actions	Yes	No
<p>Step 1 From the Paper Menu on the printer control panel, check the paper type and paper weight settings.</p> <p>Is the paper tray set to the type and weight of paper in the tray?</p>	Go to step 2.	Change the paper type and weight settings to match the paper in the tray.
<p>Step 2 Check for paper with texture or rough finishes.</p> <p>Are you printing on textured or rough paper?</p>	Change the textured or rough paper to plain paper and print again.	Go to step 3.
<p>Step 3 Is the fuser properly installed?</p>	Go to step 4.	Install the fuser properly.
<p>Step 4 Replace the fuser. See “Fuser assembly removal” on page 254.</p> <p>Does this solve the problem?</p>	The problem is solved.	Go to step 5.
<p>Step 5 Replace the LVPS. See “Low-voltage power supply (LVPS) assembly removal” on page 264.</p> <p>Does this fix the problem?</p>	The problem is solved.	Contact your next level of support.

Print quality background service check

Check	Yes	No
<p>Step 1 Read the current status of the imaging unit from the customer menus. To view the status of the photoconductor units:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a In Ready mode, press Menus b Select Reports, and press Select c Select Device Statistics, and press Select <p>It is possible a new imaging unit was installed, but the counter was not reset.</p> <p>Has the imaging unit been recently replaced?</p>	<p>Reset the value. To reset this value:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1 In Ready mode, press Menus 2 Select Supplies Menu, and press Select 3 Select Replace Supply, and press Select 4 Select the imaging unit you want to change, and press Select 5 Select Yes, and press Select <p>If this does not fix the problem, then go to step 2.</p>	<p>Go to step 2.</p>
<p>Step 2 Is the background only one of the primary colors; yellow, cyan, magenta, or black?</p>	<p>Go to step 3.</p>	<p>Go to step 4.</p>
<p>Step 3 Replace the developer unit.</p> <p>Did replacing the developer unit correct the problem?</p>	<p>Problem resolved.</p>	<p>Go to step 4.</p>
<p>Step 4 Replace the photoconductor unit.</p> <p>Did this fix the problem?</p>	<p>Problem resolved.</p>	<p>Go to step 5.</p>
<p>Step 5 Check the high-voltage contact from the HVPS to the image transfer unit (ITU).</p> <p>Is a problem found?</p>	<p>Replace the failing part:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Image transfer unit. See Image transfer unit removal. • High-voltage power supply (HVPS). See High-voltage power supply (HVPS) removal. 	<p>Go to step 6.</p>
<p>Step 6 With the printer off, reset the cable in the JHVPS1 connector.</p> <p>Does this fix the problem?</p>	<p>Problem resolved.</p>	<p>Go to step 7.</p>

Check	Yes	No
<p>Step 7 Replace the HVPS. See High-voltage power supply (HVPS) removal.</p> <p>Does this fix the problem?</p>	Problem resolved.	Go to step 8.
<p>Step 8 Clean the printhead.</p> <p>Does this fix the problem?</p>	Problem resolved.	Replace the orinthead. See printhead removal.

Print quality blank page service check

Check	Yes	No
<p>Step 1 Is all the packing material for the imaging unit in question removed?</p>	Go to step 2.	Remove the packing material.
<p>Step 2 Print a document that requires all four colors with just a few characters to verify if one specific color is a problem. For example, print the Print Quality Test Pages:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a Enter Diagnostic mode. Press and hold 3 and 6, turn the printer on, and then release the buttons when the installed memory and processor speed displays. b Select PRINT TESTS, and press Select c Select Prt Qual pgs, and press Select <p>Is only one color missing?</p>	Replace the developer unit for the missing color.	Go to step 3.
<p>Step 3 Replace the imaging unit. See Imaging unit (IU) removal.</p> <p>Does this fix the problem?</p>	Problem resolved.	Go to step 4.

Check	Yes	No
<p>Step 4</p> <p>a Remove the image unit and waste toner bottle.</p> <p>b Replace the right cover and close the front door.</p> <p>c Enter the Diagnostics Menu, and run the appropriate cartridge drive motor test for the missin color.</p> <p>d Select MISC TESTS in the Diag menu, and press Select.</p> <p>e Select Motor Detect. Remove Cartridge. appears.</p> <p>f Remove all toner cartridges and the imaging unit.</p> <p>g Close the front cover. If you press Select before closing the front cover, then a message appears: Close cover. Press Select.</p> <p>h Press Select. Motor Detection In Progress... appears. The motor detection process takes about 10 seconds, and stops automatically. Detect Complete. Rebooting... appears, and the printer performs a POR (Power On Reset).</p> <p>Did the motor run?</p>	Go to step 5.	Replace the main drive gear assembly. See Main drive gear assembly with motor removal.
<p>Step 5</p> <p>Remove the developer unit. See Developer unit removal. Check the developer cartridge contacts from the HVPS to the IU.</p> <p>Are all the toner cartridge contacts clean on both the Pin and IU?</p>	Go to step 6..	Clean the developer cartridge contacts. See Developer unit removal.
<p>Step 6</p> <p>Are all the spring-loaded Pins in the HVPS free to move in and out with an equal amount of spring force.</p>	Go to step 7.	Replace the HVPS. See High-voltage power supply (HVPS) assembly removal.
<p>Step 7</p> <p>Turn the printer off, and remove the rear cover. See “Rear cover removal” on page 218.. Check the continuity between the spring-loaded Pin and the JSC1 connector on the lower left side of the controller board.</p> <p>Are all conductors continuous?</p>	Go to step 8.	Replace the cable.
<p>Step 8</p> <p>Replace the printhead. See Printhead removal.</p> <p>Did this fix the problem?</p>	Problem resolved.	Replace the controller board. See Controller board removal.

Print quality blurred or fuzzy print service check

Run the automatic alignment. The TPS sensor may be damaged. To run Reset Color Cal:

- 1** Enter the Diagnostics Menu.
Turn the printer off, and press and hold **3** and **6**.
- 2** Select **Reset Color Cal**, and press **Select**.

3 Select TPS Setup.

4 Select Reset Color Cal, and press Select. Resetting appears. When the reset is complete, the screen is automatically returned to TPS Setup.

Blurred or fuzzy print is usually caused by a problem in the main gear drive assembly or in the image transfer unit (ITU). Check the main drive gear assembly and ITU for correct operation.

Blurred print can also be caused by incorrect feeding from one of the input paper sources, media trays, or duplex paper path.

Check the high-voltage spring contacts to ensure they are not bent, corroded, or damaged. Replace the high-voltage power supply as necessary. See High voltage power supply (HVPS) assembly removal.

Print quality half-color page service check

A photoconductor unit is not properly seated. Reset the specific photoconductor unit.

Print quality horizontal banding service check

Check	Yes	No
Step 1 Measure the distance between repeating bands. Is the distance between bands either 34.6 or 94.2 mm?	Replace the photoconductor unit. Remove the imaging unit and remove the original developer units, and then put them back into the new photoconductor unit, and reinstall the imaging unit. See imaging unit (IU) removal.	Go to step 2.
Step 2 Does the distance measure 95 mm or 108 mm?	Replace the fuser. See Fuser assembly removal.	Go to step 3.
Step 3 Does the distance measure 37.7, 55, or 78.5 mm?	Replace the ITU? See Image transfer unit (ITU).	Go to step 4.
Does the distance measure 43.9 mm or 45.5?	Replace the developers that match the missing color (black, cyan, magenta, or yellow.) See Developer unit removal.	Check the various rollers in the printer for debris.

Print quality horizontal line service check

Either the photoconductor unit or one of the developer units that make up the imaging unit is defective. Remove and inspect the imaging unit. Replace the damaged part of the imaging unit. See Imaging unit (IU) removal.

Print quality missing image at edge service check

Remove and reset the following:

- Toner cartridge
- Imaging unit
- Developer units

Print quality mottle (2-5 mm speckles) service check

Keep running prints through, and the problem normally clears up. If the problem persists, then replace the developer cartridge.

Print quality narrow vertical line service check

Check	Yes	No
Replace the photoconductor unit. See Imaging unit (IU) removal.	Problem solved.	Replace the developer unit. See Developer unit removal.

Print quality random marks service check

Service tip: The primary cause of random marks is due to loose material moving around inside the printer and attaching to the photoconductor unit, developer roll, or transfer belt.

Check	Yes	No
Step 1 Is there any loose or foreign material on the imaging unit?	Inspect the imaging unit by looking at the individual developers and photoconductors. Clean or replace the faulty unit. See Imaging unit (IU) removal.	Go to step 2.
Step 2 Is there any loose or foreign material on the developer roll?	Replace the developer unit.	Go to step 3.
Step 3 Is there any loose or foreign material on the transfer belt?	Replace the image transfer unit. See Image transfer unit (ITU).	Contact your next level of support.

Print quality residual image service check

Service tip: The primary cause of random marks is due to loose material moving around inside the printer and attaching to the photoconductor unit, developer roll, or transfer belt.

Check	Yes	No
<p>Step 1 Check the condition of the imaging unit using the customer menus (administration menus):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a At the Ready prompt, press Menu. b Select Supplies Menu, and press Select. c Select Imaging Kit, and press Select. <p>Does the display indicate OK?</p>	Go to step 2.	Replace the imaging unit or the photoconductor unit. See Imaging unit (IU) removal.
<p>Step 2 Measure the distance from the original image to the same point on the residual image.</p> <p>Is the distance 43.9 mm?</p>	Replace the developer corresponding to the color of the image. See Developer unit removal.	Replace the imaging unit or the photoconductor unit. See Imaging unit (IU) removal.
<p>Step 3 Is the distance between the original image and the residual image 94.2 mm?</p>	Replace the photoconductor. See Developer unit removal.	
<p>Step 4 Run the Menu Setting Page twice to clear any debris.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a Press Menu on the operator panel. b Select Reports from the Admin Menu, and press Select . c Select Imaging Kit, and press Select . <p>Is there still any toner contamination on the fuser assembly?</p>	Replace the fuser. See Fuser assembly removal.	Contact your next level of support.

Print quality solid color page service check

Service tip: A solid color page is generally caused by a problem in the high-voltage power supply or an incorrect high voltage in the printing process resulting in toner development on the entire photoconductor.

Check	Yes	No
<p>Step 1</p> <p>Replace the photoconductor unit (part of the imaging unit). Remove the imaging unit and remove the developers. Place the original developers in the new photoconductor, and then replace the imaging unit. See Imaging unit (IU) removal.</p> <p>Does this fix the problem?</p>	Problem resolved.	Go to step 2.
<p>Step 2</p> <p>A faulty printhead can cause the problem. To test the printhead for solid colors, place a narrow strip of paper over the gap between the developers. Make sure the paper stays in place when you replace the imaging unit. This will block the laser from discharging the photoconductors. Select the Print Quality Page.</p> <p>Does the uniform color page have a white vertical band?</p>	Replace the printhead. See Printhead removal.	Go to step 3.
<p>Step 3</p> <p>Check the high-voltage contact from the HVPS to the photoconductor charge roll. Ensure the contact springs are properly mounted and that the charge roll contact spring is making good contact with the HPVS spring that runs through the left printer frame. See Toner cartridge contacts to view the proper mounting and for removal procedures.</p> <p>Are the springs defective?</p>	Replace the transfer contact assembly. See Toner cartridge contacts.	Go to step 4.
<p>Step 4</p> <p>Turn the printer off, and check the continuity of the HVPS cable.</p> <p>Is there continuity?</p>	Go to step 5.	Replace the cable assembly.
<p>Step 5</p> <p>Replace the HVPS. See High-voltage power supply (HVPS) assembly removal.</p> <p>Did this solve the problem?</p>	Problem resolved.	Replace the controller board. See Controller board removal.

Print quality vertical banding service check

Replace the developer cartridge.

Print quality light print on solids service check

Light print can be caused by incorrect media. For more information, see “Media guidelines” on page 20.

Print quality color problems service check

For more information on non-mechanical color issues, see “Color theory” on page 361.

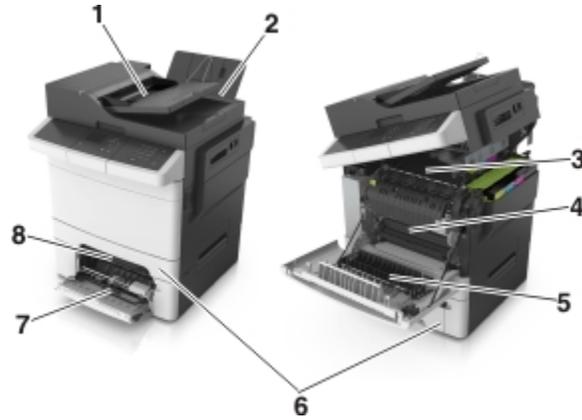
Paper jams

- “Understanding jam numbers and locations” on page 36
- “Clearing jams” on page 36
- “200 paper jams” on page 39
- “200.xx Input (S2) sensor service check” on page 41
- “202 paper jams” on page 42
- “202.xx fuser exit sensor service check” on page 47
- “203 paper jams” on page 49
- “230 paper jams” on page 52
- “230.xx Duplex/manual feed sensor (S1) service check” on page 53
- “232 paper jams” on page 56
- “242 paper jams” on page 57
- “243 paper jams” on page 58
- “244 paper jams” on page 59
- “250 paper jams” on page 60
- “28x.xx paper jams” on page 62
- “29x.xx paper jams” on page 64
- “xxx.xx paper jams” on page 65

Understanding jam numbers and locations

When a jam occurs, a message indicating the jam location and information to clear the jam appears on the display. Open doors and covers, and remove trays to access jam locations. To resolve any paper jam message, you must clear all jammed paper from the paper path.

Note: When jam recovery is set to On or Auto, the printer reprints jammed pages. However, Auto does not guarantee that the page will print.



Jam numbers and locations

Area #	Area name	Error code	Go to page
1	Automatic document feeder (ADF)	28y.xx	"28x.xx paper jams" on page 62
2	Standard bin	203.xx	"200 paper jams" on page 39
3	Fuser	202.xx	"202 paper jams" on page 42
4	Front door	20y.xx	"200 paper jams" on page 39
5	Duplex area	23y.xx	"230 paper jams" on page 52
6	Tray [x] (optional)	24y.xx	"242 paper jams" on page 57
7	Multipurpose feeder	250.xx	"250 paper jams" on page 60
8	Manual feeder	251.xx	"250 paper jams" on page 60

Clearing jams

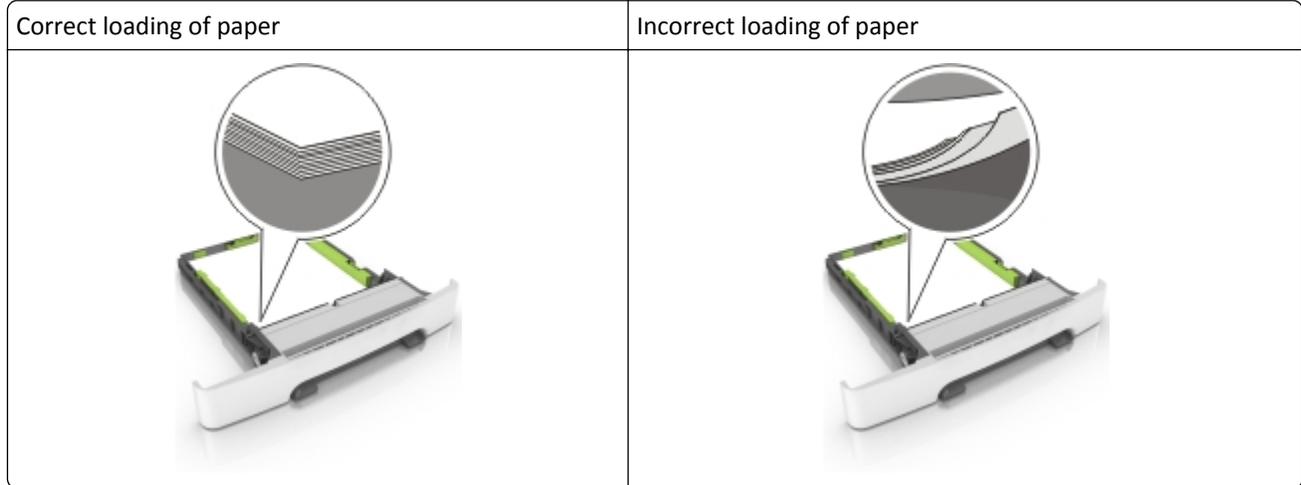
Jam error messages appear on the control panel display and include the area of the printer where the jam occurred. When there is more than one jam, the number of jammed pages is displayed.

Avoiding jams

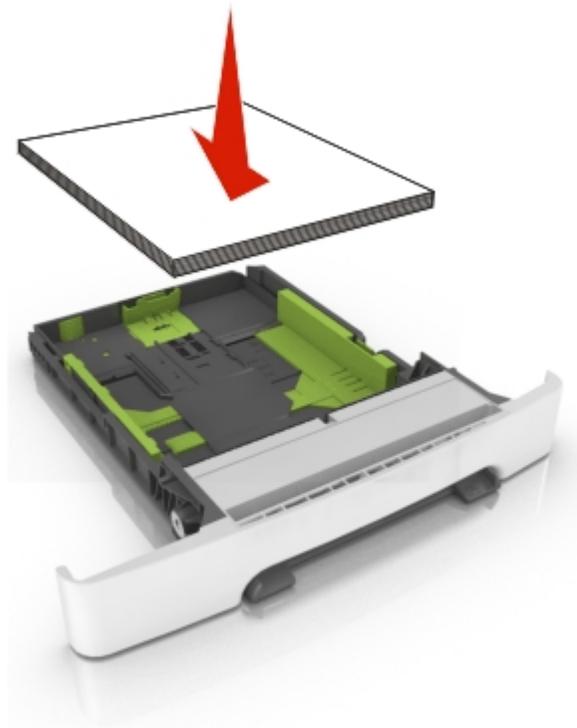
Load paper properly

- Make sure the paper lies flat in the tray.

Loading paper



- Do not remove a tray while the printer is printing.
- Do not load a tray while the printer is printing. Load it before printing, or wait for a prompt to load it.
- Do not load too much paper. Make sure the stack height is below the maximum paper fill indicator.
- Do not slide the paper into the tray. Load paper as shown in the illustration below.



- Make sure the guides in the tray or the multipurpose feeder are properly positioned and are not pressing tightly against the paper or envelopes.

Use recommended paper

- Use only recommended paper or specialty media.
- Do not load wrinkled, creased, damp, bent, or curled paper.

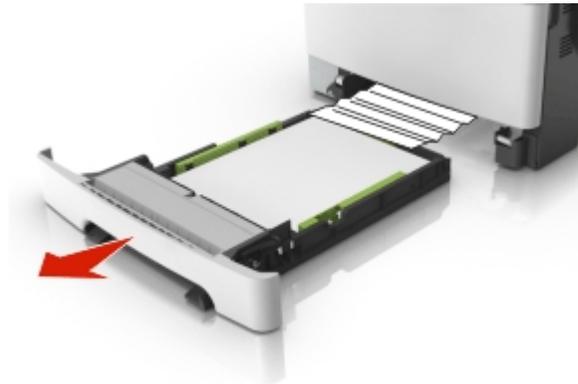
- Flex and straighten paper before loading it,



- Do not use paper that has been cut or trimmed by hand.
- Do not mix paper sizes, weights, or types in the same tray.
- Make sure that the paper size and type are set correctly on the computer or printer control panel.
- Store paper per manufacturer recommendations.

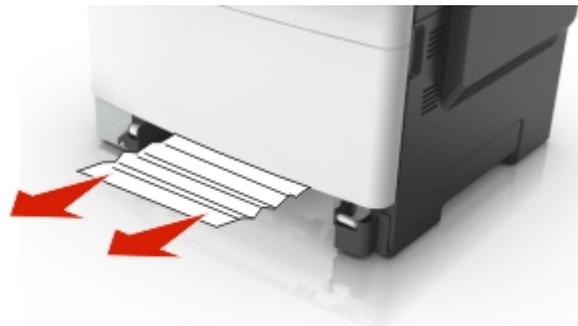
200 paper jams

- 1 Pull tray 1 out.



- 2 Firmly grasp the jammed paper, and then gently pull it out.

Note: Make sure all paper fragments are removed.



- 3 Push tray 1 back in.

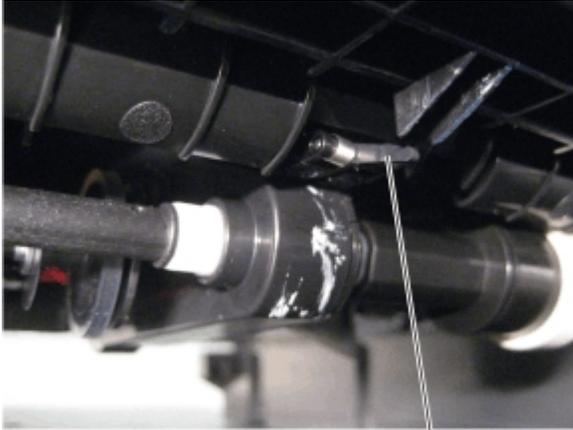
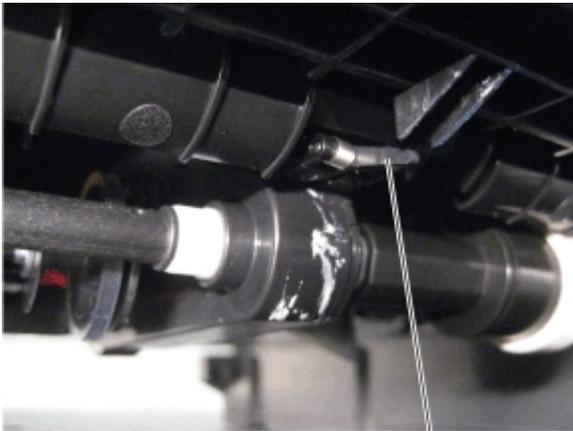
- 4 From the operator panel, touch **Continue, jam cleared**.

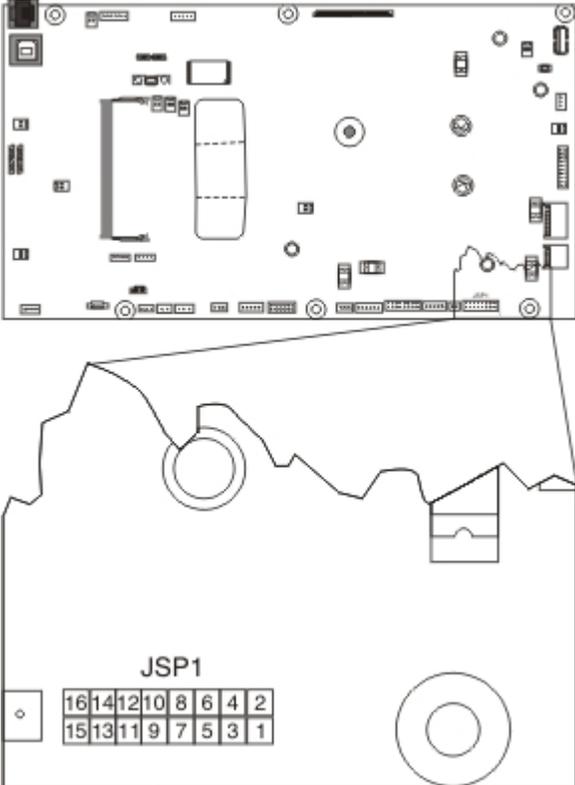
200.xx paper jams

Error code	Description	Action
200.xx Paper jam	A single page of media jam at the input (S2) sensor. Multiple pages of media are jammed at the input sensor.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Pull out tray 1. • Remove the jammed page(s). • If the problem persists, then see “200.xx Input (S2) sensor service check” on page 41.
200.01 Paper jam	The input (S2) sensor is obstructed.	
200.02 Paper jam	The input (S2) sensor was made early.	
200.03 Paper jam	The input (S2) sensor did not make.	
200.05 Paper jam	The input (S2) sensor did not break.	
200.20 Paper jam	The staging motor has an error.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check the condition of the pick tires, and replace if necessary. See “Pick tires removal” on page 305. • See “147.xx Paper pick motor drive assembly service check” on page 90.
200.21 Paper jam		
200.22 Paper jam		
201.xx Paper jam	A software induced stoppage has occurred. This should not happen in the field.	POR the printer.

200.xx Input (S2) sensor service check

The input (S2) sensor is part of the paper pick motor drive assembly FRU, and is not available otherwise.

Actions	Yes	No
<p>Step 1 Remove tray 1.</p> <p>Is the input S2 sensor flag (A) damaged?</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">A</p>	<p>Replace the paper pick motor drive assembly. See "Paper pick motor drive assembly (standard tray) removal" on page 286.</p>	<p>Go to step 2.</p>
<p>Step 2 Enter Diagnostics Menu.</p> <p>Turn the printer on, press and hold 3 and 6, and release the buttons with the installed memory and processor speed displays.</p> <p>Perform the Base Sensor Test. See "BASE SENSOR TEST" on page 173.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a Select Base Sensor Test, and press Select. b Select S2 Sensor, and press Select. c Pull tray 1 out, and rotate the S2 sensor flag (A). (The S2 sensor is located in the front of the center paper pick motor drive assembly housing.) It should rotate freely and return to its original position.  <p style="text-align: center;">A</p>		

Actions	Yes	No
<p>Step 3 Watch the display while pushing up on the flag.</p> <p>Does the display indicate Media Clean and Media Present?</p>	Problem resolved.	Go to step 4.
<p>Step 4 Turn the printer off, and remove the rear cover. See “Rear cover removal” on page 218.</p> <p>Is the JSP1 cable connector properly connected to the controller board?</p> 	Go to step 5.	Reset the connector.
<p>Step 5 Turn the printer on, and check the voltage at JSP1 pin 15.</p> <p>Is the voltage approximately +5 V dc?</p>	Replace the paper pick motor drive assembly. See “Paper pick motor drive assembly (standard tray) removal” on page 286.	Replace the controller board. See “Controller board removal” on page 235.

202 paper jams

Fuser paper jam

- 1 Open the front door.



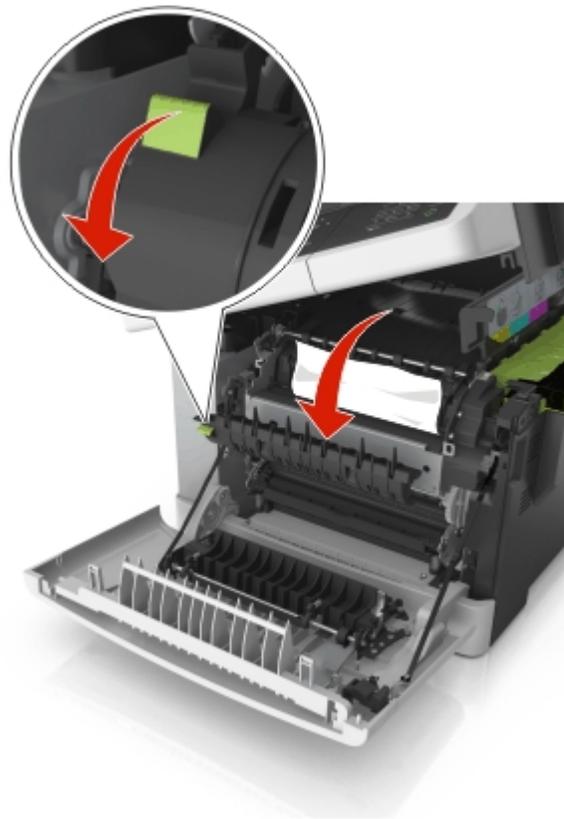
CAUTION—HOT SURFACE: The inside of the printer might be hot. To reduce the risk of injury from a hot component, allow the surface to cool before touching.



2 Open the top door.



- 3 Pull the green lever to open the fuser cover.



- 4 Hold down the fuser cover, and then remove the jammed paper.

Note: Make sure all paper fragments are removed.



- 5 Slide and hold the release latch on the right side of the printer, and then slowly close the top door.



- 6 Close the front door.



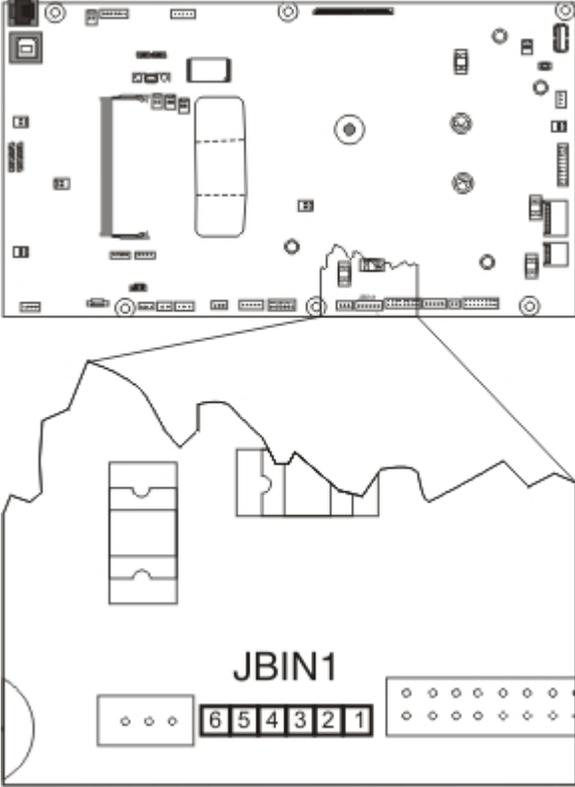
- 7 From the printer control panel, touch the check mark to clear the message and continue printing. For non-touch printer models, select **Next>Clear the jam**, press **OK**, and then press **OK** to confirm.

Additional checks—202 paper jams

Error code	Description	Action
202.xx Paper jam	A single page of media is jammed at the exit sensor. Multiple pages of media are jammed at the exit sensor.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Open the front door to access the jam area. • Remove the jammed page or pages. • If the problem persists, then see “202.xx fuser exit sensor service check” on page 47.
202.01 Paper jam	The exit sensor is obstructed.	
202.02 Paper jam	The exit sensor was made early.	
202.03 Paper jam	The exit sensor did not make.	
202.04 Paper jam	The exit sensor broke early.	
202.05 Paper jam	The exit sensor did not break.	
202.51 Paper jam	The exit sensor is obstructed. The fuser is past end of life.	
202.52 Paper jam	The exit sensor was made early. The fuser is past end of life.	
202.53 Paper jam	The exit sensor did not make. The fuser is past end of life.	
202.54 Paper jam	The exit sensor broke early. The fuser is past end of life.	
202.55 Paper jam	The exit sensor did not break. The fuser is past end of life.	

202.xx fuser exit sensor service check

Actions	Yes	No
<p>Step 1 Open the front cover.</p>  <p>Is the sensor dislodged or damaged?</p>	<p>Replace the fuser exit sensor. See “Fuser exit sensor removal” on page 256.</p>	<p>Go to step 2.</p>
<p>Step 2 Enter Diagnostics Menu. Turn the printer off, press and hold 3 and 6, turn the printer on, and then release the buttons when the installed memory and processor speed displays) Perform the Base Sensor Test. See “BASE SENSOR TEST” on page 173.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a Select Base Sensor Test, and press Select. b Select Fuser Exit Sensor, and press Select. c Watch the display while rotating the flag in and out of the sensor. <p>Did the sensor go from closed to open?</p>	<p>Problem solved.</p>	<p>Go to step 4.</p>

Actions	Yes	No
<p>Step 3</p> <p>Turn the printer off, and then remove the rear shield. See “Rear cover removal” on page 218.</p> <p>Is the cable correctly connected to JBIN1 on the controller board and to the sensor?</p> 	Go to step 5.	Reconnect the cable.
<p>Step 4</p> <p>Turn the printer on, and check the values at JBIN1:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Pin 4: 0 V dc (+5 V dc during cycle) Pin 5: +0 V dc (unblocked), +3.3 V dc (blocked) Pin 6: Ground <p>Are the values correct?</p>	Replace the fuser exit sensor. See “Fuser exit sensor removal” on page 256.	Replace the controller board. See “Controller board removal” on page 235.

203 paper jams

Paper jam in the standard bin

- 1 Open the top door.



- 2 Firmly grasp the jammed paper on each side, and then gently pull out.

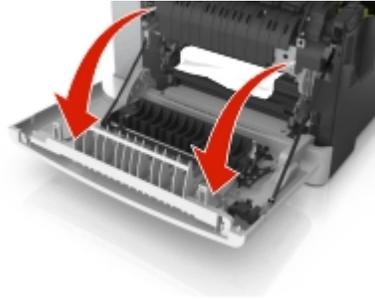
Note: Make sure all paper fragments are removed.



- 3 Open the front door.

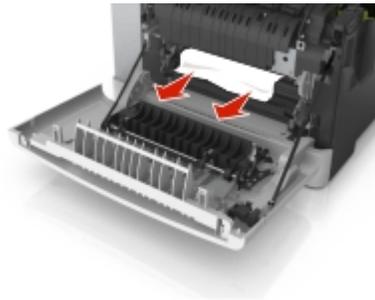


CAUTION—HOT SURFACE: The inside of the printer might be hot. To reduce the risk of injury from a hot component, allow the surface to cool before touching.

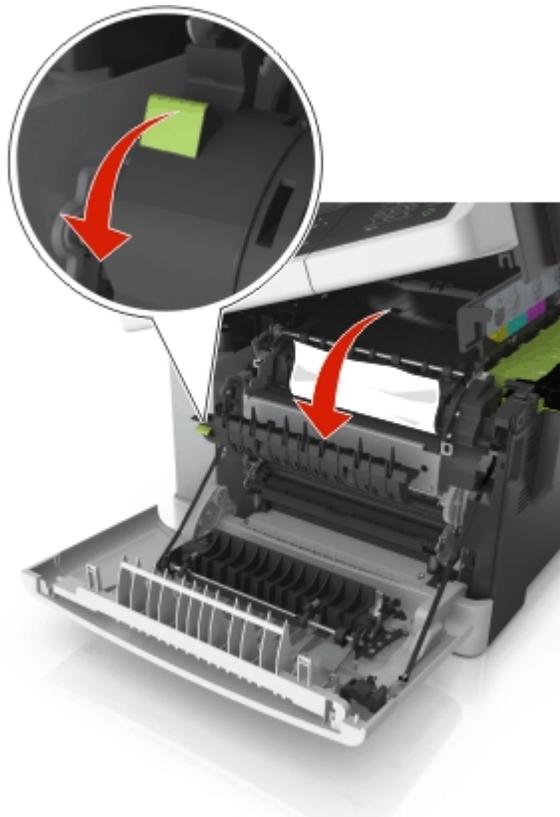


a If there is a jammed paper under the fuser, then firmly grasp the paper on each side, and then gently pull it out.

Note: Make sure all paper fragments are removed.



b Pull the green lever to open the fuser cover.



c If there is a jammed paper in the fuser, then hold down the fuser cover, and then remove the paper.

Note: Make sure all paper fragments are removed.



4 Slide and hold the release latch on the right side of the printer, and then slowly close the top door.



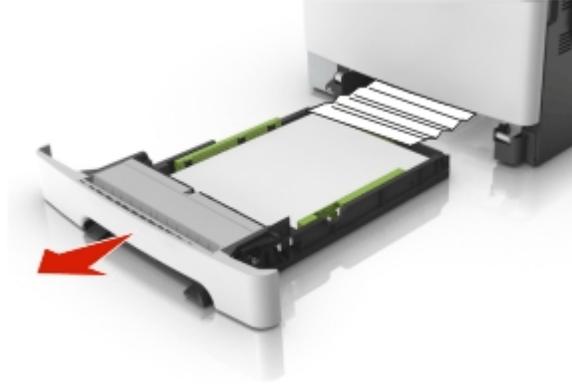
5 Close the front door.



6 From the printer control panel, touch the check mark to clear the message and continue printing. For non-touch-screen printer models, select **Next>Clear the jam**, press **OK**, and then press **OK** to confirm.

230 paper jams

- 1 Pull tray 1 out.



- 2 Firmly grasp the jammed paper, and then gently pull it out.

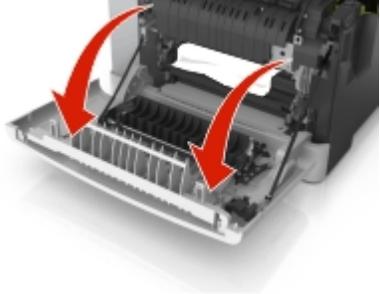
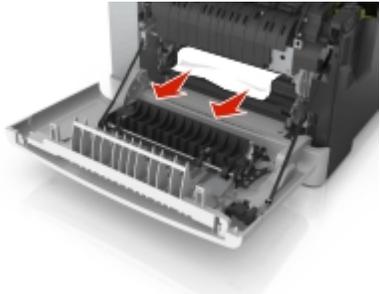
Note: Make sure all paper fragments are removed.



- 3 Push tray 1 back in.

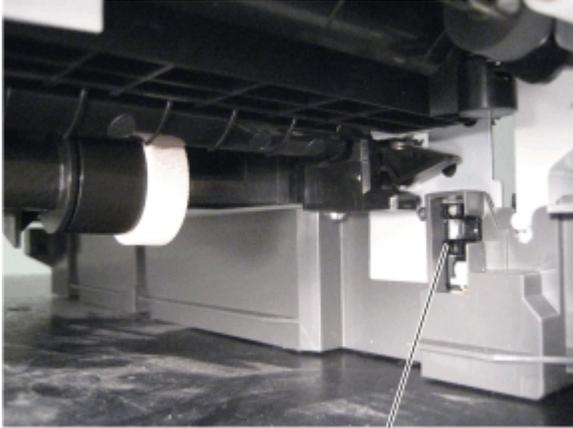
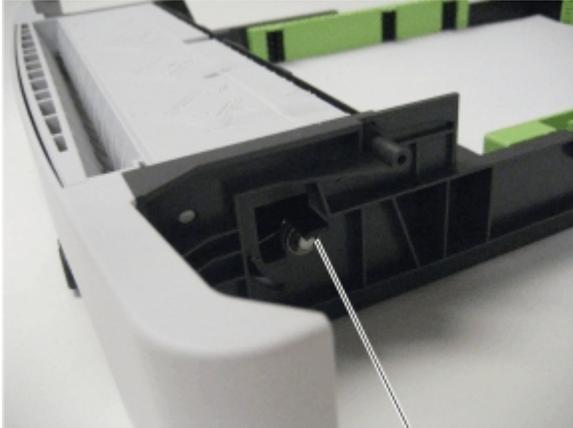
- 4 From the printer control panel, touch the check mark to clear the message and continue printing. For non-touch-screen printer models, select **Next>Clear the jam**, press **OK**, and then press **OK** to confirm..

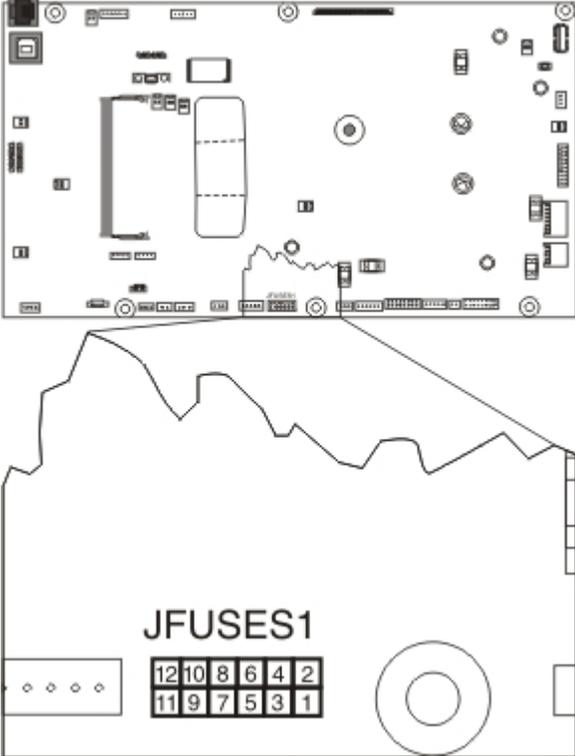
Additional checks—230 paper jams

Error code	Description	Action
230.xx Paper jam	A single page of media is jammed at the inner door. Multiple pages of media are jammed at the inner door.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Open the front door to access the jam area.  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Remove the jammed page or pages.  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> If the problem persists, then see “230.xx Duplex/manual feed sensor (S1) service check” on page 53.
230.01 Paper jam	The Duplex (S1) sensor is obstructed.	
230.02 Paper jam	The Duplex (S1) sensor was made early.	
230.03 Paper jam	The Duplex (S1) sensor did not make.	
230.06 Paper jam	No media in duplexer.	

230.xx Duplex/manual feed sensor (S1) service check

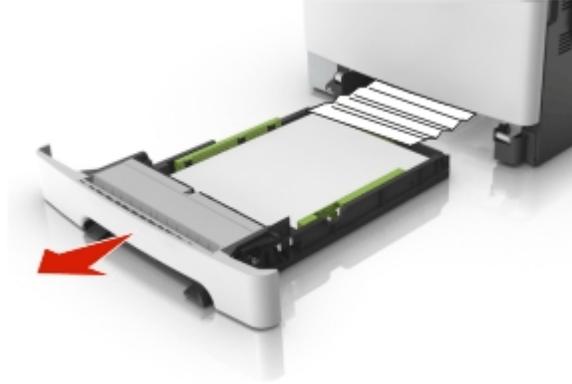
Actions	Yes	No
Step 1 Is the printer setting on a hard, flat surface?	Go to step 2.	Make sure the printer is setting on a level, flat surface
Step 2 Enter Diagnostics Menu. Turn the printer off, press and hold 3 and 6 , turn the printer on, and then release the buttons when the installed memory and processor speed displays). Perform the Base Sensor Test. See “BASE SENSOR TEST” on page 173. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a Select Base Sensor Test, and press Select. b Select S1, and press Select. c Install tray 1. Does the display indicate InputS1-Media Clear... ?	Go to step 3.	Go to step 5.

Actions	Yes	No
<p>Step 3 Pull tray 1 out.</p> <p>Does the display indicate InputS1-Media Present...?</p>	The sensor is functioning correctly.	Go to step 4.
<p>Step 4 Remove the tray, and inspect the sensor (A).</p>  <p>Is there something obstructing the sensor?</p>	Remove the obstruction, and restart the test.	Go to step 5.
<p>Step 5 Inspect the spring-loaded shaft/flag (B) in the tray.</p>  <p>The flag portion of the shaft intercepts the sensor, except when a sheet is being staged for duplexing.</p> <p>Does the shaft rotate freely and return to home position (flag at top of rotation?)</p>	Go to step 6.	Replace the tray with a new one.
<p>Step 6 is the flag on the shaft broken?</p>	Replace the tray.	Go to step 7.

Actions	Yes	No
<p>Step 7</p> <p>Turn the printer off, and remove the rear shield. See “Rear cover removal” on page 218.</p> <p>Verify the cable is correctly connected to JFUSES1 on the controller board and to the sensor.</p>  <p>Is the sensor cable properly connected?</p>	<p>Go to step 8.</p>	<p>Reconnect the cable. If the problem persists, then go to step 8.</p>
<p>Step 8</p> <p>Turn the printer on, and check the values at JFUSES1:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Pin 8: Ground Pin 9: +3.3 V dc <p>Are the values approximately correct?</p>	<p>Replace the duplex sensor. See “Duplex sensor removal” on page 241.</p>	<p>Replace the controller board. See “Controller board removal” on page 235.</p>

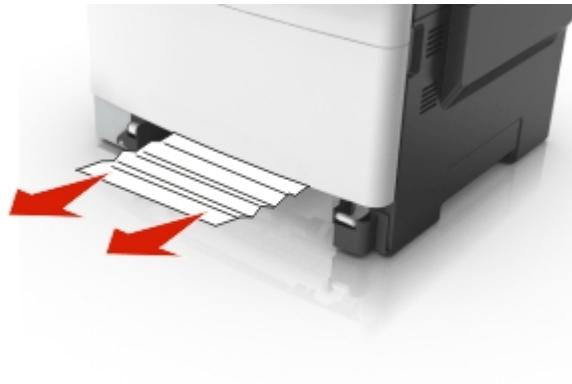
232 paper jams

- 1 Pull tray 1 out.



- 2 Firmly grasp the jammed paper, and then gently pull it out.

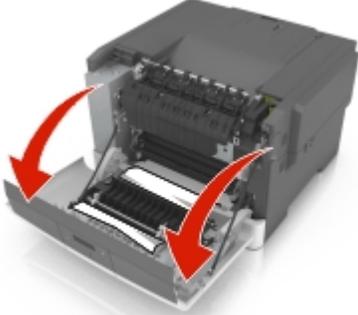
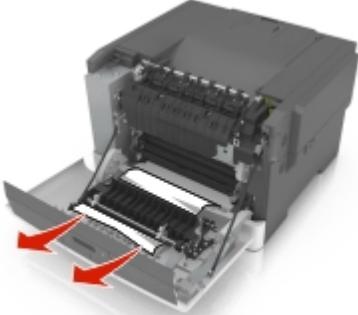
Note: Make sure all paper fragments are removed.



- 3 Push tray 1 back in.

- 4 From the printer control panel, touch the check mark to clear the message and continue printing. For non-touch-screen printer models, select **Next>Clear the jam**, press **OK**, and then press **OK** to confirm.

Additional checks—232 paper jams

Error code	Description	Action
232.xx Paper jam	Paper jam at input sensor.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Open the front door to access the jam area.  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Remove the jammed page(s).  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If the problem persists, then see “200.xx Input (S2) sensor service check” on page 41.
232.02 Paper jam	The input (S2) sensor was made early while duplexing.	
232.03 Paper jam	The input (S2) sensor did not make while duplexing.	
232.05 Paper jam	The input (S2) sensor did not break while duplexing.	

242 paper jams

- 1 Pull tray 1 out.



- 2 Firmly grasp the jammed paper, and then gently pull it out.



Note: Make sure all paper fragments are removed.

- 3 Push tray 1 back in.
- 4 From the printer control panel, touch the check mark to clear the message and continue printing. For non-touch-screen printer models, select **Next>Clear the jam**, press **OK**, and then press **OK** to confirm.

Additional checks—242 paper jams

Error code	Description	Action
242.xx Paper jam <x> Pages Jammed	A single or multiple page media jam in the 650-sheet Duo Drawer (tray 2). Multiple pages of media are jammed in the 650-sheet Duo Drawer (tray 2).	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Clear paper path. • Fan the media. • Verify the proper tray settings for the media. • Check the condition of the pick tires. • Make sure the tray is fully inserted. • If the above doesn't clear the error, then see "200.xx Input (S2) sensor service check" on page 41.

243 paper jams

- 1 Pull tray 1 out.



- 2 Firmly grasp the jammed paper, and then gently pull it out.

Note: Make sure all paper fragments are removed.



- 3 Push tray 1 back in.
- 4 From the printer control panel, touch the check mark to clear the message and continue printing. For non-touch-screen printer models, select **Next>Clear the jam**, press **OK**, and then press **OK** to confirm.

Additional checks—243 paper jams

Error code	Description	Action
243.xx Paper jam <x> Pages Jammed	A single or multiple page media jam in the 650-sheet Duo Drawer (tray 2). Multiple pages of media are jammed in the 650-sheet Duo Drawer (tray 2).	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Clear paper path. • Fan the media. • Verify the proper tray settings for the media. • Check the condition of the pick tires. • Make sure the tray is fully inserted. • If the above doesn't clear the error, then see "200.xx Input (S2) sensor service check" on page 41.

244 paper jams

- 1 Pull tray 1 out.



- 2 Firmly grasp the jammed paper, and then gently pull it out.

Note: Make sure all paper fragments are removed.



- 3 Push tray 1 back in.
- 4 From the printer control panel, touch the check mark to clear the message and continue printing. For non-touch-screen printer models, select **Next>Clear the jam**, press **OK**, and then press **OK** to confirm.

Additional checks—244 paper jams

Error code	Description	Action
244.xx Paper jam Check <area>	A single or multiple page media jam in the 650-sheet Duo Drawer (tray 2). Multiple pages of media are jammed in the 650-sheet Duo Drawer (tray 2).	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Clear paper path. • Fan the media. • Verify the proper tray settings for the media. • Check the condition of the pick tires. • Make sure the tray is fully inserted. • If the above doesn't clear the error, then see "200.xx Input (S2) sensor service check" on page 41.

250 paper jams

- 1 Push the paper release lever in the multipurpose feeder to access the jammed paper, and then gently pull out the paper.

Note: Make sure all paper fragments are removed.



- 2 Flex the sheets back and forth to loosen them, and then fan them. Do not fold or crease the paper. Straighten the edges on a level surface.

- 3 Reload the paper into the multipurpose feeder.



- 4 Slide the paper guide until it rests lightly against the edge of the paper stack.



- 5 From the control panel, touch the check mark to clear the message and continue printing. For non-touch-screen printer models, select **Next>OK>Clear the jam**, press **OK>OK**.

Additional checks—250 paper jams

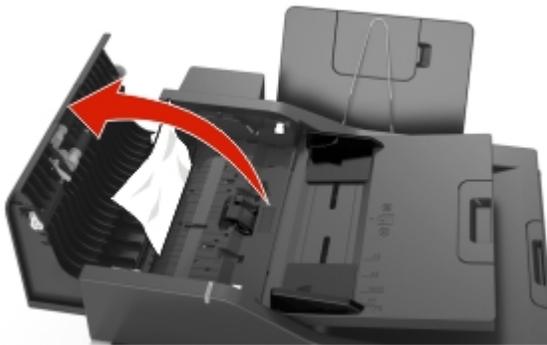
Error code	Description	Action
250.xx Paper Jam Check Manual Feeder	A single page of media is jammed in the multipurpose feeder.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Open tray 2 to access the jam area, and remove the jammed page.  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Fan the media. Verify the proper tray settings for the media. Check the condition of the pick tires. Make sure the tray is fully inserted. If the above doesn't clear the error, then see "200.xx Input (S2) sensor service check" on page 41.

28x.xx paper jams

- 1 Remove all original documents from the ADF tray.

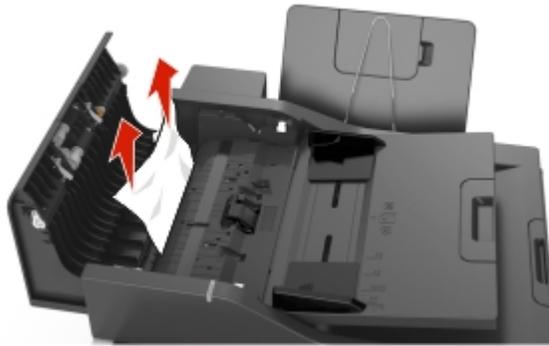
Note: The message is cleared when the pages are removed from the ADF tray.

- 2 Open the ADF cover.



- 3 Firmly grasp the jammed paper on each side, and then gently pull out.

Note: Make sure all paper fragments are removed.



- 4 Close the ADF cover.
- 5 Straighten the edges of the original documents, then load the documents into the ADF, and then adjust the paper guide.
- 6 From the printer control panel, touch the check mark to clear the message and continue printing. For non-touch-screen printer models, select **Next>OK>Clear the jam**, press **OK>OK**

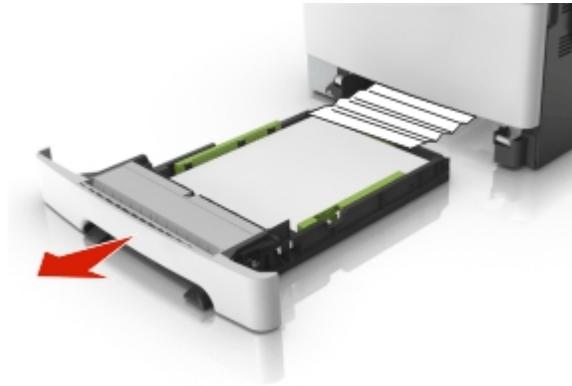
28x.xx paper jams

Error code	Description	Action
280.06	Paper Missing Posted when paper is removed from input tray after job is initiated.	Ensure that the ADF document sensor is in the proper position and clear of dust and deris. Retry the job. If the error recurs, then see "ADF paper jam service check" on page 138.
282.01	ADF Static Jam Interval Sensor Interval Sensor active at POR time.	Remove the sheet of paper rom the ADF. Retry the job. If the error recurs, then see "ADF paper jam service check" on page 138.
282.03	ADF Pickup Jam Leading edge of paper does not reach Interval Sensor in time.	Remove the sheet of paper rom the ADF. Check the media weight, Heavier paper should not be used. Make the stack of documents in the tray smaller. Ensure that the media is not being shoved into the tray. Retry the job. If the error recurs, then see "ADF paper jam service check" on page 138.
282.05	ADF Long Page Trailing edge of paper never clears interval sensor (but 1st Scan Sensor and Exit Sensor are both active).	
283.01	ADF Static Jam 1st Scan Sensor 1st Scan Sensor active at POR time.	Inspect the ADF paper path for paper fragments. Restart the MFP. If the error recurs, then see "ADF paper jam service check" on page 138.
283.03	ADF Feed Jam Leading edge of paper does not reach 1st Scan Sensor in time.	Remove the sheet of paper rom the ADF. Retry the job. If the error recurs, then see "ADF paper jam service check" on page 138.
283.05	1st Scan Sensor Jam Trailing edge of paper never clears 1st Scan Sensor.	Remove the sheet of paper rom the ADF. Retry the job. If the error recurs, then see "ADF paper jam service check" on page 138.

Error code	Description	Action
286.02	ADF Backfeed Page(s) in the exit area accidentally gets pulled into the reverse path.	Too many sheets of paper in the ADF exit bin. Remove the sheets from the ADF exit bin.
286.03	ADF Backside Feed Jam Leading edge of paper does not reach the multi-purpose Interval Sensor in time when page routed through reverse area.	Remove the sheet of paper from the ADF. Retry the job. If the error recurs, then see "ADF paper jam service check" on page 138.
286.05	ADF Backside Jam Trailing edge of paper does not reach the multi-purpose Interval Sensor in time when page routed through reverse area.	

29x.xx paper jams

- 1 Pull tray 1 out.



- 2 Firmly grasp the jammed paper, and then gently pull it out.

Note: Make sure all paper fragments are removed.



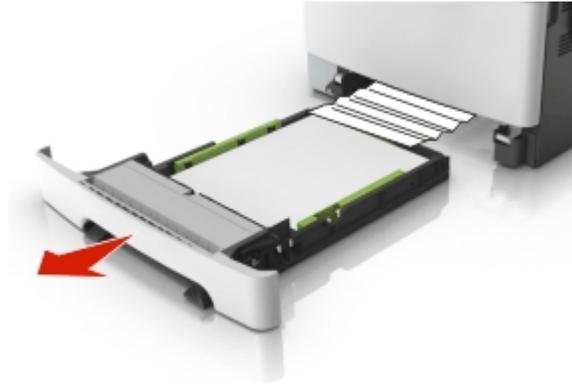
- 3 Push tray 1 back in.
- 4 From the operator panel, touch **Continue, jam cleared**.

29x.xx paper jams

Error code	Description	Action
290.11	ADF Cover Open Jam Posted when ADF top cover is opened during ADF job.	Close the cover. If the error recurs, then perform the ADF cover open service check

xxx.xx paper jams

- 1 Pull tray 1 out.



- 2 Firmly grasp the jammed paper, and then gently pull it out.

Note: Make sure all paper fragments are removed.



- 3 Push tray 1 back in.
- 4 From the operator panel, touch **Continue, jam cleared**.

xxx.xx paper jams

Error code	Description	Action
xxx.xx	ADF Shingle-fed Jam TE never clears interval sensor but does clear 1st scan sensor.	

User messages

Understanding the printer messages

Message	Action
Adjusting color	Wait for the process to complete.
Change [paper source] to [custom type name]	Try one or more of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Load the correct size and type of paper in the tray, and then select Finished changing paper on the printer control panel to clear the message and continue printing. For non-touch-screen models, press OK to confirm. <p>Note: Make sure the paper size and type are specified in the Paper menu on the printer control panel.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Cancel the job.
Change [paper source] to [custom string]	
Change [paper source] to [paper type] [paper size]	
Close door	Make sure the right side cover is installed, and then close the front and top doors to clear the message.
[Color] cartridge low [88.xy]	You may need to order a toner cartridge. If necessary, select Continue to clear the message and continue printing. For non-touch-screen models, press OK to confirm.
[Color] cartridge nearly low [88.xy]	If necessary, select Continue to clear the message and continue printing. For non-touch-screen models, press OK to confirm.
[Color] cartridge very low [88.xy]	You may need to replace the toner cartridge very soon. If necessary, select Continue to clear the message and continue printing. For non-touch-screen models, press OK to confirm.
Black and color imaging kit low [84.xy]	You may need to order an imaging kit. If necessary, select Continue to clear the message and continue printing. For non-touch-screen models, press OK to confirm.
Black and color imaging kit nearly low [84.xy]	If necessary, select Continue to clear the message and continue printing. For non-touch-screen models, press OK to confirm.
Black and color imaging kit very low [84.xy]	You may need to replace the imaging kit very soon. If necessary, select Continue to clear the message and continue printing. For non-touch-screen models, press OK to confirm.
Complex page, some data may not have printed [39]	Try one or more of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> From the printer control panel, select Continue to ignore the message and continue printing. For non-touch-screen models, press OK to confirm. Cancel the current job. For non-touch-screen models, press OK to confirm. Install additional printer memory.

Message	Action
Configuration change, some held jobs were not restored [57]	<p>Held jobs are invalidated because of any of the following possible changes in the printer:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The printer firmware has been updated. • The tray for the print job is removed. • The print job is sent from a flash drive that is no longer attached to the USB port. • The printer hard disk contains print jobs that were stored when the hard disk was installed in a different printer model. <p>From the printer control panel, select Continue to clear the message. For non-touch-screen models, press OK to confirm.</p>
Defective flash detected [51]	<p>Try one or more of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Replace the defective flash memory card. • From the printer control panel, select Continue to ignore the message and continue printing. For non-touch-screen models, press OK to confirm. • Cancel the current print job.
Error reading USB drive. Remove USB.	An unsupported USB device is inserted. Remove the USB device, and then insert a supported one.
Error reading USB hub. Remove hub.	An unsupported USB hub has been inserted. Remove the USB hub, and then install a supported one.
Incompatible tray [x] [59]	Remove, and then reinstall the indicated tray to clear the message.
Incorrect paper size, open [paper source] [34]	<p>Try one or more of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Load the correct size of paper in the tray. • From the printer control panel, select Continue to clear the message and print using a different tray. For non-touch-screen models, press OK to confirm. • Check the tray length and width guides and make sure the paper is loaded properly in the tray. • Make sure the correct paper size and type are specified in the Printing Preferences or in the Print dialog. • Make sure the paper size and type are specified in the Paper menu on the printer control panel. • Make sure that the paper size is correctly set. For example, if MP Feeder Size is set to Universal, then make sure the paper is large enough for the data being printed. • Cancel the print job.
Insert Tray [x]	Insert the indicated tray into the printer.
Insufficient memory for Flash Memory Defragment operation [37]	<p>Try one or more of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • From the printer control panel, select Continue to stop the defragmentation and continue printing. For non-touch-screen models, press OK to confirm.

Message	Action
Insufficient memory, some Held Jobs were deleted [37]	The printer deleted some held job to process current job. Select Continue to clear the message. For non-touch-screen models, press OK to confirm.
Insufficient memory to collate job [37]	Try one or more of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> From the printer control panel, select Continue to print the part of the job already stored and begin collating the rest of the print job. For non-touch-screen models, press OK to confirm. Cancel the current print job.
Insufficient memory to support Resource Save feature [35]	Install additional printer memory or select Continue on the printer control panel to disable Resource Save, clear the message, and continue printing. For non-touch-screen printer models, press OK to confirm.
Insufficient memory, some held jobs will not be restored [37]	Try one or more of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> From the printer control panel, select Continue to clear the message. For non-touch-screen printer models, press OK to confirm. Delete other held jobs to free up additional printer memory.
Load [paper source] with [custom type name]	Try one or more of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Load the tray or feeder with the correct size and type of paper. To use the tray with the correct paper size or type, select Finished loading paper on the printer control panel. For non-touch-screen printer models, press OK to confirm. Note: If the printer detects a tray that has the correct paper type and size, then it feeds from that tray. If the printer cannot detect a tray that has the correct paper type and size, then it prints from the default paper source. Cancel the current job.
Load [paper source] with [custom string]	
Load [paper source] with [paper size]	
Load [paper source] with [paper type] [paper size]	
Load Manual Feeder with [custom string]	Try one or more of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Load the feeder with the correct size and type of paper. Depending on your printer model, touch Prompt each page, paper loaded or press OK on the printer control panel to clear the message and continue printing. Cancel the current job.
Load Manual Feeder with [custom type name]	
Load Manual Feeder with [paper size]	
Load Manual Feeder with [paper type] [paper size]	
Maintenance kit low [80.xy]	You may need to order a maintenance kit. For more information, contact customer support at http://support.lexmark.com or your service representative. If necessary, select Continue to clear the message and continue printing. For non-touch-screen printer models, press OK to confirm.

Message	Action
Maintenance kit nearly low [80.xy]	For more information, contact customer support at http://support.lexmark.com or your service representative. If necessary, select Continue to clear the message and continue printing. For non-touch-screen printer models, press OK to confirm.
Maintenance kit very low [80.xy]	You may need to replace the maintenance kit very soon. For more information, contact customer support at http://support.lexmark.com or your service representative. If necessary, select Continue to clear the message and continue printing. For non-touch-screen printer models, press OK to confirm.
Memory full [38]	Try one or more of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • From the printer control panel, select Cancel job to clear the message. For non-touch-screen printer models, press OK to confirm. • Turn off the printer, wait for about 10 seconds, and then turn the printer back on. • Update the network firmware in the printer or print server. For more information, contact customer support.
Not enough free space in flash memory for resources [52]	Try one or more of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • From the printer control panel, select Cancel job to clear the message. For non-touch-screen printer models, press OK to confirm. • Delete fonts, macros, and other data stored in the flash memory. • Upgrade to a larger capacity flash memory card. <p>Note: Downloaded fonts and macros that are not previously stored in the flash memory are deleted.</p>

Message	Action
<p>Non-Lexmark [color] [supply type], see User's Guide [33.xy]</p>	<p>Note: The supply type can be toner cartridge or the imaging kit.</p> <p>The printer has detected a non-Lexmark supply or part installed in the printer.</p> <p>Your Lexmark printer is designed to function best with genuine Lexmark supplies and parts. Use of third-party supplies or parts may affect the performance, reliability, or life of the printer and its imaging components.</p> <p>All life indicators are designed to function with Lexmark supplies and parts, and may deliver unpredictable results if third-party supplies or parts are used. Imaging component usage beyond the intended life may damage your Lexmark printer or its associated components.</p> <p>Warning—Potential Damage: Potential Damage - Use of third-party supplies or parts can affect warranty coverage. Damage caused by the use of third-party supplies or parts may not be covered by warranty. To accept any and all of these risks, and to proceed with the use of non-genuine supplies or parts in your printer, press and hold Cancel and # on the printer control panel simultaneously for 15 seconds. For non-touch-screen printer models, press OK and Cancel simultaneously for 15 seconds to clear the message and continue printing. If you do not wish to accept these risks, then remove the third-party supply or part from your printer, and then install a genuine Lexmark supply or part.</p> <p>Note: For the list of supported supplies, see the "Ordering supplies" section of the User's Guide or visit http://support.lexmark.com.</p>
<p>PPDS font error [50]</p>	<p>Try one or more of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • From the printer control panel, select Continue to clear the message and continue printing. For non-touch-screen printer models, press OK to confirm. • If the printer cannot find the requested font, then from the printer control panel, navigate to: PPDS menu > Best Fit > On <p>The printer will find a similar font and reformat the affected text.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Cancel the job.
<p>Reinstall missing or unresponsive [color] cartridge [31.xy]</p>	<p>Try one or more of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Install the missing toner cartridge. For more information, see the "Replacing supplies" section of the <i>User's Guide</i>. • Remove the unresponsive cartridge, and then reinstall it. <p>Note: If the message appears after reinstalling the supply, then the cartridge may be defective. Replace the cartridge.</p>

Message	Action
Reinstall missing or unresponsive black and color imaging kit [31.xy]	<p>Try one or more of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Install the missing imaging kit. For more information, see the "Replacing supplies" section of the <i>User's Guide</i>. • Remove the unresponsive imaging kit, and then reinstall it. <p>Note: If the message appears after reinstalling the supply, then the imaging kit may be defective. Replace the imaging kit.</p>
Reload printed pages in Tray [x]	<p>Try one or more of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • From the printer control panel, select Continue to clear the message and continue printing the second side of the sheet. For non-touch-screen printer models, press OK to confirm.
Remove packaging material, [area name]	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1 Remove any remaining packing material from the indicated location. 2 From the printer control panel, touch Continue to clear the message. For non-touch-screen printer models, press OK to confirm.
Remove paper from standard output bin	Remove the paper stack from the standard bin.
Replace [color] cartridge, 0 estimated pages remain [88.xy]	<p>Replace the indicated toner cartridge to clear the message and continue printing. For more information, see the instruction sheet that came with the supply.</p> <p>Note: If you do not have a replacement cartridge, then see the "Ordering supplies" section of the <i>User's Guide</i> or visit http://support.lexmark.com.</p>
Replace [color] cartridge, printer region mismatch [42.xy]	<p>Install a toner cartridge that matches the region number of the printer. <i>x</i> indicates the value of the printer region. <i>y</i> indicates the value of the cartridge region. <i>x</i> and <i>y</i> can have the following values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 0: Global • 1: United States, Canada • 2: European Union (EU), European Economic Area (EEA), Switzerland • 8: Rest of the world • 9: Invalid <p>Notes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The <i>x</i> and <i>y</i> values are the .xy of the error code shown on the printer control panel. • The <i>x</i> and <i>y</i> values must match for printing to continue.

Message	Action
Replace [type] imaging kit, 0 estimated pages remain [84.xy]	<p>Replace the indicated imaging kit to clear the message and continue printing. For more information, see the instruction sheet that came with the supply.</p> <p>Note: If you do not have a replacement imaging kit, then see the "Ordering supplies" section of the <i>User's Guide</i> or visit http://support.lexmark.com.</p>
Replace defective [color] cartridge [31.xy]	<p>Replace the defective toner cartridge to clear the message. For more information, see the instruction sheet that came with the supply.</p> <p>Note: If you do not have a replacement toner cartridge, then see the "Ordering supplies" section of the <i>User's Guide</i> or visit http://support.lexmark.com.</p>
Replace defective black and color imaging kit [31.xy]	<p>Replace the defective imaging kit to clear the message and continue printing. For more information, see the instruction sheet that came with the supply.</p> <p>Note: If you do not have a replacement imaging kit, then see the "Ordering supplies" section of the <i>User's Guide</i> or visit http://support.lexmark.com.</p>
Replace maintenance kit, 0 estimated pages remain [80.xy]	Contact customer support at http://support.lexmark.com or your service representative, and then report the message. The printer is scheduled for maintenance.
Replace missing [color] cartridge [31.xy]	Install the indicated toner cartridge to clear the message. For more information, see the "Replacing supplies" section of the <i>User's Guide</i> .
Replace missing black and color imaging kit [31.xy]	Install the indicated imaging kit to clear the message. For more information, see the "Replacing supplies" section of the <i>User's Guide</i> .
Replace waste toner bottle [82.xy]	Replace the waste toner bottle to clear the message.
Replace unsupported [color] cartridge [32.xy]	<p>Remove the toner cartridge, and then install a supported one to clear the message.</p> <p>Note: If you do not have a replacement cartridge, then see the "Ordering supplies" section of the <i>User's Guide</i> or visit http://support.lexmark.com.</p>
Replace unsupported black and color imaging kit [32.xy]	<p>Remove the indicated imaging kit, and then install a supported one to clear the message.</p> <p>Note: If you do not have a replacement imaging kit, then see the "Ordering supplies" section of the <i>User's Guide</i> or visit http://support.lexmark.com.</p>
Replace missing waste toner bottle [82.xy]	Install the missing waste toner bottle to clear the message. For more information, see the instruction sheet that came with the supply.

Message	Action
Restore held jobs?	Try one or more of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Select Restore on the printer control panel to restore all held jobs stored in the printer hard disk. For non-touch-screen printer models, press OK to confirm. • Select Do not restore if you do not want any print jobs to be restored. For non-touch-screen printer models, press OK to confirm.
SMTP server not set up. Contact system administrator.	From the printer control panel, touch Continue to clear the message. Note: If the message appears again, then contact your system support person
Some held jobs were not restored	From the printer control panel, select Continue to clear the message. For non-touch-screen printer models, press OK to confirm. Note: Held jobs that are not restored remain in the printer hard disk and are inaccessible.
Standard network software error [54]	Try one or more of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • From the printer control panel, select Continue to continue printing. For non-touch-screen printer models, press OK to confirm. • Turn off the printer and then turn it back on. • Update the network firmware in the printer or print server. For more information, contact customer support.
Standard USB port disabled [56]	From the printer control panel, select Continue to clear the message. For non-touch-screen printer models, press OK to confirm. Notes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The printer discards any data received through the USB port. • Make sure the USB Buffer menu is not set to Disabled.
Supply needed to complete job	Try one or more of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • From the printer control panel, touch Prompt for supplies to view all error messages that indicate what supplies are needed to continue processing the current job. For non-touch-screen printer models, press OK to clear the message and continue printing. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1 Order the missing supply immediately. 2 Install the supply. For more information, see the instruction sheet that came with the supply. • Cancel the print job, then install the missing supply, and then resent the print job.

Message	Action
Too many flash options installed [58]	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1 Turn off the printer. 2 Unplug the power cord from the electrical outlet. 3 Remove the extra trays. 4 Connect the power cord to properly grounded electrical outlet. 5 Turn the printer back on.
Unformatted flash detected [53]	<p>Try one or more of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • From the printer control panel, select Continue to continue printing. For non-touch-screen printer models, press OK to confirm. • Format the flash memory. <p>Note: If the error message remains, then the flash memory may be defective and need to be replaced.</p>
Waste toner bottle nearly full [82.xy]	<p>You may need to order a waste toner bottle. If necessary, select Continue on the printer control panel to clear the message and continue printing. For non-touch-screen printer models, press OK to confirm.</p>
Weblink server not set up. Contact system administrator.	<p>An error occurred on the SMTP server, or the SMTP server is not configured properly.</p> <p>From the printer control panel, touch Continue to clear the message.</p> <p>Note: If the message appears again, then contact your system support person.</p>

Service errors

- “1xx service error messages” on page 75
- “110.xx Printhead service check” on page 81
- “121.xx Fuser service check” on page 82
- “133.xx Toner meter sensors (Y, C, M, K) on TMC card service check” on page 86
- “141.xx—Cartridge motor error service check” on page 88
- “147.xx Paper pick motor drive assembly service check” on page 90
- “171.xx Fan error service check” on page 92
- “84x.xx service error messages” on page 93
- “840.xx service check” on page 94
- “843.xx service check” on page 95
- “ADF service check” on page 96
- “Flatbed legal scan service check” on page 97
- “9xx service error messages” on page 98
- “900.xx System software error service check” on page 102
- “91x.xx (910.xx-919.xx) Engine software service check” on page 106
- “950.xx NVRAM failure service check” on page 106

- “Network service check” on page 108

1xx service error messages

Error code	Description	Action
110.xx Service <color> Printhead	The printhead <color> error	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Perform a POR. • If the problem persists, then see “110.xx Printhead service check” on page 81
110.01 Service <color> Printhead	he printhead <color> lost HSYNC	
110.02 Service <color> Printhead	The printhead <color> failed to complete servo.	
110.03 Service <color> Printhead	The printhead <color> mirror motors lost motor lock.	
110.04 Service <color> Printhead	The printhead <color> mirror motors lost motor lock.	
110.05 Service <color> Printhead	Failure reading NVRAM from printhead	
110.06 Service <color> Printhead	The printhead <color> thermistor is open.	
110.07 Service <color> Printhead	The printhead <color> thermistor is shorted.	
110.08 Service <color> Printhead	The printhead <color> laser showed bad in testing.	
110.09 Service <color> Printhead	The printhead <color> SOS EOS measurement did not complete.	
110.10 Service <color> Printhead	The printhead <color> has bad SOS EOS measurement.	
110.11 Service <color> Printhead	Failure writing data to the printhead.	
110.12 Service <color> Printhead	Failure reading data from the printhead.	
110.13 Service <color> Printhead	Printhead declared error.	
121.xx Service Fuser Error	Fuser error	See “121.xx Fuser service check” on page 82.
121.01 Service Fuser Error	Attempting to print with estimated power at or below minimum power.	

Error code	Description	Action
121.02 Service Fuser Error	Fuser is over temperature.	Note: Some of these errors are caused by a faulty component on the LVPS. Check the history file in the printer to verify other occurrences. If there are others, then replace the LVPS. See “Low-voltage power supply (LVPS) assembly removal” on page 264. Then, see “121.xx Fuser service check” on page 82.
121.03 Service Fuser Error	Fuser open thermistor check failed.	See “121.xx Fuser service check” on page 82.
121.04 Service Fuser Error	Attempting to print with estimated power at or above minimum power.	
121.05 Service Fuser Error	Fuser failed to reach final temperature in time.	
121.06 Service Fuser Error	Attempting to print when the estimated power is too low.	
121.07 Service Fuser Error	Timed out waiting for home sensor event	
121.08 Service Fuser Error	Wrong lamp bit is set in NVRAM.	
121.10 Service Fuser Error	Fuser failed to warm up.	
121.11 Service Fuser Error	Fuser under temperature error while in standby.	
121.12 Service Fuser Error	Fuser under temperature error while printing.	
121.13 Service Fuser Error	Fuser open thermistor check failed for second thermistor.	
121.14 Service Fuser Error	Fuser shorted thermistor check failed for hot roll thermistor.	
121.15 Service Fuser Error	Fuser shorted thermistor check failed for second thermistor.	
121.16 Service Fuser Error	Estimated power is at or above the maximum power.	
121.17 Service Fuser Error	Total failure to close fuser nip.	
121.26 Service Fuser Error	Attempting to print with estimated power at or below minimum power.	

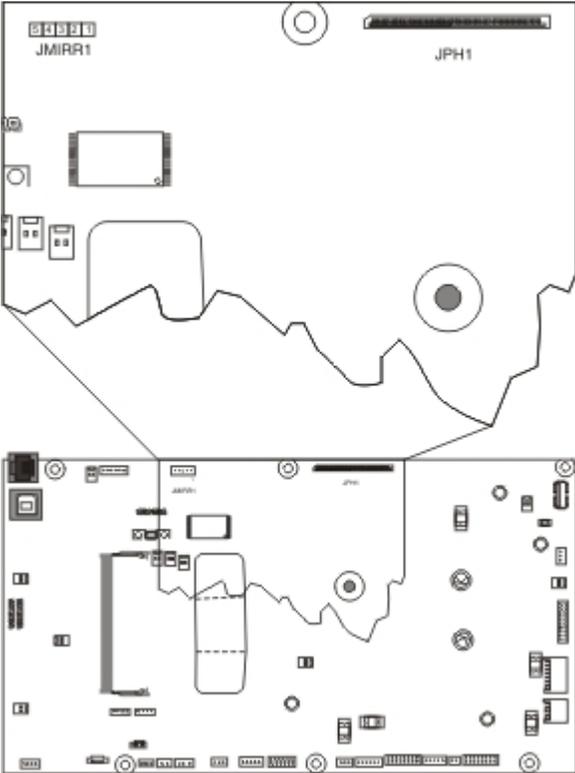
Error code	Description	Action
121.27 Service Fuser Error	Fuser over temperature.	Note: Some of these errors are caused by a faulty component on the LVPS. Check the history file in the printer to verify other occurrences. If there are others, then replace the LVPS. See “Low-voltage power supply (LVPS) assembly removal” on page 264. Then, see “121.xx Fuser service check” on page 82.
121.28 Service Fuser Error	Fuser open thermistor check failed.	See “121.xx Fuser service check” on page 82.
121.29 Service Fuser Error	Attempting to print with estimated power at or above minimum power.	
121.30 Service Fuser Error	Fuser failed to reach final temperature in time.	
121.31 Service Fuser Error	Fuser power is below minimum.	
121.36 Service Fuser Error	Fuser under temperature in standby.	
121.37 Service Fuser Error	Fuser under temperature while printing.	
121.38 Service Fuser Error	Fuser open thermistor.	
121.39 Service Fuser Error	Fuser shorted thermistor.	
121.40 Service Fuser Error		
121.42 Service Fuser Error	Fuser power above maximum.	
121.5x Service Fuser Error	Fuser is past life and has an error.	Replace the fuser. See “Fuser assembly removal” on page 254.
121.6x Service Fuser Error		
121.7x Service Fuser Error		
121.8x Service Fuser Error		
121.9x Service Fuser Error		

Error code	Description	Action
126.xx Service LVPS	Low voltage power supply did not detect zero crossing.	Replace the LVPS. See “Low-voltage power supply (LVPS) assembly removal” on page 264
126.01 Service LVPS	Low voltage power supply did not detect zero crossing.	
133.1x Service Black TMC Sensor	The black cartridge toner meter cycle (TMC) switch error: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • .11 recoverable • .12 nonrecoverable 	See “133.xx Toner meter sensors (Y, C, M, K) on TMC card service check” on page 86.
133.2x Cyan TMC Sensor	The cyan cartridge toner meter cycle (TMC) switch error: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • .21 recoverable • .22 nonrecoverable 	
133.3x Service Magenta TMC Sensor	The magenta cartridge toner meter cycle (TMC) switch error: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • .31 recoverable • .32 nonrecoverable 	
133.4x Service Yellow TMC Sensor	The yellow cartridge toner meter cycle (TMC) switch error: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • .41 recoverable • .52 nonrecoverable 	

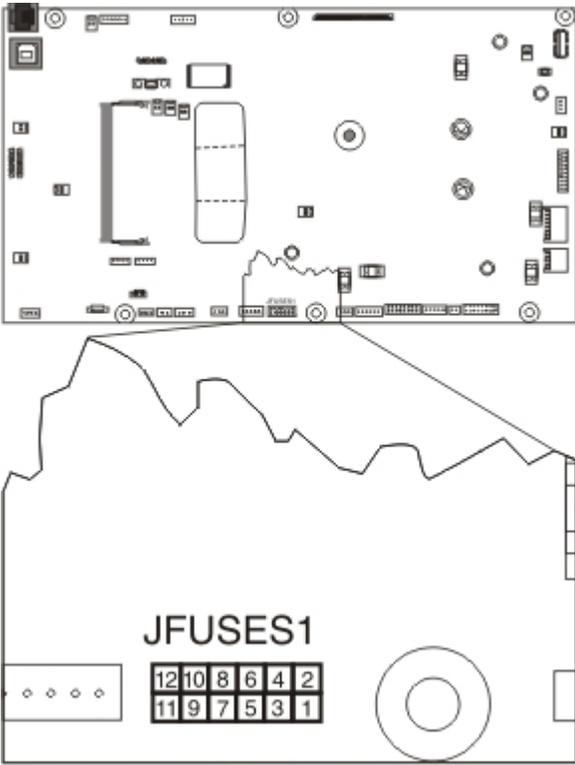
Error code	Description	Action
141.0x Service Cartridge Motor	Cartridge motor error	See "141.xx—Cartridge motor error service check" on page 88
141.01 Service Cartridge Motor	Failed to achieve lock for motor within allotted time.	
141.02 Service Cartridge Motor	Time out waiting for SAP BLDC motor to reach valid FG speed.	
141.03 Service Cartridge Motor	Time out waiting for MP_NUM_INITIAL_SAP_HALLS.	
141.05 Service Cartridge Motor	Lost lock for motor.	
141.06 Service Cartridge Motor	Excessive SAP BLDC PWM.	
141.07 Service Cartridge Motor	Motor stalled in timebased communication.	
141.2x Service Cartridge Motor	Cyan/magenta/yellow cartridge motor error.	
141.21 Service Cartridge Motor	Failed to achieve lock for motor within allotted time.	
141.22 Service Cartridge Motor	Time out waiting for SAP BLDC motor to reach valid FG speed.	
141.23 Service Cartridge Motor	Time out waiting for MP_NUM_INITIAL_SAP_HALLS.	
141.24 Service Cartridge Motor	Time out waiting for SAP BLDC motor.	
141.25 Service Cartridge Motor	Lost lock for motor.	
141.26 Service Cartridge Motor	Excessive SAP BLDC PWM.	
141.27 Service Cartridge Motor	Motor stalled in timebased communication.	

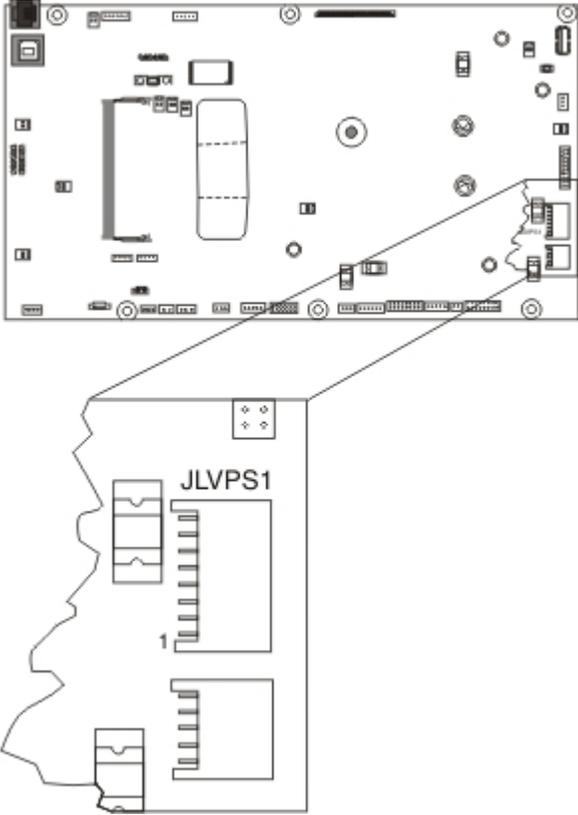
Error code	Description	Action
147.xx Service Staging Motor	Staging motor error	See "147.xx Paper pick motor drive assembly service check" on page 90.
147.01 Service Staging Motor	Staging motor has exceeded the ramp up table.	
147.02 Service Staging Motor	Staging motor has exceeded number of encoders at minimum PWM.	
147.03 Service Staging Motor	Staging motor has exceeded number of encoders at maximum PWM.	
147.04 Service Staging Motor	Motor encoder count did not change between interrupts.	
147.05 Service Staging Motor	Staging motor has encountered a stall time out.	
171.01 Service Fan Stalled	The printer fan has stalled.	See "171.xx Fan error service check" on page 92.

110.xx Printhead service check

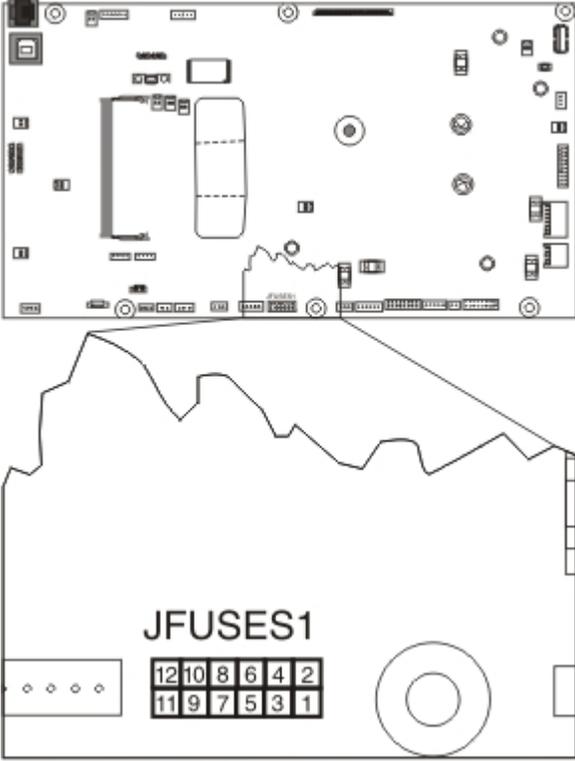
Actions	Yes	No
<p>Step 1</p> <p>Turn the printer off, and then remove the rear cover. See “Rear cover removal” on page 218.</p> <p>Check the cables at JMIRR1 and JPH1 on the controller board for proper connection, the printhead cable for pinch points, and the cable or connector for any other damage.</p> <p>Is the cable damaged?</p> 	<p>Replace the printhead. See “Printhead removal” on page 288.</p>	<p>Go to step 2.</p>
<p>Step 2</p> <p>Turn the printer on, and then wait until the printer posts an error. Using a voltmeter, check the following values at JMIRR1:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Pin 1: +5 V dc Pin 2: +3.3 V dc Pin 3: +5 V dc Pin 4: Ground Pin 5: +24 V dc <p>Are the values appromimately correct?</p>	<p>Replace the controller board. See “Controller board removal” on page 235.</p>	<p>Replace the printhead. See “Printhead removal” on page 288</p>

121.xx Fuser service check

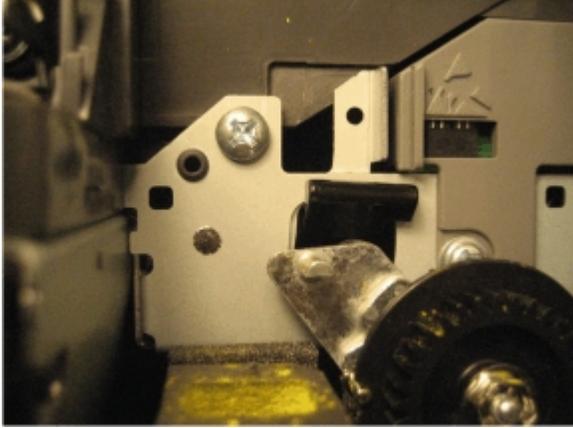
Actions	Yes	No
<p>Step 1</p> <p>Turn the printer off, and remove the rear cover. See “Rear cover removal” on page 218.</p> <p>Check the cable at JFUSES1 for proper connection to the controller board, the cable for pinch points, and the cable or connector for any other damage.</p>  <p>Is the cable damaged?</p>	<p>Replace the fuser cable.</p>	<p>Go to step 3.</p>

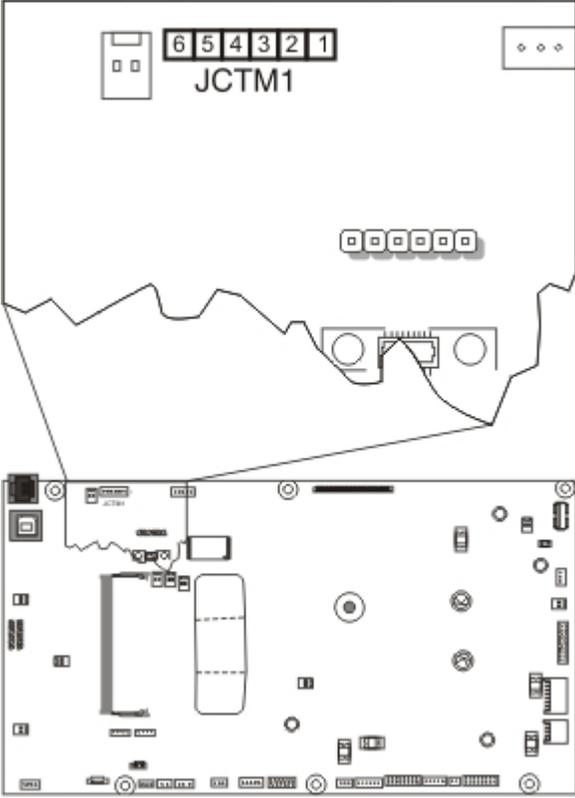
Actions	Yes	No
<p>Step 2</p> <p>Check the connector JLVP1 for proper connection to the controller board, the cable for pinch points, and the cable or connector for any other damage.</p>  <p>The diagram shows a top-down view of a controller board. A callout box provides a magnified view of the JLVP1 connector, which is a multi-pin connector. The callout also shows a cable connected to the board, with a '1' indicating a specific pin or connection point.</p> <p>Is the cable damaged?</p>	Repair or replace the LVPS cable.	Go to step 4.

Actions	Yes	No
<p>Step 3</p> <p>Open the front cover, and check the power cable (A) on the left side of the fuser.</p> <p>Remove the right cover assembly. See “Right cover assembly removal” on page 220.</p> <p>Check the thermistor cables and connections (B) on the right side of the fuser.</p> <div> </div> <p>Are the cables or connectors damaged?</p>	<p>Repair the cables. If the cables cannot be repaired, then replace the fuser. See “Fuser assembly removal” on page 254.</p>	<p>Go to step 5.</p>

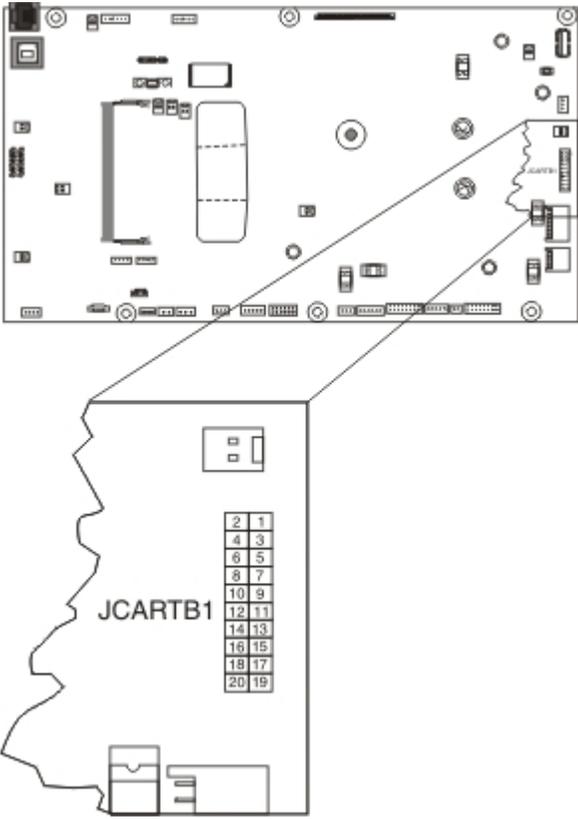
Actions	Yes	No
<p>Step 4</p> <p>Check the following values at JFUSES1:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Pin 1: +24 V dc (door closed) Pin 2: +24 V dc (doors closed) Pin 3: +24 V dc (doors closed) Pin 4: +24 V dc (doors closed) Pin 5: Between 0.6 and 3.28 V dc Pin 6: Ground Pin 8: Ground Pin 10: Between -3 and +3.3 V dc Pin 11: Ground (no wire)  <p>Are the values correct?</p>	<p>Go to step 6.</p>	<p>Replace the controller board. See “Controller board removal” on page 235.</p>
<p>Step 5</p> <p>Replace the fuser. See “Fuser assembly removal” on page 254.</p> <p>Does the error clear?</p>	<p>Problem resolved.</p>	<p>Replace the controller board. See “Controller board removal” on page 235.</p>

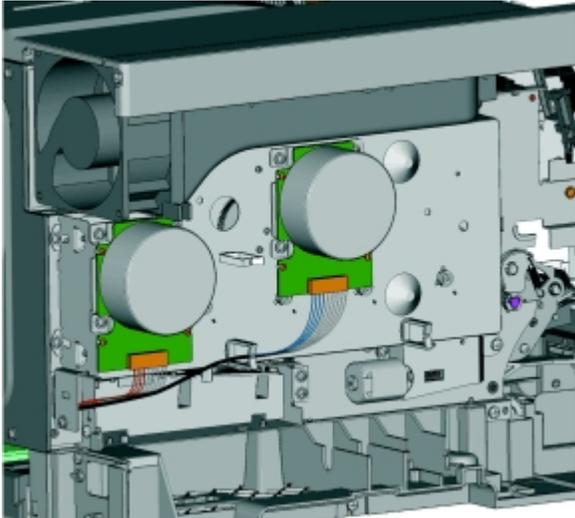
133.xx Toner meter sensors (Y, C, M, K) on TMC card service check

Actions	Yes	No
<p>Step 1 Remove the toner cartridge, and inspect the lenses on the toner meter cycle (TMC) card.</p>  <p>Are the lenses blocked, damaged, or dirty?</p>	<p>Repair or replace the TMC card. See "Toner meter cycle (TMC) card removal" on page 294.</p>	<p>Go to step 2.</p>

Actions	Yes	No
<p>Step 2</p> <p>Turn the printer off, and remove the rear cover. See “Rear cover removal” on page 218.</p> <p>Turn the printer on, and measure the values below at JCTM1 during POR:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Pin 1: +5 V dc Pin 2: +3.3 V dc Pin 3: +3.3 V dc Pin 4: +3.3 V dc Pin 5: +3.3 V dc Pin 6: Ground  <p>Are any of the values incorrect?</p>	<p>Replace the controller board. “Controller board removal” on page 235.</p>	<p>Replace the TMC card. See “Toner meter cycle (TMC) card removal” on page 294.</p>

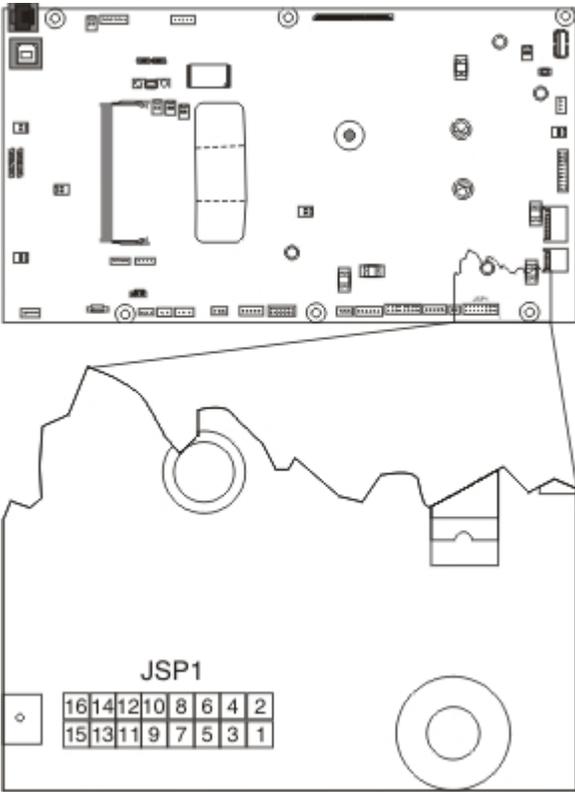
141.xx—Cartridge motor error service check

Check	Yes	No
<p>Step 1</p> <p>Turn the printer off, and remove the rear cover. See “Rear cover removal” on page 218.</p> <p>Check the cable JCARTB1 for proper connection to the system board.</p>  <p>Is the cable properly connected?</p>		<p>Reseat the cable.</p>
<p>Step 2</p> <p>Check the cable for damage.</p> <p>Is the cable damaged?</p>	<p>Replace the BLDC K transfer module cable. See “Transfer module removal” on page 296.</p>	

Check	Yes	No
<p>Step 3</p> <p>Remove the left cover assembly. See “Left cover assembly removal” on page 216</p> <p>Check the cables connected to the cartridge motor assembly.</p>  <p>Is the cable connected properly?</p>	Go to step 4.	Reseat the cable.
<p>Step 4</p> <p>Replace the EP drive assembly. See “EP drive assembly removal” on page 242.</p> <p>Does the problem remain?</p>	Replace the controller board. See “Controller board removal” on page 235.	Problem solved.

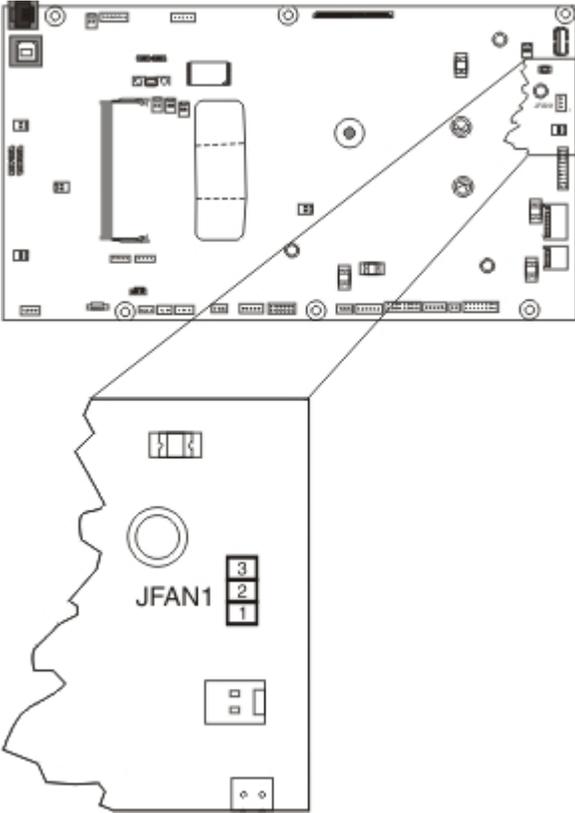
147.xx Paper pick motor drive assembly service check

The input (S2) sensor is part of the paper pick motor drive assembly, and is not available separately.

Actions	Yes	No
<p>Step 1</p> <p>Turn the printer off, and then remove the rear cover. See “Rear cover removal” on page 218. Check the table at JSP1 on the controller board for proper connection.</p>  <p>Is the cable properly connected?</p>	<p>Go to step 3.</p>	<p>Properly connect the cables, and POR the printer. Go to step 2.</p>
<p>Step 2</p> <p>Did the printer function correctly after reconnecting the cables?</p>	<p>Problem resolved.</p>	<p>Go to step 3.</p>

Actions	Yes	No
<p>Step 3</p> <p>Turn the printer on, and then verify the following approximate values at JSP1:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Pin 2: +24 V dc Pin 4: +24 V dc Pin 5: +5 V (when paper is picked) Pin 7: Ground Pin 8: Ground Pin 10: +5 V dc Pin 12: _5 V dc (when paper is picked) Pin 15: +5 V dc Pin 16: Ground <p>Are the values approximately correct?</p>	<p>Replace the paper pick motor drive assembly. See "Paper pick motor drive assembly (standard tray) removal" on page 286.</p>	<p>Replace the controller board. See "Controller board removal" on page 235.</p>

171.xx Fan error service check

Actions	Yes	No
<p>Turn the printer off, and remove the rear cover. See “Rear cover removal” on page 218.</p> <p>Turn the printer on, and check the fan cable at JFAN1 for the following values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Pin 1: +3.3 V dc Pin 2: Ground Pin 3 0 (fan off)  <p>Are the measured values correct?</p>	<p>Replace the fan. See “System fan removal” on page 290.</p>	<p>Replace the controller board. See “Controller board removal” on page 235.</p>

84x.xx service error messages

Error code	Description	Action
840.xx Scanner error	Scanner error	
840.01 Scanner disabled	The scanner is disabled and can't be used.	Enter the configuration menu, and reenable the scanner module. See "840.xx service check" on page 94.
840.02 Scanner auto disabled		This message is posted when the MFP PORs. Enter the configuration menu, and reenable the scanner module. See "840.xx service check" on page 94.
840.03 Scanner cable unplugged		
841.xx	Scanner failure: Front side image processing ASIC. Invalid configuration or ASIC not found	Image pipeline ASIC. See "CCD service check" on page 135. Also, see "Flatbed home position service check" on page 136.
842.xx	Scanner failure: Communications	Communication failure. See "CCD service check" on page 135.
843.00	Scanner Failure: Carriage failed to Home or move to desired position	
843.01	ADF mechanical failure	
843.02	Generic Mechanical failure detected	
843.03	Pick Roller Engage Failure	
843.04	Pick Roller Disengage Failure	
843.05	Carriage overrun	
843.06	ADF nudger	
843.99	Scanner complete timeout error	
846.00 Calibration Strip Unusable	Scanner failure: Calibration strip	See "CCD service check" on page 135.
846.01	Rear Calibration Strip Unusable	
846.02	Front calibration strip too far left	The front calibrations strip is placed too high or too low. See "CCD service check" on page 135.
846.03	Front calibration strip too far right	
846.04	Front calibration strip has excessive skew	
846.05	Front calibration strip has excessive bow	
846.06	Front calibration strip has excessive dark area	Front excessive variability for Mono, Red, Green, or Blue. See "CCD service check" on page 135.
846.07	Front magnification exceeds limits	Rear excessive variability for Mono, Red, Green, or Blue. See "CCD service check" on page 135.

Error code	Description	Action
849.xx	Scanner configuration error	

840.xx service check

Actions	Yes	No
<p>Step 1</p> <p>POR the machine into configuration mode. Go to disable scanner menu item. See “Disable scanner” on page 193.</p> <p>Touch Enable ADF/FB-Enabled, and press Submit to save the change. POR the MFP to operating mode. Try running a copy from the ADF and flatbed.</p> <p>Did the 840.xx error reoccur?</p>	Go to step 2.	Stop. Problem solved.
<p>Step 2</p> <p>Re-enter the Configuration mode, and scroll to and select the Disable Scanner menu item.</p> <p>Does the screen display ADF disabled or Auto Disabled?</p>	Go to step 3.	Go to step 8.
<p>Step 3</p> <p>Check the ADF cable connections on the ADF relay card and connector J17 on the controller board. Also inspect the cable connections J28, J12, J13, and J30 on the controller board.</p> <p>Are the connections properly connected?</p>	Go to step 5.	Go to step 4.
<p>Step 4</p> <p>Properly connect the connections on the ADF relay card and controller board. POR the machine into configuration mode. Go to the disable scanner menu item. See “Disable scanner” on page 193.</p> <p>Select Enable ADF/FB -Enabled and press Select to save the change. POR the MFP to operating mode. Try running a copy from the ADF and flatbed.</p> <p>Did the 840.xx error reoccur?</p>	Go to step 5.	Stop. Problem solved.
<p>Step 5</p> <p>Check the continuity on the ADF cable.</p> <p>Is there continuity?</p>	Go to step 7.	Go to step 6.
<p>Replace the ADF cable. POR the machine into configuration mode. Go to the disable scanner menu item. See “Disable scanner” on page 193.</p> <p>Select Enable ADF/FB -Enabled and press Select to save the change. POR the MFP to operating mode. Try running a copy from the ADF and flatbed.</p> <p>Go to step 6.</p> <p>Did the 840.xx error reoccur?</p>	Go to step 7.	Stop. Problem solved.

Actions	Yes	No
<p>Step 6</p> <p>Replace the ADF unit. See “ADF assembly removal” on page 228.</p> <p>POR the machine into configuration mode. Go to the disable scanner menu item. See “Disable scanner” on page 193.</p> <p>Select Enable ADF/FB -Enabled and press Select to save the change.</p> <p>POR the MFP to operating mode. Run a copy from the flatbed.</p> <p>Did the 840.xx error reoccur?</p>	Go to step 8.	Stop. Problem solved.
<p>Step 7</p> <p>Inspect JFBM1, JHS1 and JCCD1 on the controller board.</p> <p>Are the connections properly connected?</p>	Go to step 10.	Go to step 9.
<p>Step 8</p> <p>Properly connect all the connections.</p> <p>Did the 840.xx error reoccur?</p>	Stop. Problem solved.	Go to step 10.
<p>Step 9</p> <p>Replace the flatbed unit. See “Flatbed scanner assembly removal” on page 249.</p> <p>POR the machine into configuration mode. Go to the disable scanner menu item. See “Disable scanner” on page 193.</p> <p>Select Enable ADF/FB -Enabled and press Select to save the change.</p> <p>POR the MFP to operating mode. Run a copy from the flatbed.</p> <p>Did the 840.xx error reoccur?</p>	Go to step 11.	Stop. Problem solved.
<p>Step 10</p> <p>Replace the controller board. See “Controller board removal” on page 235.</p>	Problem solved.	Contact second-level support.

843.xx service check

Actions	Yes	No
<p>Step 1</p> <p>Check all cables connecting the ADF and flatbed to the controller board.</p> <p>Are they properly connected?</p>	Go to step 3.	Go to step 2.
<p>Step 2</p> <p>Reconnect the cables to the controller board.</p> <p>Did this fix the problem?</p>	Problem solved.	Go to step 3.

Actions	Yes	No
Step 3 Perform the scanner sensor and motor tests. Did any test fail?	Go to step 4.	Go to step 8.
Step 4 Did the Flatbed Home Sensor test or flatbed motor test fail?	Go to step 5.	Go to step 6.
Step 5 Replace the flatbed. Did this solve the problem?	Problem solved.	Go to step 6.
Step 6 Did the ADF pick motor or feed motor tests fail?	Go to step 7.	Go to step 8.
Step 7 Replace the ADF. Did this fix the problem?	Problem solved.	Go to step 8.
Step 8 Replace the controller board. Did this fix the problem?	Problem solved.	Contact your next level of support.

ADF service check

Action	Yes	No
Step 1 Check all cables connecting the ADF and flatbed to the controller board. Are they properly connected?	Go to step 3.	Go to step 2.
Step 2 Re-connect the cables to the controller board. Did this fix the problem?	The problem is solved.	Go to step 3.
Step 3 Enter diagnostics mode and navigate to: SCANNER TESTS >Sensor Test Perform the scanner sensor tests. Navigate to: SCANNER TESTS > Motor Tests Perform the scanner motor tests. Did any test fail?	Go to step 4.	Go to step 8.

Action	Yes	No
Step 4 Did the Flatbed Home Sensor test, or Flatbed motor test fail?	Go step 5.	Go to step 6.
Step 5 Replace the flatbed. See “Flatbed scanner assembly removal” on page 249. Did this solve the problem?	The problem is solved.	Go to step 6.
Step 6 Did the ADF pick motor, or feed motor tests fail?	Go to step 7.	Go to step 8.
Step 7 Replace the ADF. See “ADF assembly removal” on page 228. Did this fix the problem?	The problem is solved.	Go to step 8.
Step 8 Replace the controller board. See “Controller board removal” on page 235. Did this fix the problem?	The problem is solved.	Contact the next level of support.

Flatbed legal scan service check

Action	Yes	No
Step 1 Check the JPLEN1 connector on the controller board for proper connection. Is it properly connected?	Go to step 3.	Go to step 2.
Step 2 Re-connect the cable to the controller board. Did this fix the problem?	The problem is solved.	Go to step 3.
Step 3 Enter diagnostics mode and navigate to: SCANNER TESTS > Sensor Test Select Paper FB Long to perform the sensor test. Did it pass?	Go to step 5.	Go to step 4.
Step 4 Replace the flatbed. See “Flatbed scanner assembly removal” on page 249. Did this fix the problem?	The problem is solved.	Go to step 5.

Action	Yes	No
<p>Step 5 Replace the controller. See “Controller board removal” on page 235.</p> <p>Did this fix the problem?</p>	The problem is solved.	Contact the next level of support.

9xx service error messages

Error code	Description	Action
900.xx Service RIP Software	Unrecoverable RIP software error/illegal trap.	See “900.xx System software error service check” on page 102.
910.xx Service Engine Software	A general engine software error.	See “91x.xx (910.xx-919.xx) Engine software service check” on page 106.
911.xx Service Engine Software		
912.xx Service Engine Software		
913.xx Service Engine Software		
914.xx Service Engine Software		
915.xx Service Engine Software		
916.xx Service Engine Software		
917.xx Service Engine Software		
918.xx Service Engine Software		
919.xx Service Engine Software		
938.01 Service Engine Hardware	Board level was not obtained.	Replace the controller board. See “Controller board removal” on page 235.
938.02 Service Engine Hardware	Time out waiting for bullet serial data to be updated.	
938.03 Service Engine Hardware	NVM_OK was not received from NV2 server for successfully submitted request.	
938.04 Service Engine Hardware	Over temperature condition detected.	

Error code	Description	Action
950.xx NVRAM failure	There is a mismatch between controller EEPROM and mirror. 950.00 through 950.29 codes: mismatch between controller and mirror 950.30 through 950.60 codes: mismatch between secure and controller	See "950.xx NVRAM failure service check" on page 106.
951.xx Service NVRAM Failure	Error NV part on system board.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • POR the printer. • If the problem persists, then replace the controller board. See "Controller board removal" on page 235.
952.xx Service NVRAM Failure	A recoverable MVRAM Cyclic Redundancy Check (CRC) error occurred. <i>n</i> is the offset at which the error occurred.	Performing a POR will clear this error.
953.xx Service NVRAM Failure	NVRAM chip failure with mirror.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • POR the printer. • If the problem persists, then replace the UICC card. For CX310 and CX410 models, see "Operator panel removal (for CX310 and CX410 models only)" on page 279. For CX510 models, see "Operator panel removal (for CX510 models only)" on page 285.

Error code	Description	Action
954.xx Service NVRAM Failure	The NVRAM chip failure with controller part.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • POR the printer. • If the problem persists, then replace the controller board. See “Controller board removal” on page 235.
955.xx Service Code CRC <loc>	<p>The Code ROM or NAND flash failed the Cyclic Redundancy Check (CRC) check or the NAND experienced an uncorrectable multi-bit failure. <loc> indicates the source of the failure and has one of the following values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • CRC Failure: The source is a failing package indicated by Pn where n is the package number. This error could occur on a controller with ROM or NAND flash and could occur as a result of the CRC check done when the machine is powered on. The range of package numbers is from 0 to 15. • Error Correction Code (ECC) Failure: The source is a failing page indicated by Bn where “n” is the page number. This error occurs only if a multi-bit failure is detected during the ECC execution. Single bit failures will be corrected automatically and will not result in a service error. The range of page numbers is from 0 to 1023. 	
956.xx Service Controller Board	Controller board failure. Processor failure. Check on .02 for fan error.	
957.xx Service Controller Board	Controller board failure. ASIC failure.	
958.xx Service NAND Failure	Printer has performed more than 100 “shift and reflash” operations as a result of ECC bit corrections.	
959.xx Service Invalid Firmware	Controller verification failure of system boot code.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Update the firmware. • POR the printer. • If the problem persists, then replace the controller board. See “Controller board removal” on page 235.
959.0x Service System Board	System hardware failure.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • POR the printer. • If the problem persists, then replace the controller board. See “Controller board removal” on page 235.
960.xx Service Memory Error	RAM memory error: RAM soldered on the board is bad.	
961.xx Service Memory Failure	RAM memory error: slot 1 RAM is bad.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check RAM in slot 2. • If RAM is ok, then POR the printer.
962.xx Service Memory Failure	RAM memory error: slot 2 RAM is bad.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If the problem persists, then replace the controller board. See “Controller board removal” on page 235.

Error code	Description	Action
964.xx Service Emulation Error	Download emulation cyclic redundancy check (CRC) failure has occurred. A checksum failure detected in the emulation header or emulation file.	The following actions may be taken: 1 Disable the Download Emulation. 2 Program the download emulation into the code overlay SIMM again. 3 If the problem is not resolved replace the code overlay SIMM, and download emulation again.
975.xx Service Standard Network or 975.xx Service Network Card x	Network error: unrecognizable network port.	Replace the standard network card or the card in the specified slot.
976.xx Service Standard Network or 976.xx Service Network Card x	Unrecoverable software or error in network or network card x.	If unable to clear the error message, then check the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• If installed, then check network card for correct installation.• If correctly installed, then replace the network card.• If a network card is not installed, then replace the controller board. See “Controller board removal” on page 235.
978.xx Service Standard Network or 978.xx Service Network Card x	Bad checksum while programming Standard Network or Network Card x port.	Check the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Make sure you have downloaded the code in binary mode, not ASCII.• Reprogram the Network card.• If the problem persists, and if installed, then check the network card for correct installation.• If correctly installed, then replace the network card.• If a network card is not installed, then replace the controller board. See “Controller board removal” on page 235.
979.xx Service Standard Network or 979.xx Service Network Card x	Flash parts failed while programming the Standard Network or Network Card x port.	Check the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• If installed, then check the network card for correct installation.• If correctly installed, then replace the network card.• If a network card is not installed, then replace the controller board. See “Controller board removal” on page 235.

Error code	Description	Action
982.xx Service <device> Comm.	Communications error detected by the specified device. Note: <device> can be one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Tray 2 • Tray 3 	Call next level of support.
990.xx Service <device>	This error message indicates that an equipment check condition has occurred in the specified device. Note: <device> can be one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Tray 2 • Tray 3 	Go to the service check for the device indicated.

900.xx System software error service check

There are different types of 900.xx errors that can occur. There may be a communication problem (bad cable, network connection, and so on) software issue, or a hardware problem with the controller board of ISP (Internal Solutions Port). The communication and software aspects should be checked first. Determine if the problem is constant or intermittent. use the troubleshooting procedure below to isolate the issue. Take any notes as instructed. You will need that information in the event you need to contact your next level support.

Note: Before troubleshooting, determine the operating system used when the error occurred. If possible, determine whether or PostScript or PCL files was sent to the device when the error occurred. Ask the customer which Lexmark Solutions applications are installed on the device.

Actions	Yes	No
Step 1 POR the printer. Does the error occur?	Go to step 2.	Problem resolved.
Step 2 a Write down the exact 900.xx error code displayed on the device. b Turn the device off. c Clear the print queues. d Disconnect all communication cables, and remove all memory options. e Remove all ISP and modem cards. f Restart the device into diagnostic mode. Turn the printer on, press and hold 3 and 6 , and release the buttons with the installed memory and processor speed displays. Does the 900.xx error occur during startup?	Go to step 3.	Go to step 6.
Step 3 Check all the cables connected to the RIP board for proper connectivity. Are the cables properly connected?	Go to step 5.	Go to step 4.

Actions	Yes	No
<p>Step 4 Properly connect the cables to the RIP board. Restart the device into diagnostic mode.</p>  <p>Does the 900.xx error reoccur during startup?</p>	Go to step 5.	Go to step 6.
<p>Step 5 Replace the RIP board, and restart the device.</p> <p>Does this fix the problem?</p> <p>Note: If an error, different from the original 900.xx, is displayed, then consult the service check for that error.</p>	Problem resolved.	Go to step 31.
<p>Step 6 Print the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Error log • Menu settings page • Network settings page <p>Does the 900.xx error reoccur while these pages are printing?</p>	Go to step 31.	Go to step 7.
<p>Step 7 Reattach the communications cable. Restart the printer to operating mode. Send the printer a print job.</p> <p>Does the 900.xx error reoccur?</p> <p>Note: Before performing this step, write down this information about the file being sent to the printer:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Application used • Operating system • Driver type • File type (PCL, PostScript, XPS, etc.) 	Go to step 8.	Go to step 10.

Actions	Yes	No
<p>Step 8 Restart the printer to operating mode. Send a different print job to the device.</p> <p>Does the 900.xx error reoccur?</p>	Go to step 9.	Go to step 10.
<p>Step 9 Upgrade the firmware. Contact your next level of support for the correct firmware level to use. Restart the printer to operating mode. Send the printer a print job.</p> <p>Does the 900.xx error reoccur?</p>	Go to step 31.	Go to step 10.
<p>Step 10 Is the device a Multi Function Printer?</p>	Go to step 11.	Go to step 13.
<p>Step 11 Run a copy job.</p> <p>Does the 900.xx error reoccur?</p>	Go to step 31.	Go to step 12.
<p>Step 12 Run a scan to PC job.</p> <p>Does the 900.xx error reoccur?</p>	Go to step 31.	gO TO STEP 13.
<p>Step 13 Is there optional memory installed?</p>	Go to step 14.	Go to step 16.
<p>Step 14 Reinstall the memory, and send the print job to the device.</p> <p>Does the 900.xx error reoccur?</p>	Go to step 15.	Go to step 16.
<p>Step 15 Install a Lexmark recommended memory option, and send a print job to the device.</p> <p>Does the 900.xx error reoccur?</p>	Go to step 31.	Problem resolved.
<p>Step 16 Is there a modem installed on the device?</p>	Go to step 17.	Go to step 21.
<p>Step 17 Reinstall the modem, and restart the device.</p> <p>Does the 900.xx error reoccur?</p>	Go to step 18.	Go to step 20.

Actions	Yes	No
<p>Step 18 Upgrade the firmware if it has not been upgraded in any previous step. Contact your next level of support for the correct firmware level to use. Restart the printer to operating mode. Send the printer a print job.</p> <p>Does the 900.00 error reoccur?</p>	Go to step 19.	Problem resolved.
<p>Step 19 Replace the modem. Restart the device.</p> <p>Does the 900.xx error reoccur?</p>	Go to step 31.	Problem resolved.
<p>Step 20 Replace the modem, and restart the device.</p> <p>Does the 900.xx error reoccur?</p>	Go to step 31.	Problem resolved.
<p>Step 21 Run a fax job.</p> <p>Does the 900.xx error reoccur?</p>	Go to step 31.	Go to step 21.
<p>Step 22 Are there any ISP (internal solutions port) options installed?</p>	Go to step 22.	Problem resolved.
<p>Step 23 Upgrade the firmware if it has not been upgraded in any previous step. Reinstall the first ISP option, and restart the device.</p> <p>Does the 900.xx error reoccur?</p>	Go to step 24.	Go to step 26.
<p>Step 24 Upgrade the firmware if it has not been upgraded in any previous step. Contact your next level of support for the correct firmware level to use. Restart the printer to operating mode.</p> <p>Does the 900.xx error reoccur?</p>	Go to step 25.	Problem resolved.
<p>Step 25 Replace the faulty ISP option, and restart the device.</p> <p>Does the 900.xx error reoccur?</p>	Go to step 31.	Go to step 26.
<p>Step 26 Are there anymore ISP options to install?</p>	Go to step 27.	Problem resolved.
<p>Step 27 Install the next ISP option, and restart the device.</p> <p>Does the 900.xx error occur?</p>	Go to step 29.	Go to step 28.

Actions	Yes	No
<p>Step 28</p> <p>Run a job to test the option.</p> <p>Does the 900.xx error reoccur?</p>	Go to step 29.	Go to step 26.
<p>Step 29</p> <p>Upgrade the firmware. Contact your next level of support for the correct firmware level to use.</p> <p>Restart the printer to operating mode.</p> <p>Does the 900.xx error occur?</p>	Go to step 30.	Go to step 26.
<p>Step 30</p> <p>Replace the faulty ISP option, and restart the device.</p> <p>Does the 900.xx error reoccur?</p>	Go to step 31.	Go to step 26.
<p>Step 31</p> <p>Contact your next level of support. You will need the following information for them:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Exact 900.xx error digits and complete error message • Printed menu settings pag • Printed network settings page • Device error log • A sample print file if error appears to be isolated to a single file • File/Application used if error is related to specific print file • Device Operating System • Driver used (PCL/PS) • Frequency of the occurrence of the error 		

91x.xx (910.xx-919.xx) Engine software service check

Actions	Yes	No
<p>Turn the printer off, and remove the rear cover See “Rear cover removal” on page 218.</p> <p>Check the cable connections. See “Controller board removal” on page 235 for proper disconnecting and connecting of cables from controller board.</p> <p>Are all cable connections secure?</p>	Replace the controller board. See “Controller board removal” on page 235.	Secure all connections. POR the printer.

950.xx NVRAM failure service check

Warning—Potential Damage: When replacing any of the following components, replace only one component at a time or the printer will be rendered inoperable:

Diagnostic information

For CX310 models:

- Controller board
- Operator panel with UICC card

For CX410 and CX510 models:

- Controller board
- UICC card

Replace the required component, bring the printer up in Diagnostics mode (See “Diagnostics menu” on page 158), and verify that the problem is fixed before performing a POR.

This error indicates a mismatch between the operator panel assembly and the system board.

Actions	Yes	No
<p>Step 1</p> <p>For CX310 models, has the operator panel with UICC card been replaced recently?</p> <p>For CX410 and CX510 models, has the UICC card been replaced recently?</p>	Replace the operator panel assembly with a new, and not previously installed, UICC card.	Go to step 2.
<p>Step 2</p> <p>Has the controller board been replaced recently?</p>	Replace the controller board with a new, and not previously installed, controller board. See “Controller board removal” on page 235.	Go to step 3.
<p>Step 3</p> <p>Turn the printer power off for ten or more seconds. Then, turn the printer back on (POR the printer).</p> <p>Is the error gone, and can the printer print?</p>	Problem solved.	Go to step 4.
<p>Step 4</p> <p>Clear the NVRAM of the printer:</p> <p>a Turn the printer power off.</p> <p>b With the printer off, press and hold 6,7, and 8 on the keypad.</p> <p>c Turn the printer on.</p> <p>d When Restoring Factory Defaults appears, release the buttons.</p> <p>Note: If the printer looks up on the Restoring Factory Defaults, then wait two minutes, and then turn the printer power off. After ten seconds or more, turn the printer power back on without holding down any buttons.</p> <p>Does the error message still appear?</p>	Go to step 5.	Problem solved.
<p>Step 5</p> <p>For CX310 models replace the operator panel with UICC card.</p> <p>For CX410 and CX510 models, replace the UICC card.</p> <p>Does the error message still appear?</p>	Replace the controller board. See “Controller board removal” on page 235.	Problem solved.

Network service check

Note: Before starting this service check, print out the network setup page. This page is found under **Menu>Reports>Network Settings**. Consult the network administrator to verify that the physical and wireless network settings displayed on the network settings page for the device are properly configured. If a wireless network is used, then verify that the printer is in range of the host computer or wireless access point, and there is no electronic interference. Have the network administrator verify that the device is using the correct SSID, and wireless security protocols. For more network troubleshooting information, consult the Lexmark Network Setup Guide.

Actions	Yes	No
<p>Step 1 If the device is physically connected to the network, verify that the ethernet cable is properly connected on both ends.</p> <p>Is the cable properly connected?</p>	Go to step 3. If the network is wireless, then go to step 3.	Go to step 2.
<p>Step 2 Connect the ethernet cable.</p> <p>Does this fix the problem.</p>	Problem solved.	Go to step 3.
<p>Step 3 Check the printer's online status under Printers and Faxes on the host computer. Delete all print jobs in the print queue. Is the printer online and in a Ready state.</p>	Go to step 5.	Go to step 4.
<p>Step 4 Change the printer status to online.</p> <p>Did this fix the issue?</p>	Problem resolved.	Go to step 5.
<p>Step 5 Does the IP address displayed on the network settings page match the IP address in the port of the drivers using the printer?</p>	Go to step 10.	Go to step 6.
<p>Step 6 Does the LAN use DHCP?</p> <p>Note: A printer should use a static IP address on a network.</p>	Go to step 7.	Go to step 9.
<p>Step 7 Are the first two segments of the IP address 169.254</p>	Go to step 8.	Go to step 9.
<p>Step 8 POR the printer.</p> <p>Did this resolve the issue?</p>	Problem resolved.	Go to step 10.
<p>Step 9 Reset the address on the printer to match the IP address on the driver.</p> <p>Did this resolve the issue?</p>	Problem fixed.	Go to step 10.

Actions	Yes	No
<p>Step 10 Have the network admin verify that the printer and PC's IP address have identical subnet addresses.</p> <p>Are the subnet addresses the same?</p>	Go to step 12.	Go to step 11.
<p>Step 11 Using the subnet address supplied by the network administrator, assign a unique IP address to the printer.</p> <p>Note: The printer IP address should match the IP address on the printer driver.</p> <p>Did this fix the problem?</p>	Problem resolved.	Go to step 12.
<p>Step 12 Is the device physically connected (ethernet cable) to the network?</p>	Go to step 13.	Go to step 15.
<p>Step 13 Try using a different ethernet cable.</p> <p>Did this fix the problem?</p>	Problem solved.	Go to step 14.
<p>Step 14 Have the network administrator check the network drop for activity.</p> <p>Is the network drop functioning properly?</p>	Replace the controller board. See "Controller board removal" on page 235.	Contact the network administrator.
<p>Step 15 Is the printer on the same wireless network as the other devices?</p>	Go to step 17.	Go to step 16.
<p>Step 16 Assign the correct wireless network to the printer.</p> <p>Did this fix the problem?</p>	Problem resolved.	Go to step 17.
<p>Step 17 Are the other devices on the wireless network communicating properly?</p>	Go to step 18.	Contact the network administrator.
<p>Step 18 Properly reseal the wireless cable.</p> <p>Did this fix the problem?</p>	Problem resolved.	Go to step 20.
<p>Step 19 If there is an attached antenna, is the antenna damaged?</p> <p>Note: The optional wireless unit does not have an external antenna.</p>	Go to step 22.	Go to step 21.
<p>Step 20 Replace the antenna.</p> <p>Did this fix the problem?</p>	Problem resolved.	Go to step 22.

Actions	Yes	No
Step 21 Verify that the antenna is properly connected to the wireless option. Is it connected correctly?	Problem resolved.	Go to step 23.
Step 22 Properly connect the antenna. Did this fix the problem?	Problem resolved.	Go to step 24.
Step 23 Replace the wireless card. Did this fix the problem?	Problem resolved.	Go to step 25.
Step 24 Replace the controller board. See “Controller board removal” on page 235. Did this fix the problem?	Problem resolved.	Contact your next level of support.

Symptoms

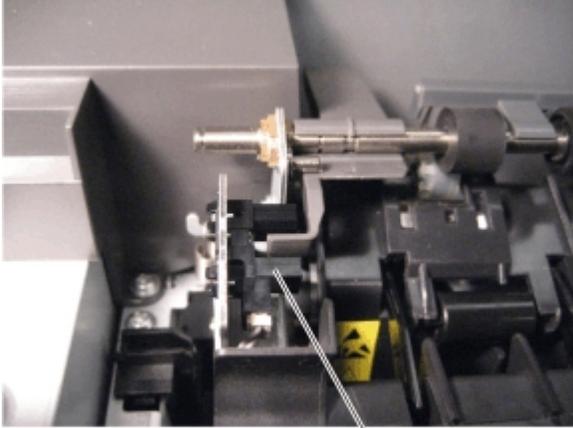
- “Base printer symptoms” on page 111
- “Narrow media sensor service check” on page 112
- “Toner meter cycle (TMC) card service check” on page 114
- “Dead printer service check” on page 114
- “Front door sensor or switches service check” on page 116
- “Operator panel (display is dim and unchanging) service check” on page 120
- “Operator panel (displays all diamonds, no beeps, or five beeps) service check” on page 122
- “Operator panel (display blank) service check” on page 124
- “Operator panel (one or more operator panel buttons fail) service check” on page 126
- “Operator panel USB cable service check” on page 128
- “USB service check” on page 128
- “550-sheet and 650-sheet trays input option symptoms” on page 129
- “Trays 2 and 3 (optional) service check” on page 129
- “Tray 2 service check” on page 131
- “Tray (x) sensor service check” on page 131
- “550 and 650 input option service check” on page 132
- “Scan/fax/copy symptoms” on page 134
- “Black or blank page copy service check” on page 135
- “CCD service check” on page 135
- “Flatbed motor service check” on page 136

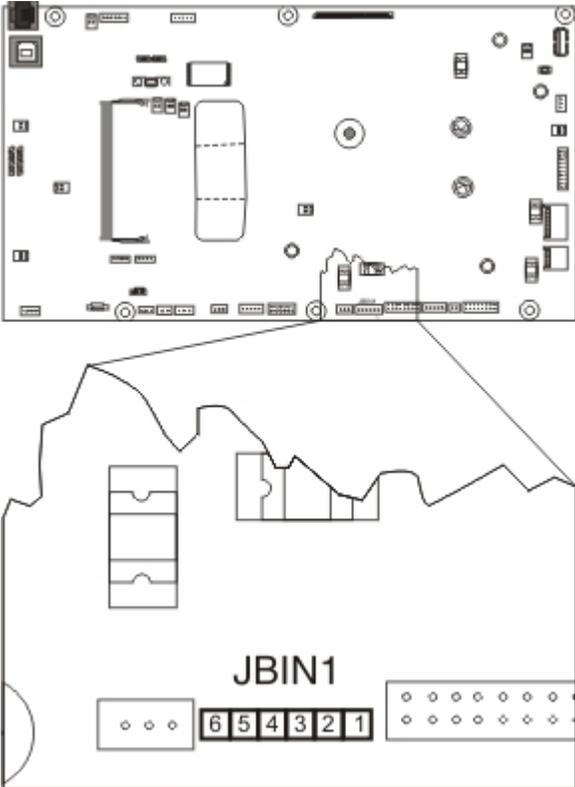
- “Flatbed home position service check” on page 136
- “ADF cover open service check” on page 137
- “ADF streak service check” on page 138
- “ADF paper jam service check” on page 138
- “ADF feed errors service check” on page 140
- “ADF duplex service check” on page 141
- “Modem/fax card service check” on page 142
- “Fax reception service check” on page 143
- “Fax transmission service check” on page 145
- “Fax error log codes” on page 147
- “Escalating a fax issue to second-level support” on page 151

Base printer symptoms

Symptom	Action
Dead printer service check	“Dead printer service check” on page 114
Front door sensor or switches service check	“Front door sensor or switches service check” on page 116
Operator panel (display is dim and unchanging) service check	“Operator panel (display is dim and unchanging) service check” on page 120
Operator panel (displays all diamonds, no beeps, or five beeps) service check	“Operator panel (displays all diamonds, no beeps, or five beeps) service check” on page 122
Operator panel (display blank) service check	“Operator panel (display blank) service check” on page 124
Operator panel (one or more operator buttons fail) service check	“Operator panel (one or more operator panel buttons fail) service check” on page 126
Operator panel USB cable service check	“Operator panel (one or more operator panel buttons fail) service check” on page 126
Trays 2 and 3 (optional) service check	“Trays 2 and 3 (optional) service check” on page 129
USB service check	“USB service check” on page 128

Narrow media sensor service check

Actions	Yes	No
<p>Step 1 Open the front cover, and inspect the narrow media sensor (A) located towards the front of the top cover assembly.</p>  <p>Is the narrow media sensor dislodged or damaged?</p>	<p>Repair or replace the narrow media sensor. See "Narrow media sensor removal" on page 276.</p>	<p>Go to step 2.</p>
<p>Step 2 Does the flag rotate freely?</p>	<p>Go to step 3.</p>	<p>Reposition or replace the flag. See "Narrow media sensor removal" on page 276.</p>

Actions	Yes	No
<p>Step 3</p> <p>Enter Diagnostics Menu.</p> <p>Turn the printer on, press and hold 3 and 6, and release the buttons with the installed memory and processor speed displays.</p> <p>Perform the Base Sensor Test. See “BASE SENSOR TEST” on page 173.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a Select Base Sensor Test, and press Select. b Select Fuser Exit Sensor, and press Select. c Open the close the front door, and inspect the fuser exit sensor located on the LVPS shield. <p>Turn the printer off, and remove the rear cover. See “Rear cover removal” on page 218</p> <p>Turn the printer on, and then click the values below at JBIN1:</p> <p>Pin 1: 0 V dc (+5 V dc during cycle)</p> <p>Pin 2: +3.3 V dc beam blocked 0 V dc unblocked</p> <p>Pin 3: Ground</p>  <p>Are the values correct?</p>	<p>Problem resolved.</p>	<p>Replace the controller board. See “Controller board removal” on page 235.</p>

Toner meter cycle (TMC) card service check

Actions	Yes	No
<p>Perform the Base Sensor Test:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a Enter Diagnostics menu. Turn the printer on, press and hold 3 and 6, and release the buttons with the installed memory and processor speed displays. b Select Base Sensor Test, and press Select. c Select the sensor you want to test, open the toner door, remove the corresponding toner cartridge, and press Select. d Note whether the operator panel shows a change in state. <p>Note: If the reflective disk is not showing on the cartridge, then rotate the gear clockwise to expose the reflective surface.</p> <p>For additional information about the Base Sensor Test, see “BASE SENSOR TEST” on page 173.</p> <p>Does the operator panel display a change of state?</p>	Replace the toner cartridge.	Replace the toner meter cycle (TMC) card. See “Toner meter cycle (TMC) card removal” on page 294.

Dead printer service check

A dead printer is one which, when powered on from a known good electrical outlet, displays no indication of power to the printer by changes to the LCD, LED, or any movement of the fan or motors. If the printer appears dead but makes a *beeping* sound, check the operator panel. See “Operator panel (displays all diamonds, no beeps, or five beeps) service check” on page 122.

If a 650-sheet Duo Drawer is installed, then remove the option and check the base printer for correct operation. If the base printer operates correctly, replace the 650-sheet Duo Drawer.

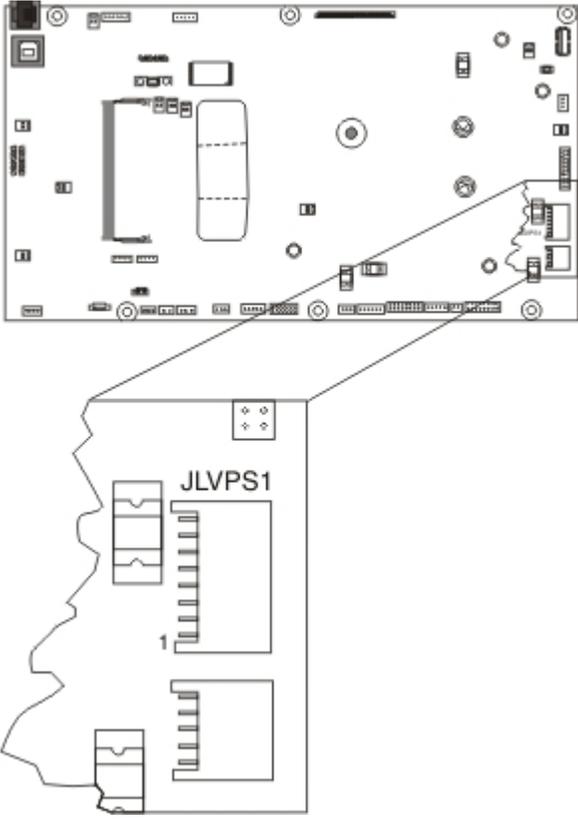
Warning—Potential Damage: Observe all necessary ESD precautions when removing and handling the controller board or any installed option cards or assemblies.



CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD: When you see this symbol, there is a danger from hazardous voltage in the area of the product where you are working. Unplug the product before you begin, or use caution if the product must receive power to perform the task.

Note: Remove any input paper-handling options from the printer.

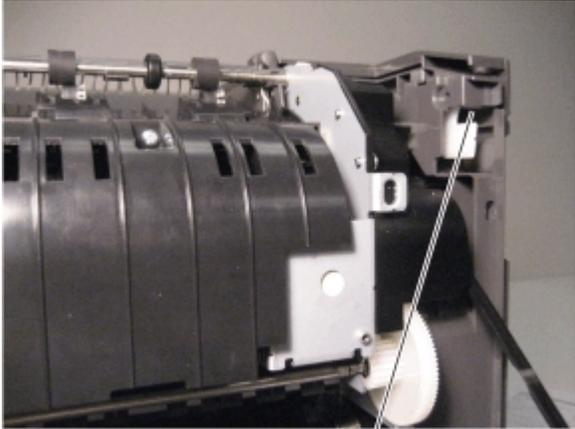
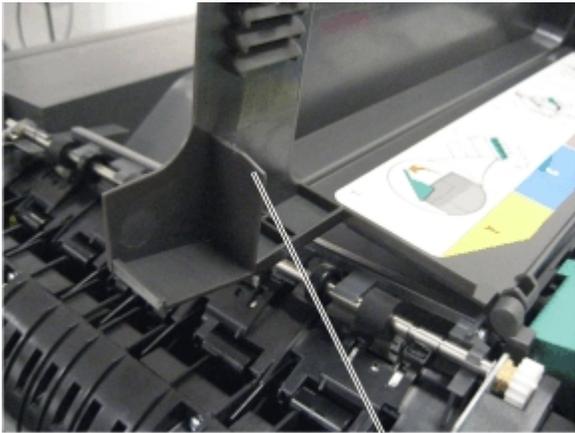
Actions	Yes	No
<p>Step 1</p> <p>Check the AC power voltage.</p> <p>Is the line voltage correct?</p>	Go to step 2.	Inform the customer.
<p>Step 2</p> <p>is the AC power cord damaged?</p>	Replace the line cord.	Go to step 3.

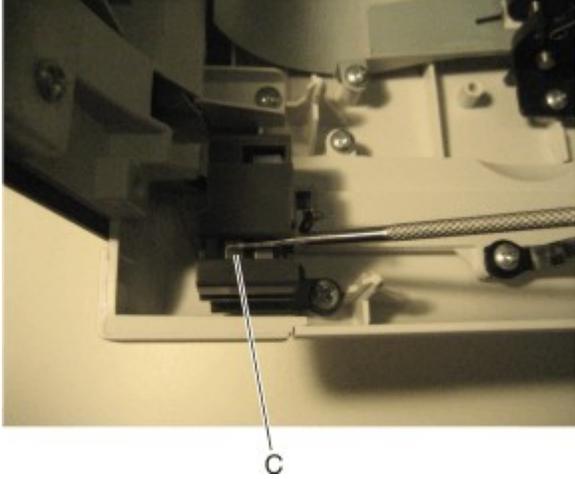
Actions	Yes	No
<p>Step 3</p> <p>Turn the printer off, and remove the rear cover. See “Rear cover removal” on page 218.</p> <p>Is the LVPS cable correctly connected at JLVPS1 on the controller board?</p> 	Go to step 5.	Reconnect the cable at JLVPS1, and then go to step 4.
<p>Step 4</p> <p>Turn the printer off, and then on.</p> <p>Does the problem persist?</p>	Go to step 5.	Problem solved.

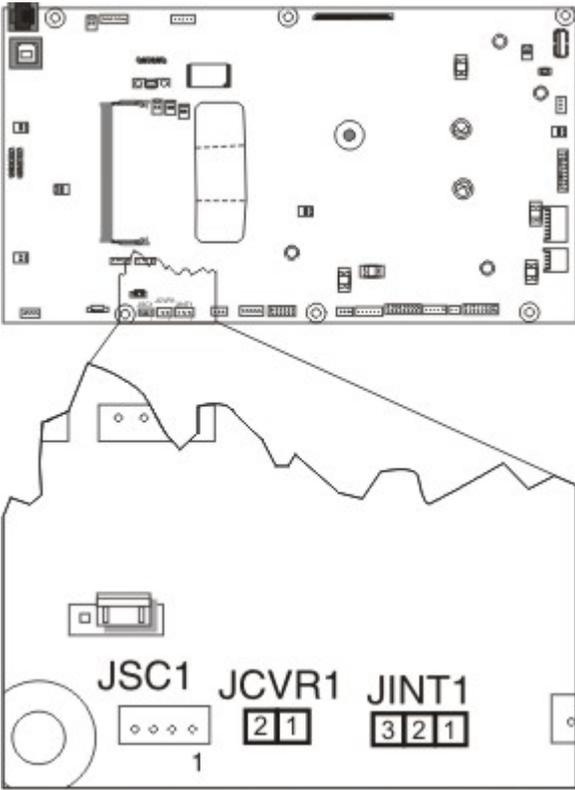
Actions	Yes	No
<p>Step 5</p> <p>Damage to the printer is possible. Be careful to touch only one conductor at a time. Rest the probe against the connector to steady it.</p> <p>With the printer on, verify the following values at JLVPS1:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Pin 1: +5 V dc Pin 2: Ground Pin 3: +5 V dc Pin 4: Ground Pin 5: +5 V dc Pin 6: Ground Pin 7: +24 V dc Pin 8: Ground Pin 9: +24 V dc Pin 10: Ground Pin 11: +24 V dc Pin 12: Ground Pin 16: Ground <p>Are the values approximately correct?</p>	<p>Replace the controller board. See “Controller board removal” on page 235.</p>	<p>Replace the LVPS. See “Low-voltage power supply (LVPS) assembly removal” on page 264.</p>

Front door sensor or switches service check

Actions	Yes	No
<p>Step 1</p> <p>Enter Diagnostics Menu.</p> <p>Turn the printer on, press and hold 3 and 6, and release the buttons with the installed memory and processor speed displays.</p> <p>Perform the Base Sensor Test. See “BASE SENSOR TEST” on page 173.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a Select Base Sensor Test, and press Select. b Select Front Door, and press Select. c Open and close the front door, and observe the display. <p>Does the display indicate Value Closed with the door closed, and Value Opened with the door open?</p>	<p>Sensor, toner door, and right doors are okay.</p>	<p>Go to step 2.</p>

Actions	Yes	No
<p>Step 2</p> <p>Open the front door, and check the thin, tall, plastic web (pivot plate) (A) at the top right of the printer. With the other covers in place and closed, the web interacts with switches in the door.</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">A</p> <p>Open the toner cover, and check the motion of the web. Is the web loose, damaged, or missing?</p>	<p>Replace the right cover assembly. See "Right cover assembly removal" on page 220.</p>	<p>Go to step 3.</p>
<p>Step 3</p> <p>Open the toner door, and inspect the vertical web that pushes and rotates the pivot plate.</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">B</p> <p>Is it damaged?</p>	<p>Replace the top cover assembly. See "Top cover assembly removal" on page 222.</p>	<p>Go to step 4.</p>

Actions	Yes	No
<p>Step 4</p> <p>With the front cover open, inspect the two switches. Using a tool, such as a spring hook, push the metal arms (C) to check the movement.</p>  <p>Is there any damage to the switches or the surrounding area?</p>	Replace the right cover assembly. See "Right cover assembly removal" on page 220.	Go to step 5.

Actions	Yes	No
<p>Step 5</p> <p>Turn the printer off, and remove the rear cover. See “Rear cover removal” on page 218. Turn the printer on, and verify the following values at JINT1 and JCVR1.</p> <p>JINT1</p> <p>Pin 1: +5 V dc Pin 2: Ground</p> <p>JCVR1</p> <p>Pin 1: +24 V dc</p>  <p>Are the values approximately correct?</p>	<p>Go to step 6.</p>	<p>Replace the controller board. See “Controller board removal” on page 235.</p>
<p>Step 6</p> <p>Close the front cover and the toner door. Be sure that the right cover is in place. Turn the printer off, and then disconnect the cables at JINT1 and JCVR1.</p> <p>Test continually at the connector under the following conditions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • With the front cover and toner door closed: Test pin 1 and pin 3 at JINT1 cable end, and pin 1 and pin 2 at JCVR1 cable end. • With one or both doors open: Pin 2 and 3 at JINT1 cable end should indicate continuity, but pins 1 and 2 at JCVR1 should have no continuity. <p>Are the tests verified?</p>	<p>Contact your next level or support.</p>	<p>Replace the front cover assembly. See “Front cover assembly removal” on page 214.</p>

Operator panel (display is dim and unchanging) service check

Replace one of the following components, and perform a POR before replacing a second component. Never replace both of the components without performing a POR after installing each one, or the printer will be rendered inoperable.

For CX310 models:

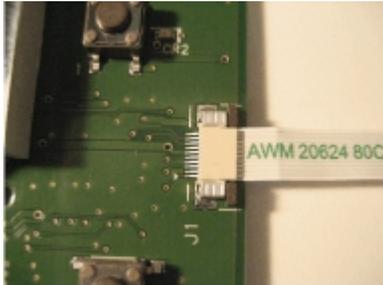
- Controller board
- Operator panel with UICC card

For CX410 and CX510 models:

- Controller board
- UICC card

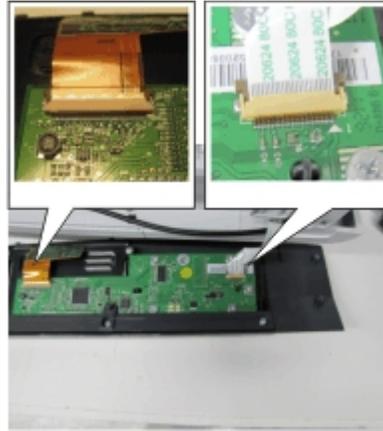
Warning—Potential Damage: Never install and remove components listed above as a method of troubleshooting components. Once a component has been installed in a printer, and the printer is powered on, it cannot be used in another printer. It must be returned to the manufacturer.

For CX310 and CX410 models:

Actions	Yes	No
<p>Step 1</p> <p>Enter the Diagnostics Menu (turn the printer off, press and hold 3 and 6, turn the printer on, and then release the buttons when the installed memory and processor speed displays).</p> <p>Perform the Panel Test. See “Panel Test” on page 168.</p> <p>Did all the pixels come on?</p>	Go to step 2.	Replace the operator panel. See “Operator panel removal (for CX310 and CX410 models only)” on page 279.
<p>Step 2</p> <p>Turn the printer off.</p> <p>Remove the rear cover. See “Rear cover removal” on page 218.</p> <p>Remove the operator panel. See “Operator panel removal (for CX310 and CX410 models only)” on page 279.</p> <p>Is the operator panel cable properly installed at JLCD1 on the controller board and the operator panel assembly?</p> <p>Note: JLCD1 is the ribbon cable connector on the right side facing the controller board.</p>	<p>Go to step 3.</p> <p>CX310</p>  <p>CX410</p> 	Reinstall the cable.
<p>Step 3</p> <p>Replace the operator panel. See “Operator panel removal (for CX310 and CX410 models only)” on page 279.</p> <p>Is the operator panel still dim and unchanging?</p>	Replace the controller board. See “Controller board removal” on page 235.	Problem resolved.

For CX510 models:

Actions	Yes	No
<p>Step 1</p> <p>Enter the Diagnostics Menu (turn the printer off, press and hold 3 and 6, turn the printer on, and then release the buttons when the installed memory and processor speed displays).</p> <p>Perform the Panel Test. See “Panel Test” on page 168.</p> <p>Did all the pixels come on?</p>	Go to step 2.	Go to step 4.
<p>Step 2</p> <p>Turn the printer off.</p> <p>Remove the rear cover. See “Rear cover removal” on page 218.</p> <p>Remove the operator panel. See “Operator panel removal (for CX510 models only)” on page 285.</p> <p>Is the operator panel cable properly installed at JLCD1 on the controller board and the operator panel assembly?</p> <p>Note: JLCD1 is the ribbon cable connector on the right side facing the controller board.</p>	Go to step 3.	Reinstall the cable.
<p>Step 3</p> <p>Check the UICC card to display cable.</p> <p>Is the display cable installed at the UICC card correctly?</p>	Go to step 4.	Reinstall the cable.
<p>Step 4</p> <p>Replace the display. See “Operator panel removal (for CX510 models only)” on page 285.</p> <p>Is the operator panel still dim and unchanging?</p>	Go to step 5.	Problem resolved.
<p>Step 5</p> <p>Replace the UICC card. See “Operator panel removal (for CX510 models only)” on page 285.</p> <p>Is the operator panel still dim and unchanging?</p>	Replace the controller board. See “Controller board removal” on page 235.	Problem resolved.



Operator panel (displays all diamonds, no beeps, or five beeps) service check

Replace one of the following components, and perform a POR before replacing a second component. Never replace both of the components without performing a POR after installing each one, or the printer will be rendered inoperable.

For CX310 models:

- Controller board
- Operator panel with UICC card

Diagnostic information

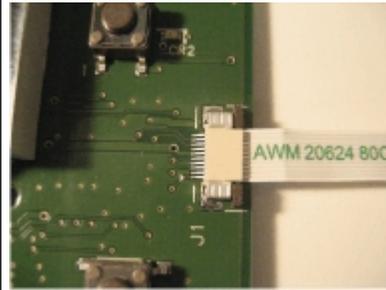
For CX410 and CX510 models:

- Controller board
- UICC card

Warning—Potential Damage: Never install and remove components listed above as a method of troubleshooting components. Once a component has been installed in a printer, and the printer is powered on, it cannot be used in another printer. It must be returned to the manufacturer.

For CX310 models:

Actions	Yes	No
<p>Step 1</p> <p>Turn the printer off.</p> <p>Remove the rear cover. See “Rear cover removal” on page 218.</p> <p>Remove the operator panel. See “Operator panel removal (for CX310 and CX410 models only)” on page 279.</p> <p>Is the operator panel cable properly installed at JLCD1 on the controller board and the operator panel assembly?</p> <p>Note: JLCD1 is the ribbon cable connector on the right side facing the controller board.</p>	Go to step 2.	Reinstall the cable.
<p>Step 2</p> <p>Replace the operator panel assembly. See “Operator panel removal (for CX310 and CX410 models only)” on page 279.</p> <p>Does the operator panel display all diamonds?</p>	Problem solved.	Replace the controller board. See “Controller board removal” on page 235.



For CX410 models:

Actions	Yes	No
<p>Step 1</p> <p>Turn the printer off.</p> <p>Remove the rear shield. See “Rear cover removal” on page 218.</p> <p>Remove the operator panel. See “Operator panel removal (for CX310 and CX410 models only)” on page 279.</p> <p>Is the operator panel cable properly installed at JLCD1 on the controller board and the operator panel assembly?</p> <p>Note: JLCD1 is the ribbon cable connector on the right side facing the controller board.</p>	Go to step 2.	Reinstall the cable.
<p>Step 2</p> <p>Replace the UICC card with display. See “Operator panel removal (for CX310 and CX410 models only)” on page 279.</p> <p>Does the operator panel display all diamonds?</p>	Replace the controller board. See “Controller board removal” on page 235.	Problem resolved.



For CX510 models:

Actions	Yes	No
<p>Step 1</p> <p>Turn the printer off.</p> <p>Remove the rear cover. See “Rear cover removal” on page 218.</p> <p>Remove the operator panel. See “Operator panel removal (for CX510 models only)” on page 285.</p> <p>Is the operator panel cable properly installed at JLCD1 on the controller board and the operator panel assembly?</p> <p>Note: JLCD1 is the ribbon cable connector on the right side facing the controller board.</p>	Go to step 2.	Reinstall the cable.
		
<p>Step 2</p> <p>Check UICC card to display cable.</p> <p>Is the display cable installed at the UICC card correctly?</p>	Go to step 3.	Reinstall the cable.
<p>Step 3</p> <p>Replace the UICC card with display. See “Operator panel removal (for CX510 models only)” on page 285</p> <p>Does the operator panel display all diamonds?</p>	Replace the controller board. See “Controller board removal” on page 235.	Problem resolved.

Operator panel (display blank) service check

Replace one of the following components, and perform a POR before replacing a second component. Never replace both of the components without performing a POR after installing each one, or the printer will be rendered inoperable.

For CX310 models:

- Controller board
- Operator panel with UICC card

For CX410 and CX510 models:

- Controller board
- UICC card

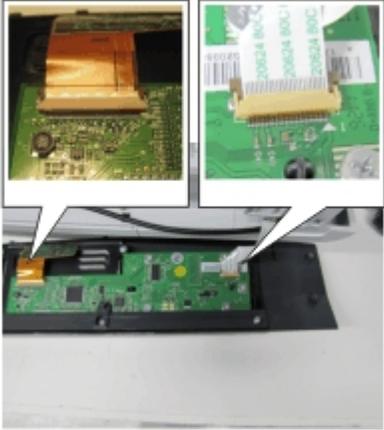
Warning—Potential Damage: Never install and remove components listed above as a method of troubleshooting components. Once a component has been installed in a printer, and the printer is powered on, it cannot be used in another printer. It must be returned to the manufacturer.

Note: The printer has detected a problem with the controller board, the operator panel assembly cable (part of the front cover assembly), or the operator panel assembly if POST does not complete. The printer emits five *beeps*, and sticks in a continuous pattern until the printer is turned off.

For CX310 and CX410 models:

Actions	Yes	No
<p>Step 1</p> <p>Turn the printer off.</p> <p>Remove the rear cover. See “Rear cover removal” on page 218.</p> <p>Remove the operator panel. See “Operator panel removal (for CX310 and CX410 models only)” on page 279</p> <p>Is the operator panel assembly cable properly installed at JLCD1 on the controller board and the operator panel assembly?</p> <p>Note: JCDL1 is the ribbon cable connector on the right side facing the controller board.</p>	<p>Go to step 2.</p> <p>CX310</p>  <p>CX410</p> 	<p>Reinstall the cable.</p>
<p>Step 2</p> <p>Replace the operator panel assembly. See “Operator panel removal (for CX310 and CX410 models only)” on page 279</p> <p>Is the operator panel still blank?</p>	<p>Replace the controller board. See “Controller board removal” on page 235.</p>	<p>Problem resolved.</p>

For CX510 models:

Actions	Yes	No
<p>Step 1</p> <p>Turn the printer off.</p> <p>Remove the rear cover. See “Rear cover removal” on page 218.</p> <p>Remove the operator panel. See “Operator panel removal (for CX310 and CX410 models only)” on page 279.</p> <p>Is the operator panel assembly cable properly installed at JLCD1 on the controller board and the operator panel assembly?</p> <p>Note: JCDL1 is the ribbon cable connector on the right side facing the controller board.</p>	<p>Go to step 2.</p>	<p>Reinstall the cable.</p> 
<p>Step 2</p> <p>Replace the UICC card to display cable.</p> <p>Is the display cable installed at the UICC card correctly?</p>	<p>Go to step 3.</p>	<p>Reinstall the cable.</p>
<p>Step 3</p> <p>Replace the display. See “Operator panel removal (for CX510 models only)” on page 285.</p> <p>Is the operator panel still blank?</p>	<p>Go to step 4.</p>	<p>Problem resolved.</p>
<p>Step 4</p> <p>Replace the UICC card. See “Operator panel removal (for CX510 models only)” on page 285.</p> <p>Is the operator panel still blank?</p>	<p>Replace the controller board. See “Controller board removal” on page 235.</p>	<p>Problem resolved.</p>

Operator panel (one or more operator panel buttons fail) service check

Replace one of the following components, and perform a POR before replacing a second component. Never replace both of the components without performing a POR after installing each one, or the printer will be rendered inoperable.

For CX310 models:

- Controller board
- Operator panel with UICC card

For CX410 models and CX510 models:

- Controller board
- UICC card

Warning—Potential Damage: Never install and remove components listed above as a method of troubleshooting components. Once a component has been installed in a printer, and the printer is powered on, it cannot be used in another printer. It must be returned to the manufacturer.

For CX310 models:

Actions	Yes	No
<p>Enter Diagnostics Menu (turn the printer off, press and hold 3 and 6, turn the printer on, and then release the buttons when the installed memory and processor speed displays). Perform the Panel Test. See “Panel Test” on page 168. The Panel Test should show alternating display of all pixels on, and all pixels off. Press Stop to end the test.</p> <p>Did the test show errors on the display?</p>	<p>Replace the operator panel assembly. See “Operator panel removal (for CX310 and CX410 models only)” on page 279.</p>	<p>Problem resolved.</p>

For CX410 models:

Steps in solving the problem

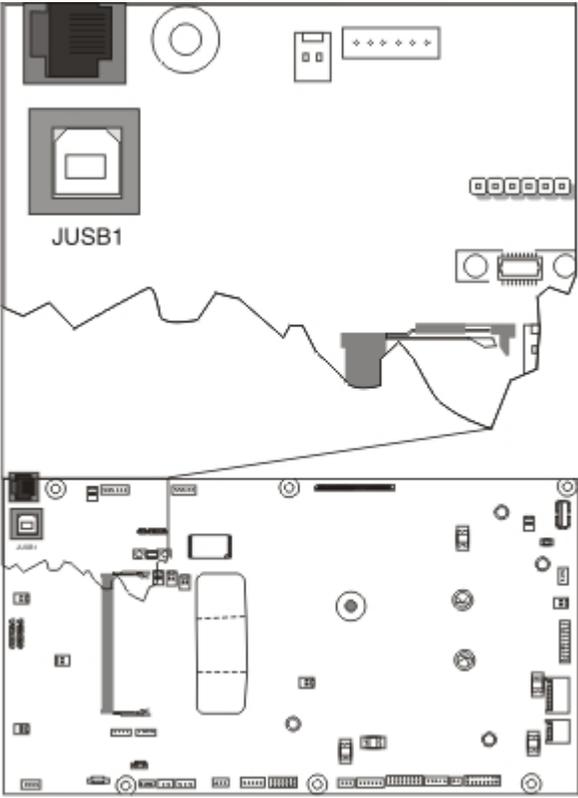
Actions	Yes	No
<p>Enter Diagnostics Menu (turn the printer off, press and hold 3 and 6, turn the printer on, and then release the buttons when the installed memory and processor speed displays).</p> <p>Perform the Button Test. See “Button Test” on page 168 in the Diagnostics menu.</p> <p>Did any of the buttons fail the test?</p>	<p>Replace the UICC card with display. See “Operator panel removal (for CX310 and CX410 models only)” on page 279.</p>	<p>Problem resolved.</p>

For CX510 models:

Steps in solving the problem

Actions	Yes	No
<p>Enter Diagnostics Menu (turn the printer off, press and hold 3 and 6, turn the printer on, and then release the buttons when the installed memory and processor speed displays).</p> <p>Perform the Button Test. See “Button Test” on page 168 in the Diagnostics menu.</p> <p>Did any of the buttons fail the test?</p>	<p>Replace the UICC card. See</p>	<p>Problem resolved.</p>

Operator panel USB cable service check

Actions	Yes	No
<p>Step 1 Remove the rear cover. See “Rear cover removal” on page 218.</p> <p>Is the cable properly seated in the controller board?</p> 	Go to step 2.	Reseat the USB cable.
<p>Step 2 Replace the USB cable. See “USB port connector removal” on page 299.</p> <p>Is the problem fixed?</p>	Problem resolved.	Replace the controller board. See “Controller board removal” on page 235.

USB service check

Actions	Yes	No
<p>Step 1 Is the USB cable properly connected to the printer and host PC?</p>	Go to step 2.	Properly connect the cable at both ends.
<p>Step 2 Try a different USB cable.</p> <p>Does this fix the issue?</p>	Issue fixed.	Go to step 3.

Actions	Yes	No
Step 3 Connect a different device to the USB cable. Did the host PC see the device?	Replace the controller board. See "Controller board removal" on page 235.	There is an issue with the host machine.

550-sheet and 650-sheet trays input option symptoms

Symptom	Action
Printer fails to recognize the option is installed.	
Printer keeps on prompting that the jam door is open even if it's closed.	
Tray X does not recognize the media size loaded.	
Tray missing message appears even if media tray is installed. Media tray won't fit the drawer.	
Double feed	
Printout is skewed.	
Tray LED won't light up during paper jam or tray empty.	

Trays 2 and 3 (optional) service check

Actions	Yes	No
Step 1 Are two option trays being used?	Go to step 2.	Go to step 4.
Step 2 If two option trays are being used, then is the 550-sheet tray on the bottom?	Go to step 4.	Go to step 3.
Step 3 Switch the order of the trays so that the 55-sheet tray is on the bottom, and then print a page from both trays. Did the pages print from both trays?	Problem resolved.	Go to step 4.
Step 4 Inspect the paperfeed pick tires on the tray that fails to pick. Do they appear worn or damaged?	Go to step 5.	Go to step 6.
Step 5 Replace the pick tires on the faulty tray, and then print a page with media from the affected tray. See "Pick tires removal" on page 305. Did the page print?	Problem resolved.	Go to step 6.

Actions	Yes	No
<p>Step 6 Remove the rear cover. See “Rear cover removal” on page 218. Check the option cable connected to JOPT1 for continuity. Is the cable properly seated? Is there continuity?</p>	Go to step 8.	Go to step 7.
<p>Step 7 Replace the cable, and print from both option trays. Did the pages print from both trays?</p>	Problem resolved.	Go to step 8.
<p>Step 8 Print a menu settings page. If two option trays are used, then the 650-sheet tray will appear as tray 2, and the 550-sheet tray will appear as tray 3. Are all of the attached option trays listed on the first page of the menu settings pages?</p>	Go to step 9.	<p>If the 550-sheet option failed to appear, then go to step 9. If the 650-sheet tray failed to appear, then go to step 10.</p>
<p>Step 9 Remove the 650-sheet tray from the printer. Attach the 550-sheet tray directly to the printer. Print a page from the 550-sheet tray. Did the page print?</p>	Go to step 11.	Replace the 550-sheet tray.
<p>Step 10 With only the 650-sheet tray attached to the printer, print a page from the 650 sheet tray. Did the page print?</p>	Go to step 11.	Replace the 650-sheet tray.
<p>Step 11 a Turn off the printer. b Remove the rear cover. See “Rear cover removal” on page 218. c Disconnect the cable at JOPT1 on the controller board. d Turn the printer on. e Measure to voltages below: JOPT1: Pin 2: Ground Pin 3: Ground Pin 5: +24 V dc Pin 6: Ground Pin 7: +5 V dc Pin 9: Ground Pin 10: Ground Are the voltages correct?</p>	Contact your next level of support.	Replace the controller board. See “Controller board removal” on page 235.

Tray 2 service check

FRU	Action
Tray 2	<p>Turn the printer off.</p> <p>Separate the printer from Tray 2.</p> <p>Turn the printer on and check the voltages on connector J28 on the engine board.</p> <p>Pins 1, 4: 3.3V</p> <p>Pin 2: 24V</p> <p>Pin 6: Ground</p> <p>If the voltages are incorrect, then replace the engine board.</p> <p>If the voltages are correct, then try using Tray 2 again. If the printer error persists, then replace Tray 2.</p>

Tray (x) sensor service check

Actions	Yes	No
<p>Step 1</p> <p>When the printer is in Ready state, pull the standard tray out. The display should indicate Tray (x) Missing. Reinsert the tray.</p> <p>Does the message remain on the display?</p>	Go to step 2.	Go to step 4.
<p>Step 2</p> <p>Check the vertical wall at the right rear of the tray for damage.</p> <p>Is the tray damaged?</p>	Replace the tray.	Go to step 3.
<p>Step 3</p> <p>Check for a dislodged tray present sensor.</p> <p>Is the sensor dislodged?</p>	<p>Replace the option tray present sensor.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If the 650-sheet tray is affected, then replace the 650-sheet drawer assembly. • If the 550-sheet drawer assembly is affected, then replace the entire 550-sheet drawer assembly. 	Contact the next level of support.
<p>Step 4</p> <p>Does the message Tray (x) Missing fail to appear when the tray is pulled out?</p>	Go to step 5.	Problem resolved.

Actions	Yes	No
<p>Step 5</p> <p>a Turn off the printer.</p> <p>b Remove the rear cover. See “Rear cover removal” on page 218.</p> <p>c Disconnect the cable at JTRAY1 connector for tray1 or JOPT1 for tray 2 and 3 on the controller board.</p> <p>d Turn the printer on, and measure the voltages below:</p> <p>JTRAY1 for tray 1:</p> <p>Pin 1: +5 V dc</p> <p>Pin 2: +5 V dc</p> <p>Pin 3: Ground</p> <p>JOPT1 for tray 2 or 3:</p> <p>Pin 2: Ground</p> <p>Pin 3: Ground</p> <p>Pin 5: +24 V dc</p> <p>Are the voltage values approximately correct?</p>	Problem resolved.	Replace the controller board. See “Controller board removal” on page 235.

550 and 650 input option service check

Action	Yes	No
<p>Step 1</p> <p>Is the machine using both 650 and 550 input option tray?</p>	Go to step 2.	Go to step 3.
<p>Step 2</p> <p>a Make sure the sequence of the input option trays is correct. The 650 option tray should be in tray 2, and the 550 option tray should be in tray 3.</p> <p>b Bring the printer into the Diagnostics Menu.</p> <p>c Navigate to Feed Test > Tray # > Single Feed Test.</p> <p>d Run a continuous feed test (feed at least 5 pages).</p> <p>Does the feed test run successfully on each option?</p>	Go to step 7.	Go to step 3.
<p>Step 3</p> <p>Isolate the problem. Verify the problem by installing only one input option to the printer at a time.</p> <p>a Bring the printer into the Diagnostics Menu.</p> <p>b Navigate to Feed Test > Tray # > Single Feed Test.</p> <p>Does the feed test run successfully on each option?</p>	Go to step 7.	Go to step 4.

Action	Yes	No
<p>Step 4</p> <p>Check the following for any damage:</p> <p>For 550 input option:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Input tray • Paper restrains • Paper dams • Pick pads <p>For 650 input option:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Input tray • Paper restrains • Paper dams • Pick pads • MPF gear • MPF pick assembly • MPF tray <p>Is the input option tray assembly free of damage?</p>	Go to step 5.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • For 550 input option, replace the optional 550-sheet drawer. • For 650 input option, replace the optional 650-sheet duo drawer.
<p>Step 5</p> <p>Check the pick tires for wear, damage, contamination, and if they are installed correctly.</p> <p>Is the pick tire free of wear and damaged?</p>	Go to step 6.	Replace the pick tire assembly. See “Pick tires removal” on page 305
<p>Step 6</p> <p>Check the input option drawer and the following for any damage or contamination:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Top and bottom autoconnector • Pass-through sensors • Feed rollers • Input option pick assembly (if it can go down every time the paper input tray is inserted) <p>Is the option drawer assembly free of damage or contamination?</p>	Go to step 7.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • For 550 input option, replace the optional 550-sheet drawer. • For 650 input option, replace the optional 650-sheet duo drawer.
<p>Step 7</p> <p>a Turn off the printer.</p> <p>b Remove the printer from the input option trays.</p> <p>c Remove the rear shield.</p> <p>d Reseat the JOPT1 cable on the system board.</p> <p>e Check the JOPT1 cable for any damage.</p> <p>f Position the printer to partially hang on the side of a table, and check the autoconnect/option tray cable for damage.</p> <p>Is the tray 2 to controller board cable damaged?</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If the printer autoconnector is damaged, then replace the tray 2 to controller board cable. • If the option tray autoconnector is damaged, then go to step 8. 	Go to step 8.

Action	Yes	No
<p>Step 8</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> For 550 input option, replace the optional 550-sheet drawer. For 650 input option, replace the optional 650-sheet duo drawer. <p>Does this fix the problem?</p>	Problem resolved.	Replace the controller board. See “Controller board removal” on page 235.

Scan/fax/copy symptoms

Symptom	Action
ADF won't duplex (Duplex ADF only)	See “ADF duplex service check” on page 141.
ADF skew	See “ADF feed errors service check” on page 140.
Multiple pages feed into ADF	
Documents wont feed into ADF	
Scanner makes buzzing noise on startup or during a scan.	See “Flatbed home position service check” on page 136.
Document feeds, but jams in ADF.	See “ADF paper jam service check” on page 138.
Black streaks on scans	See “ADF streak service check” on page 138.
Blank page	See “Black or blank page copy service check” on page 135.
Black page	
No dial tone	See “Modem/fax card service check” on page 142.
Machine dials a number but fails to make a connection with another fax machine.	The other fax machine may be turned off. Ask the fax recipient to check their machine.
Incoming fax has blank spaces or poor quality.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The sending fax machine may be faulty. The sending fax machine may have a dirty document glass. A noisy phone line can cause errors. Check the MFP print quality by making a copy. The print cartridge may be empty.
Invalid fax partition, or fax partition too small.	See “Format fax storage” on page 191.
Some words on an incoming fax are stretched.	The sending fax machine had a temporary jam.
Faxes fail to transmit.	See “Fax transmission service check” on page 145.
Fax reception fails.	See “Fax reception service check” on page 143.
Rattling noise coming from the ADF unit.	Inspect the ADF top cover and ADF separator pad for proper installation. Remove the separator pad and separator roll and reinstall them, if needed. See “ADF separator pad removal” on page 231. Also see “Top cover assembly removal” on page 222.

Black or blank page copy service check

Actions	Yes	No
Step 1 Print a menu page, or a page from the host. Is the page black?	See "Print quality solid color page service check" on page 35.	Go to step 2.
Step 2 Is the copy an ADF scan?	Go to step 3.	Go to step 4.
Step 3 Run a flatbed copy. Is it blank or black?	Go to step 5.	Go to step 4.
Step 4 Did the sheet feed into the ADF?		Go to step 5.
Step 5 Is the CCD ribbon cable properly connected to JCCD1 on the controller board?	Go to step 6.	Properly connect the ribbon cable to JCCD1.
Step 6 Check for +14VDC on Pin 33 and 34 on connector JCCD1. Pin 31 and 32 are +5VDC. Are the voltages present?	Replace the flatbed unit. See "Flatbed scanner assembly removal" on page 249.	Replace the controller board. See "Controller board removal" on page 235.

CCD service check

Actions	Yes	No
Step 1 Restart the device, and retry the scan / copy job. Repeat this step with a few copy jobs. Does the error return?	Go to step 2.	No issue.
Step 2 Is the CCD ribbon cable properly connected to JCCD1 on the controller board?	Go to step 3.	Properly connect the ribbon cable to JCCD1.
Step 3 Replace the flatbed unit. See "Flatbed scanner assembly removal" on page 249. Did this resolve the issue?	Problem resolved.	Replace the controller board. See "Controller board removal" on page 235.

Flatbed motor service check

Actions	Yes	No
<p>Step 1 Ensure that the flatbed motor cable (JFB1) is connected.</p> <p>Is the cable connected?</p>	Go to step 2.	Properly connect the cable.
<p>Step 2 Check pin 1 in JFBM1 for voltage. The voltage is only present when a flatbed copy job is running. The voltage should measure +24V AC.</p> <p>Is voltage present?</p>	Replace the flatbed unit. See “Flatbed scanner assembly removal” on page 249.	Replace the controller board. See “Controller board removal” on page 235.

Flatbed home position service check

Actions	Yes	No
<p>Step 1 POR the MFP.</p> <p>Does the CCD move and return to the home position?</p>	Problem solved.	Go to step 2.
<p>Step 2 Perform the home position sensor test. See “Scanner tests” on page 180.</p> <p>Is the sensor working properly?</p>	Go to step 3.	Go to step 5.
<p>Step 3 Check JFBM1 on the controller for proper connection.</p> <p>Is it connected properly?</p>	Go to step 4.	Properly connect the cable.
<p>Step 4 Check pin 1 in JFBM1 for voltage. The voltage is only present when a flatbed copy job is running. The voltage should measure +24V AC.</p> <p>Is voltage present?</p>	Go to step 5.	Replace the controller board. See “Controller board removal” on page 235.
<p>Step 5 Ensure that the home position cable (JHS1) is connected.</p> <p>Is the cable connected?</p>	Go to step 6.	Properly connect the cable.
<p>Step 6 Check pin 1 in JHS1 for voltage. The voltage should measure +5V DC. Pin 2 should be GND.</p> <p>Is voltage present and is it correct?</p>	Replace the flatbed. See “Flatbed scanner assembly removal” on page 249.	Replace the controller board. See “Controller board removal” on page 235.

ADF cover open service check

Actions	Yes	No
Step 1 Is the ADF cover properly closed?	Go to step 3.	Go to step 2.
Step 2 Close the ADF cover. Does the problem go away?	Issue resolved.	Go to step 3.
Step 3 Perform the ADF cover open sensor test. See "Scanner tests" on page 180. Does the sensor work properly?	Go to step 4	Go to step 8.
Step 4 On the bottom of the ADF cover, inspect the ADF cover closed sensor actuator. Does it move freely?	Go to step 6.	Go to step 5.
Step 5 Fix the actuator so it moves freely. Does this fix the problem?	Issue resolved.	Go to step 6.
Step 6 Remove the ADF rear cover and inspect the ADF cover closed sensor for dirt and debris. Is there dirt and debris present?	Go to step 7.	Go to step 8.
Step 7 Clean the dirt and debris from the sensor. Does this fix the issue?	Issue resolved.	Go to step 8.
Step 8 Inspect the connections on the ADF relay card in the ADF. Are all the connections properly connected?	Go to step 9.	Secure all the connections.
Step 9 Check the ADF cable for continuity. Is there continuity?	Go to step 10.	Replace the ADF cable.

Actions	Yes	No
<p>Step 10 Check for signals or voltages from JADF1 on the controller board. Pin 11 and 12 should measure +24VDC. Pin 5 should measure +14VDC.</p> <p>Are there signals or voltages present?</p>	Replace the ADF. See “ADF assembly removal” on page 228.	Replace the controller board. See “Controller board removal” on page 235.

ADF streak service check

Actions	Yes	No
Do streaks appear on the middle of scans when using the ADF?	Clean the ADF glass on the flatbed using a lint-free cloth. Also, clean the separator roll and pad with a damp cloth.	No issue to fix.

ADF paper jam service check

Note: This service check should be used if the paper feeds and jams in the ADF. If the paper is not feeding into the ADF see “ADF feed errors service check” on page 140.

Actions	Yes	No
<p>Step 1 If the ADF is multi-feeding or shingle feeding, then check for dirt on the ADF separator pad, restraint pad, and ADF separator rollers.</p> <p>Are they dirty?</p>	Clean them with a lint free cloth and isopropyl alcohol.	Replace the separator pad, restraint pad, and ADF pick roll.
<p>Step 2 If the paper is skewing when it is fed into the ADF, check the paper guide width.</p> <p>Is it set correctly?</p>	Go to step 3.	Set the paper guides so they contact the edges of the paper.
<p>Step 3 If paper is skewing or jamming when fed or jamming check to see if the top cover is open or ajar.</p> <p>Is the ADF top cover open or ajar?</p>	Properly close the top cover.	If the paper is jamming in the ADF, go to step 6
<p>Step 4 Properly close the top cover.</p> <p>Did this fix the problem?</p>	Problem resolved.	Go to step 5.
<p>Step 5 Is paper failing to feed into the ADF?</p>	Go to step 6.	Go to

Actions	Yes	No
<p>Step 6 Perform the ADF pick motor and ADF feed motor tests. See “Scanner tests” on page 180.</p> <p>Are the motors working properly?</p>	Go to step 5	Go to step 11.
<p>Step 7 Perform the ADF paper present and scan sensor tests. See “Scanner tests” on page 180</p> <p>Are the sensors working properly?</p>	Go to step	Go to step
<p>Step 8 Perform the ADF interval sensor tests.</p> <p>Are the sensors properly functioning?</p>	Go to step 6.	Go to step 9.
<p>Step 9 Check the leading edge of the paper to ensure the paper is not curled or bent in a way that would keep it from contacting the paper present sensor actuator. Also, check to see if the paper is moist or heavy.</p> <p>Is the paper damaged, or out of spec?</p>	Bad media.	Go to step 7.
<p>Step 10 Is there dirt in the sensors, or is the paper present actuator stuck?</p>	Clean the sensors, or remove debris from the actuators.	Go to step 8.
<p>Step 11 Are the sensor actuators on the ADF mechanism cover damaged?</p>	Replace the ADF.	Go to step 9.
<p>Step 12 Is the ADF connector properly connected to JADF1 on the system board?</p>	Go to step 10.	Properly connect the cable to the system board.
<p>Step 13 Inspect the connections on the ADF relay card in the ADF.</p> <p>Are all the connections properly connected?</p>	Go to step 11.	Secure all the connections.
<p>Step 14 Check the ADF cable for continuity. Is there continuity?</p>	Go to step 11.	Replace the ADF cable.
<p>Step 15 Check for signals or voltages from JADF1 on the controller board. Pin 11 and 12 should measure +24VDC. Pin 5 should measure +14VDC.</p> <p>Are there signals or voltages present?</p>	Replace the ADF unit. See “ADF assembly removal” on page 228.	Replace the controller board. See “Controller board removal” on page 235.

ADF feed errors service check

Note: This service check should be used if the paper feeds and jams in the ADF. If the paper is not feeding into the ADF see “ADF feed errors service check” on page 140.

Actions	Yes	No
<p>Step 1 If the ADF is multi-feeding, check for dirt on the ADF separator pad and ADF separator rollers.</p> <p>Are they dirty?</p>	Clean them with a lint free cloth and isopropyl alcohol.	Replace the separator pad and ADF pick roll.
<p>Step 2 If the paper is skewing when it is fed into the ADF, check the paper guide width.</p> <p>Is it set correctly?</p>	Go to step 3.	Set the paper guides so they contact the edges of the paper.
<p>Step 3 If paper is skewing when fed or jamming check to see if the top cover is open or ajar.</p> <p>Is the ADF top cover open or ajar?</p>	Properly close the top cover.	Go to step 4. If the paper is jamming in the ADF, see “ADF paper jam service check” on page 138.
<p>Step 4 Is the leading edge of the paper wrinkled or torn?</p>	Use different media.	Go to step 5.
<p>Step 5 Perform the ADF pick motor and ADF feed motor tests.</p> <p>Are the motors working properly?</p>	Go to step 6.	Go to step 8.
<p>Step 6 Perform the ADF paper present sensor test. See “Scanner tests” on page 180.</p> <p>Is the sensor working properly?</p>	Go to step 7.	Go to step 8.
<p>Step 7 Check the ADF sensor actuators to see if they are dirty or jammed.</p> <p>Are the actuators ok?</p>	If any actuators on the ADF are broken, then replace the ADF unit. See “ADF assembly removal” on page 228.	Go to step 8.
<p>Step 8 Properly connect all the connections in the ADF relay card and controller board.</p> <p>Did this fix the situation?</p>	Problem resolved	Go to step 9.

Actions	Yes	No
Step 9 Check the ADF cable for continuity. Is there continuity?	Go to step 11.	Go to step 10.
Step 10 Replace the ADF cable. Does this fix the problem?	Problem resolved.	Go to step 11.
Step 11 Replace the ADF. See “ADF assembly removal” on page 228. Does this fix the situation?	Problem solved.	Replace the controller board. See “Controller board removal” on page 235.

ADF duplex service check

Note: This service check should be used if the paper feeds and jams in the ADF. If the paper is not feeding into the ADF see “ADF feed errors service check” on page 140.

Actions	Yes	No
Step 1 Perform the ADF motor tests to verify that the motors are working properly. See “Motor tests” on page 181. Are the motors operating properly?	Go to step 2.	Go to step 4.
Step 2 Perform the scanner sensor tests. See “Scanner tests” on page 180. Are the sensors working properly?	Go to step 3.	Go to step 4.
Step 3 Check the ADF sensor actuators to see if they are dirty or jammed. Are the actuators ok?	Go to step 4.	Clean the actuators. If any actuators on the ADF are broken, then replace the ADF unit. See “ADF assembly removal” on page 228.
Step 4 Check all of the connections on the ADF relay card. Are the properly connected?	Go to step 5.	Properly connect all of the connections.
Step 5 Check the ADF cable to ensure that it is properly connected to the ADF relay card, and the main controller board at JADF1. Is the ADF cable properly connected?	Go to step 6.	Properly connect the ADF cable to its connections.

Actions	Yes	No
<p>Step 6 Check the ADF cable for continuity. Make sure pin 22 has continuity.</p> <p>Does pin 22 have continuity?</p>	Go to step 7.	Replace the ADF cable.
<p>Step 7 Replace the ADF. See “ADF assembly removal” on page 228.</p> <p>Does this fix the situation?</p>	Problem solved.	Replace the controller board. See “Controller board removal” on page 235.

Modem/fax card service check

Note: This service check should be used if the paper feeds and jams in the ADF. If the paper is not feeding into the ADF see “ADF feed errors service check” on page 140.

Actions	Yes	No
<p>Step 1 Is the phone line properly connected to the modem card and the wall jack?</p>	Go to step 2.	Go to step 3.
<p>Step 2 Properly connect the phone line to the modem card and wall jack.</p> <p>Did this fix the problem?</p>	Problem resolved.	Go to step 3.
<p>Step 3 Test the phone line’s ability to send and receive calls.</p> <p>Did the phone line work properly?</p>	Go to step 5.	Go to step 4.
<p>Step 4 Use the MFP on a properly functioning phone jack.</p> <p>Did this fix the problem?</p>	Problem resolved.	Go to step 5.
<p>Step 5 Is the modem card ribbon cable properly connected to the system board at JMOD2 and the modem card?</p>	Go to step 7.	Go to step 6.
<p>Step 6 Properly connect the modem card cable to the modem card and system board.</p> <p>Did this fix the problem?</p>	Problem resolved.	Go to step 7.
<p>Step 7 Check the modem card ribbon cable for continuity.</p> <p>Is there continuity?</p>	Go to step 8.	Replace the modem card cable.

Actions	Yes	No
<p>Step 8 Check the voltages from connector JMOD2 on the controller board. Check Pin 4 and 5 for +3.3VDC. Pin 7 for +5VDC. 9, 11, 13, 15, 17, and 19 are grounds.</p> <p>Are the signals or voltages present?</p>	Replace the fax card.	Replace the controller board. See “Controller board removal” on page 235.

Fax reception service check

Note: Before performing this service check, verify that the correct country code for the MFP is selected. This setting must match the country in which the MFP is used to transmit and receive faxes. If the setting is wrong, the modem settings can be changed in the Fax/SE menu. See step 14. These settings should only be performed with guidance from your second-level support. “ADF feed errors service check” on page 140.

Actions	Yes	No
<p>Step 1 Is the phone line properly connected to the modem card and the wall jack?</p>	Go to step 2.	Go to step 3.
<p>Step 2 Properly connect the phone line to the modem card and wall jack.</p> <p>Did this fix the problem?</p>	Problem resolved	Go to step 3.
<p>Step 3 Test the phone line’s ability to send and receive calls.</p> <p>Did the phone line work properly?</p>	Go to step 5.	Go to step 4.
<p>Step 4 Use the MFP on a properly functioning phone jack.</p> <p>Did this fix the problem?</p>	Problem resolved.	Go to step 5.
<p>Step 5 Is the phone line being used by the MFP an analog line?</p>	Go to step 8.	Go to step 6.
<p>Step 6 Is the line being used a VOIP line?</p>	Go to step 7.	Go to step 8.
<p>Step 7 Have the system administrator verify that the VOIP server is configured to receive faxes.</p> <p>Is the server properly configured?</p>	Go to step 8.	Stop here. The issue is VOIP related. The VOIP provider needs to change the server configuration.
<p>Step 8 Is the MFP on a PABX?</p>	Go to step 9.	Go to step 10.

Actions	Yes	No
<p>Step 9 Enable Behind a PABX under fax settings in the Administration menu.</p> <p>Did this fix the issue?</p>	Problem fixed.	Disable Behind a PABX , and go to step10.
<p>Step 10 Is a dial prefix needed to get an outside line?</p>	Go to step 11.	Go to step 12.
<p>Step 11 Try sending a fax using a dial prefix.</p> <p>Did the fax transmit?</p>	Problem fixed.	Go to step 12.
<p>Step 12 Is the fax failing to send to one specific destination?</p>	Go to step 13.	Go to step 14.
<p>Step 13 Check the device that cannot receive a fax.</p> <p>Can it send a fax?</p>	Go to step 14.	Stop here. The issue is with the other device.
<p>Step 14 Press **411 to enter the Fax/SE Menu. Select "Print Logs". Print the T30 transmission log. Check the error being reported with the fax error code table. See "Fax error log codes" on page 147. Perform the suggested resolution for the error.</p> <p>Did this fix the problem?</p>	Problem resolved.	Go to step 15.
<p>Step 15 Adjust the "Transmit Level" setting in the SE menu. press **411 to enter the SE menu, enter Modem settings, and select "Transmit Level". Test by adjusting the transmitted signal strength by decreasing/increasing the 'Transmit Level' setting in steps of 1db. For example, if default value is -11 db, changing it to -12db will decrease the signal strength by 1db, and changing it to -10db will increase the signal strength by 1db. Recommended adjustment range is ±5 db (in 1db steps) from the default value.</p> <p>Did this fix the problem?</p>	Stop. Problem resolved.	Go to your second-level of support. See "Escalating a fax issue to second-level support" on page 151.

Fax transmission service check

Actions	Yes	No
Step 1 Is the phone line properly connected to the modem card and the wall jack?	Go to step 2.	Go to step 3.
Step 2 Properly connect the phone line to the modem card and wall jack. Did this fix the problem?	Problem resolved	Go to step 3.
Step 3 Check for a dial tone. Is there a dial tone?	Go to step 4.	Go to step 6.
Step 4 Use a telephone to test the phone line's ability to send and receive calls. Did the phone line work properly?	Go to step 7.	Go to step 5.
Step 5 Use a telephone handset to verify the phone line is free of static or external noise. Is the phone line noise-free?	Go to step 7.	Go to step 6.
Step 6 Use the MFP on a properly functioning phone jack. Did this fix the problem?	Problem resolved.	Go to step 7.
Step 7 In <diags / config menu>, verify that the Enable Fax Receive setting is on. Is the setting set to on?	Go to step 9.	Go to step 8.
Step 8 Set "Enable Fax Receive" to On. Did this fix the problem?	Problem resolved.	Go to step 9.
Step 9 Is Distinctive Ring enabled?	Go to step 11.	Go to step 10.
Step 10 Turn on Distinctive ring. Did this fix the problem?	Problem resolved.	Go to step 11.
Step 11 Is the phone line analog?	Go to step 13.	Go to step 12.

Actions	Yes	No
<p>Step 12 Is the VOIP server configured to support fax?</p>	Go to step13.	Stop here. This is an issue with the VOIP provider.
<p>Step 13 Does the MFP have reception issues with only a certain remote device?</p>	Go to step 14.	Go to step 15.
<p>Step 14 Verify communications with a different remote device. Can the other device receive faxes?</p>	The issue is with the other device.	Go to step 15.
<p>Step 15 Go to the Administrator menu. Enter the Fax settings - Analog Fax Settings submenu. Verify the Block No Name Fax user setting. Is it enabled?</p>	Go to step 16.	Go to step 17.
<p>Step 16 Disable Block No Name Fax user setting. Did this fix the issue?</p>	Problem resolved.	Go to step 17.
<p>Step 17 Go to the Administrator menu. Enter the Fax settings - Analog Fax Settings submenu. Verify the remote device number is not in the Banned Fax List user setting. Is the remote device number in the banned fax list?</p>	Go to step18	Go to step 19.
<p>Step 18 Remove the remote number from the banned fax list. Did this fix the problem?</p>	Problem resolved.	Go to step 19.
<p>Step 19 Adjust the "Receive Threshold" setting in the SE menu. press **411 to enter the SE menu, enter Modem settings, and select "Receive Threshold". Test by adjusting the received signal level by decreasing/increasing the "Receive Threshold" setting in steps of 2db. For example, if default value is -43 db, changing it to -45db will decrease the received signal level by 2db, and changing it to -41db will increase the received signal level by 2db. Recommended adjustment range is between -33db and -48db (in 2db steps). Did this fix the problem?</p>	Problem resolved	Go to step 20.

Actions	Yes	No
<p>Step 20</p> <p>press **411 to enter the SE Menu. Select “Print Logs”.</p> <p>Print the T30 transmission/ job log. Check the error code being reported. See “Fax error log codes” on page 147.</p> <p>Perform the suggested resolution for the error.</p> <p>Did this fix the problem?</p>	Problem resolved.	Contact your second-level of support. See “Escalating a fax issue to second-level support” on page 2-79.

Fax error log codes

Error code	Description	Action
000	No error occurred during fax transmission	No action needed
200	Error occurred when transmitting training.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check line quality. • Select a lower ‘Max Speed’ value under Fax Send settings • Adjust the transmit level.
3XX	Error occurred when receiving image data.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check line quality. • Adjust ‘Receive Threshold’. • Select a lower ‘Max Speed’ value under Fax Receive settings.
4XX	Error occurred when sending image data.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check line quality. • Adjust ‘Transmit Level’. • Select a lower ‘Max Speed’ value under Fax Receive settings.
5XX	Received unknown response from remote fax device.	No action needed. Issue is with the other device.
6XX	Error occurred when receiving a frame.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check line quality. • Adjust ‘Receive Threshold’.
7XX	Error occurred when sending a frame.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check line quality. • Adjust ‘Transmit Level’. • Select a lower ‘Max Speed’ value under Fax Send settings.
800	Received EOT unexpectedly from the modem in V34 mode.	If error persists, then disable V34 modulation scheme.
802	Too many timeouts occurred during ECM reception.	If error persists, then disable ECM mode.
803	Fax cancelled by user	No action needed.

Error code	Description	Action
804	Unexpectedly received a disconnect command from the remote end.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check line quality. • Adjust Transmit Level/Receive Threshold values. • Remote device could be requesting an unsupported feature.
805	Remote fax device failed to respond to the DCS command.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Adjust Transmit Level/Receive Threshold values. • Remote device could be malfunctioning.
808	T1 timeout occurred when trying to establish a connection with a remote fax device.	Adjust Transmit Level/Receive Threshold values.
809	T2 Timeout occurred due to loss of command/response synchronization.	Adjust Transmit Level/Receive Threshold values.
80A	T5 Timeout occurred when transmitting image data to remote fax device.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check line quality. • Adjust 'Transmit Level'. • Select a lower 'Max Speed' value under Fax Send settings.
80B	Too many errors when transmitting in ECM mode.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check line quality. • Adjust 'Transmit Level'. • Select a lower 'Max Speed' value under Fax Send settings.
80C	Remote device failed to respond to the CTC command.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Select a lower 'Max Speed' value under Fax Send settings. • Adjust 'Transmit Level'.
80D	Received too many requests from remote end to repeat the previous command sent.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check line quality. • Adjust 'Transmit Level'. • Check if line conditions on remote end will facilitate a good connection.
80E	Functional limitation-Remote fax device does not support G3 receive capability.	No action needed. Issue with the remote device.
811	Failed to detect a fax device at the remote end.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Verify MFD is answering to fax call and not a voice call. • Decrease value of 'Rings To Answer' setting.
812	No more data rates available in V34 modulation scheme.	Adjust to a lower modulation scheme.
813	Timeout occurred after waiting too long to receive a good frame.	Adjust "Receive Threshold".
814	Tried too many times at selected speed using V34 modulation scheme.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Adjust 'Transmit Level'. • Adjust to a lower modulation scheme.

Error code	Description	Action
815	Fax transmission was interrupted due to power failure.	Troubleshoot MFP if error persists. See "Modem/fax card service check" on page 142.
818	Fax transmission failed due to insufficient memory to store scanned image.	Adjust 'Memory Use' setting to allocate more memory for send jobs.
819	Fax transmission failed due to insufficient memory to store received image.	Adjust 'Memory Use' setting to allocate more memory for receive jobs.
81A	A timeout occurred during transmission of a page in ECM mode.	Select a lower 'Max Speed' value under Fax Send settings.
880	Failure to transmit training successfully in V17, V29, V27 terminal modulation schemes.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Select a lower "Max Speed" under Fax Send settings. • Adjust the "Transmit Level". • Check line quality.
881	Failure to transmit training successfully in V33, V29, V27 terminal modulation schemes.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Select a lower "Max Speed" under Fax Send settings. • Adjust the "Transmit Level". • Check line quality.
882	Failure to transmit training successfully in V17, V29 terminal modulation schemes.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Select a lower "Max Speed" under Fax Send settings. • Adjust the "Transmit Level". • Check line quality.
883	Failure to transmit training successfully in V17, V27 terminal modulation schemes.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Select a lower "Max Speed" under Fax Send settings. • Adjust the "Transmit Level". • Check line quality.
884	Failure to transmit training successfully in V29, V27 terminal modulation schemes.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Select a lower "Max Speed" under Fax Send settings. • Adjust the "Transmit Level". • Check line quality.
885	Failure to transmit training successfully in V17 terminal modulation scheme.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Select a lower "Max Speed" under Fax Send settings. • Adjust the "Transmit Level". • Check line quality.
886	Failure to transmit training successfully in V29 terminal modulation scheme.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Select a lower "Max Speed" under Fax Send settings. • Adjust the "Transmit Level". • Check line quality.
887	Failure to transmit training successfully in V27 terminal modulation scheme.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Select a lower "Max Speed" under Fax Send settings. • Adjust the "Transmit Level". • Check line quality.

Error code	Description	Action
888	Failure to transmit training successfully at 2400 bps in V27 terminal modulation scheme.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Adjust "Transmit Level". Check line quality.
889	Failed to connect at the minimum speed supported by the MFP.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Adjust "Transmit Level". Incompatible connection.
88A	Failed to connect using V.34 modulation scheme.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check line quality. Adjust to a lower modulation scheme. Adjust Transmit Level Receive Threshold values.
901	No fax tones detected from remote end.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Verify destination phone number. Verify that the remote fax is authorized to receive faxes.
902	No dial tone detected.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check by enabling 'Behind a PABX' setting. Check phone line. Check MFD modem hardware.
903	Busy tone detected.	Check with remote end if successive attempts fail.
904	Hardware error detected.	See "Modem/fax card service check" on page 142.
905	A timeout occurred after dialing the number and waiting for a response.	Check with remote end if successive attempts fail.
906	Fax cancelled by user.	No action needed.
907	Modem detected a digital line connection.	Verify the MFP is connected to an analog line. See "Fax transmission service check" on page 145.
908	Phone line was disconnected	Restore phone line connection.
A00	Received request for unsupported function from remote fax device.	No action needed.
A01	Received request for unsupported image width from remote fax device.	No action needed.
A02	Received request for unsupported image resolution from remote fax device.	No action needed.
A03	Received request for unsupported compression type from remote fax device.	No action needed.
A04	Received request for unsupported image length from remote fax device.	No action needed.
F00	Unknown error occurred.	No action needed.

Escalating a fax issue to second-level support

Before contacting the second-level support, go to the SE menu on the MFP and generate a Fax error file. This file contains machine settings information and debug information that will help second-level support determine the cause of a failure.

To generate the fax error file, perform the following steps:

- 1 In a Web browser, type `http://MFP/<IP address>/se`.
- 2 The MFP's SE menu page will display. Click the "Dump Job History" link. The following displays:

Fax Job Log							
Wednesday, 2006-02-08 11:25							
Action	Date	Time	Job #	Length	Station Name/Number	Pages	Status
SCAN	1969-12-31	19:00				9	OK
SEND	2006-02-01	13:55	73	17:53	4039	2	CANCELED
SEND	2006-02-01	13:56	74	17:53	4039	0	CANCELED

- 3 Write down the type of connection, the type of error, and the job in which the error occurred.
- 4 In the Web browser address bar, type `http://MFP/<IP address>/se`.
- 5 Click **Report a Fax Problem**. The fax check list displays.
- 6 Fill in the requested information. This is where you will type in the information you retrieved in step 3. Second-level support can assist you if you have questions about the information requested on the page.

Title/Name of Tester	<input type="text" value="Your Name"/>	Date of Event	<input type="text" value="Date of Event"/>	mm/dd/yyyy
Customer	<input type="text" value="Customer Name"/>	Time of Event	<input type="text" value="Time of Event"/>	hh:mm [A,P]M
Job ID	<input type="text" value="Job ID"/>			#####
Describe the Physical Connection:				
Type:	Description:	Channel Quality:		
<input checked="" type="radio"/> Analog	<input type="checkbox"/> VoIP/FoIP	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Clear		
<input type="radio"/> Digital	<input type="checkbox"/> PAE	<input type="radio"/> OK		
	<input type="checkbox"/> ISD	<input type="radio"/> Some Noise		
		<input type="radio"/> Very Noisy		

Note: The fields requesting the code levels, model number, type of problem are auto-filled. If the information is not in the fields, it can be retrieved from the SE menu. The SE menu can be accessed by pressing ****411** or typing `http://MFP/<IP address>/se` in a Web browser.

- 7 After all the requested information is entered into the Fax Checklist Web page, press the **Submit** button on the bottom of the page. A dialogue asking you to save the file will appear.

Note: The file generated by the MFP is not automatically transmitted to second-level support. It is placed on the computer desktop.

- 8 Enter a name for the file, and indicated where you want to save the file.
- 9 Press **OK**. The file appears on the desktop.
- 10 E-mail the file to second-level support.

Service menus

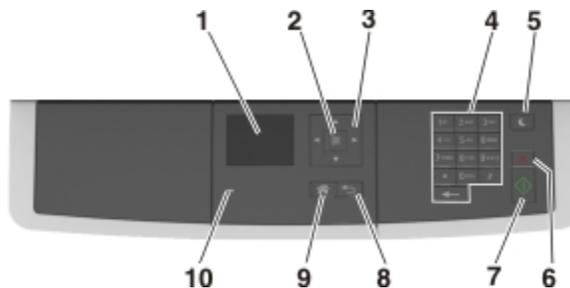
- “Understanding the operator panel and menus” on page 152
- “Understanding the scanner” on page 157
- “Diagnostics menu” on page 158
- “Configuration menu” on page 185
- “Entering invalid engine mode” on page 194
- “Entering recovery mode” on page 194
- “Accessing the Network SE menu” on page 194
- “Accessing the service engineer (SE) menu” on page 195
- “Accessing the fax SE menu” on page 195

Understanding the operator panel and menus

- “Using the operator panel for CX310” on page 152
- “Using the operator panel for CX410 models” on page 153
- “Using the operator panel for CX510 models” on page 154
- “understanding-the-lights” on page 154
- “understanding-the-home-screen-for-middle-and-high-models” on page 155

The operator panel is used to navigate through printer menus and to control printer settings.

Using the operator panel for CX310

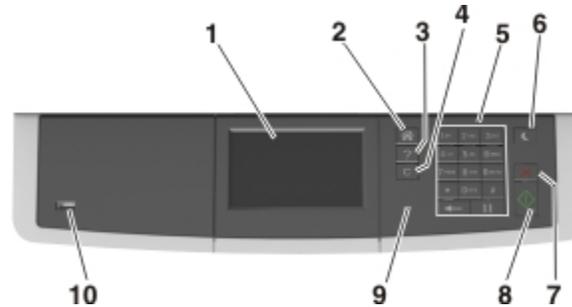


Using the operator panel

1	Display	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Views printing, copying, e-mailing, and scanning options • Views printer status and error messages
2	Select button	Selects menu options and saves settings
3	Arrow buttons	Scrolls through menus or settings on the display
4	Keypad	Enters numbers, letters, or symbols
5	Sleep button	Enables sleep mode or hibernate mode
6	Cancel button	Stops all printer activity

7	Start button	Starts a job, depending on which mode is selected
8	Back button	Returns to the previous screen.
9	Home button	Goes to the home screen
10	Indicator light	Checks the status of the printer

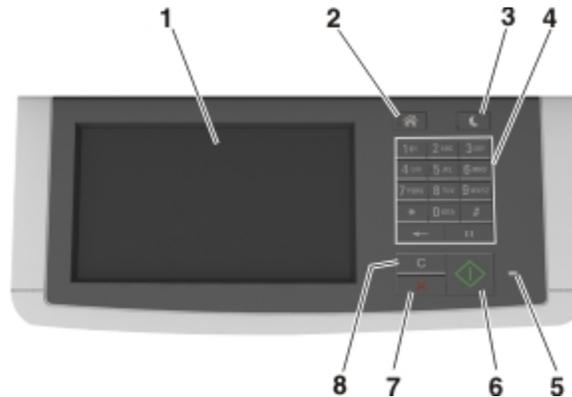
Using the operator panel for CX410 models



Using the operator panel

1	Display	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Views the printer status and messages Sets up and operates the printer
2	Home button	Goes to the home screen
3	Help button	Goes to the Help menus
4	Clear all/Reset button	Resets the default settings of a function, such as printing, copying, or e-mailing
5	Keypad	Enters numbers, letters, or symbols
6	Sleep button	Enables sleep mode or hibernate mode
7	Cancel button	Cancels all printer activity
8	Start button	Starts a job, depending on which mode is selected
9	Indicator light	Checks the status of the printer
10	USB port	Connects a flash drive to the printer Note: Only the front USB port supports flash drives

Using the operator panel for CX510 models



Using the operator panel

1	Display	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Views printing, copying, e-mailing, faxing, and scanning options Views the printer status and error messages
2	Home button	Goes to the home screen
3	Sleep button	Enables Sleep mode or Hibernate mode
4	Keypad	Enters numbers, letters, or symbols
5	Indicator light	Checks the status of the printer
6	Start button	Starts a job, depending on which mode is selected
7	Stop or cancel button	Cancels all printer activity
8	Clear all/Reset button	Resets the default settings of a function, such as printing, copying, or e-mailing

understanding-the-lights

The colors of the indicator light and Sleep button lights on the printer operator panel signify a certain printer status or condition.

Indicator light color and its corresponding printer status

Indicator light	Printer status
Off	The printer is off or in hibernation mode.
Blinking green	The printer is warming up, processing data, or printing.
Solid green	The printer is on, but idle.
Blinking red	The printer requires user intervention.

Sleep button light color and its corresponding printer status

Sleep button light	Printer status
Off	The printer is idle or in Ready state.
Solid amber	The printer is in Sleep mode.

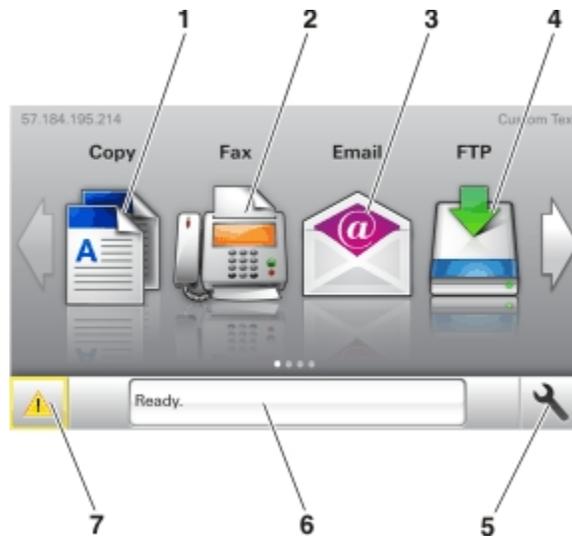
Blinking amber	The printer is waking from entering hibernation mode.
Blinking amber for 0.1 second, then goes completely off for 1.9 seconds in pulsing pattern.	The printer is in hibernation mode.

understanding-the-home-screen-for-middle-and-high-models

When the printer is turned on, the display shows a basic screen, referred to as the home screen. Use the home screen buttons and icons to initiate an action such as copying, faxing, or scanning; to open the menu screen; or to respond to messages.

Note: Your home screen may vary depending on your home screen customization settings, administrative setup, and active embedded solutions.

For CX410 models



Home screen for CX410 models

Touch	To
1	Copy Accesses the Copy menus and makes copies
2	Fax Accesses the Fax menus and sends faxes
3	E-mail Accesses the E-mail menus and sends e-mails.
4	FTP Accesses the File Transfer Protocol (FTP) menus and scan documents directly to an FTP server
5	Menu icon Accesses the printer menus Note: The menus are available only when the printer is in ready state
6	Status message bar <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Shows the current printer status such as Ready or Busy Shows printer supply conditions such as Imaging unit low or Cartridge low Shows intervention messages and the instructions on how to clear them
7	Status/Supplies <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Shows a printer warning or error message whenever the printer requires intervention to continue processing View more information on the printer warning or message, and on how to clear it

For CX510 models



Home screen for CX510 models

Touch	To
1	Change language Launches the Change Language pop-up window that lets you change the primary language of the printer
2	Copy Accesses the Copy menus and makes copies
3	Fax Accesses the Fax menus and sends faxes
4	E-mail Accesses the E-mail menus and sends e-mails
5	FTP Accesses the File Transfer Protocol (FTP) menus and scan documents directly to an FTP server
6	Arrows Scrolls up or down
7	Forms and Favorites Quickly finds and prints frequently used online forms
8	Menu Icon Accesses the printer menus Note: The menus are available only when the printer is in Ready state
9	Bookmarks Creates, organizes, and saves a set of bookmarks (URL) into a tree view of folders and file links Note: The tree view supports only bookmarks created from this function, and not from any other application
10	USB Drive Views, selects, prints, scans, or e-mails photos and documents from a flash drive Note: This icon appears only when you return to the home screen while a memory card or flash drive is connected to the printer
11	Held Jobs Displays all current held jobs
12	Status/Supplies <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Shows a warning or error message whenever the printer requires intervention to continue processing Accesses the messages screen for more information on the message, and how to clear it
13	Tips Opens a context-sensitive Help dialog

14	Search Held Jobs	<p>Searches for one or more of the following items:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Use name for held or confidential print jobs • Job names for held jobs, excluding confidential print jobs • Profile names • Bookmark container or print job names • USB container or print job names for supported file types
----	------------------	---

Understanding the scanner

understanding-scanner-functions

The scanner will perform the following functions:

- Makes quick copies or sets the printer to perform specific copy jobs
- Sends a fax using the printer control panel
- Sends a fax to multiple fax destinations at the same time
- Scans documents and sends them to your computer, an e-mail address, or an FTP destination
- Scans documents and sends them to another printer (PDF through an FTP)

Using the ADF and scanner glass

Automatic document feeder (ADF)	Scanner glass
<p>Use the ADF for multiple-page documents including two-sided (duplex) pages.</p> 	<p>Use the scanner glass for single-page documents, book pages, small items (such as postcards or photos), transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings).</p> 

<p>When using the ADF:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Load the document into the ADF tray faceup, short edge first • Load up to 50 sheets of plain paper into the ADF tray • Scan sizes from 105 x 148 mm (4.1 x 5.8 inches) wide to 216 x 355 mm (8.5 x 14 inches) long • Scan media weights from 14 to 31 lbs • Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF tray. Place these items on the scanner glass. 	<p>When using the scanner glass:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Place a document facedown on the scanner glass in the corner of the green arrow • Scan or copy documents from 216 x 296.9 mm (8.5 x 11.69 inches) dimension • Copy books up to 12.7 mm (0.5 inch) thick
---	--

Diagnostics menu

- “Entering diagnostics mode” on page 159
- “Available tests” on page 159
- “REGISTRATION” on page 161
- “Skew” on page 163
- “Quick Test” on page 163
- “Alignment Menu” on page 165
- “Scanner calibration” on page 165
- “MISC TESTS” on page 166
- “PRINT TESTS” on page 167
- “Print quality test pages” on page 168
- “HARDWARE TESTS” on page 168
- “DUPLEX TESTS” on page 169
- “INPUT TRAY TESTS” on page 172
- “BASE SENSOR TEST” on page 173
- “DEVICE TESTS” on page 174
- “PRINTER SETUP” on page 174
- “EP SETUP” on page 177
- “TPS Setup: Right or Left” on page 178
- “TPS Setup: Cal Ref Adj” on page 178
- “TPS Setup: Reset Color Cal” on page 178
- “Reports: Menu Settings Page” on page 179
- “EVENT LOG” on page 179
- “Scanner tests” on page 180
- “Exit Diagnostics” on page 185

The Diagnostics menu group contains the settings and operations used while manufacturing and servicing the printer.

Entering diagnostics mode

- 1 Turn off the printer.
- 2 Press and hold **3** and **6**.
- 3 Turn on the printer.
- 4 Release the buttons when the installed memory and processor speed displays.
- 5 Select **Exit Diags** to exit Diagnostics mode and return to the printer home screen.

Available tests

The tests display on the operator panel in the order shown:

Diagnostics Menu

Registration (black registration)	
Top Margin	See "REGISTRATION" on page 161.
Bottom Margin	
Left Margin	
Right Margin	
Skew	See "Skew" on page 163.
Quick Test	See "Quick Test" on page 163.
Alignment menu (color alignment)	
Cyan	See "Alignment Menu" on page 165.
Yellow	
Magenta	
Factory Scanner	A summary page for all the color alignment settings: it can be used in place of alignment pages for individual color.
Factory Manual	
Print Tests	
Tray 1	See "PRINT TESTS" on page 167 and "Feed test" on page 182.
Tray 2 (if installed)	
Manual Feeder	
Multipurpose Feeder (if installed)	
Print Quality Test Pages (Prt Qual Pgs)	See "Print quality test pages" on page 168.
Hardware Test	
Panel Test	See "Panel Test" on page 168.
Button Test	See "Button Test" on page 168.

DRAM Test	See "DRAM Test" on page 169.
Duplex Tests (if installed)	
Quick Test	See "Quick Test" on page 163
Top Margin	See "Duplex Top Margin" on page 171.
Left Margin	See "Duplex Left Margin" on page 171.
Input Tray Tests	
Feed Tests	See "Feed test" on page 182.
Sensor Test	See "Sensor Test" on page 172.
Base Sensor Test	
Front Door	See "BASE SENSOR TEST" on page 173.
Input - S1	
Input - S2	
Fuser Exit Sensor	
Standard Bin	
C-TMC	
M-TMC	
Y-TMC	
K-TMC	
Miscellaneous Tests	
Motor Detect	See "Motor Detect" on page 166.
Device Tests	
Flash Test (if flash memory is installed)	See "Flash test" on page 174.
Printer Setup	
Defaults	See "Defaults" on page 174.
Print Color Page Count	See "PAGE COUNTS" on page 175.
Print Mono Page Count	
Perm Page Count	
Serial Number	See "Serial Number" on page 175.
Engine Setting 1	See "Engine Setting 1 through 4" on page 175.
Engine Setting 2	
Engine Setting 3	
Engine Setting 4	
Model Name	See "Model Name" on page 175.
Configuration ID (Config ID)	See "Configuration ID" on page 175.
Transfer Module Barcode	See "Transfer Module Barcode" on page 176.

Reset Fuser Count	See “Reset Fuser Count” on page 176.
EP Setup	
EP Defaults	See “EP Defaults” on page 177.
Fuser Temperature	See “Fuser temperature” on page 177.
DC Charge Adjust	See “DC Charge Adjust, Bias Adjust, Transfer Adjust” on page 177.
Dev Bias Adjust	
Transfer Adjust	
TPS Setup	
Right	See “TPS Setup: Right or Left” on page 178.
Left	
Cal Ref Adjust	See “TPS Setup: Cal Ref Adj” on page 178.
Reset Color Calibration	See “TPS Setup: Reset Color Cal” on page 178.
Reports	
Menu Settings Page	See “Reports: Menu Settings Page” on page 179.
Event Log	
Display Log	See “Display Log” on page 179.
Print Log	See “Print Log” on page 179.
Clear Log	See “Clear Log” on page 180.
Exit Diags	This selection exits the Diagnostics Menu. The printer performs a POR, and returns to normal mode. See “Exit Diagnostics” on page 185.

REGISTRATION

Print registration makes sure the black printing plane is properly aligned on the page. This is one of the steps in aligning a new printhead. See “Alignment Menu” on page 165. It is also the first step in aligning the duplex registration. See “Quick Test” on page 163.

To set Registration:

- 1** Select **Registration** from the Diag Menu, and press **Select**.
- 2** Use **Left** or **Right** to select **Print Quick Test**, and press **Select**.
See “Quick Test” on page 163 for addition information.
The message **Printing . . .** appears on the display, and the page prints.
Retain this page to determine the changes you need to make to the margin settings.
- 3** Press **Select** to enter the **Registration**.
- 4** Use **Left** or **Right** to select the margin setting you need to change, and press **Select**.
- 5** Use **Left** to decrease or **Right** to increase the offset values, and press **Select** to confirm the value. The message **Submitting** changes displays, and the original margin setting screen appears.
The print registration ranges are:

Adjusting margins

Description	Value	Direction of change
Top margin	-50 to +50 Each increment corresponds to 8 scans at a 600 dpi scan rate (0.0133 inches or 0.339 mm). The default is 0.	A positive change moves the image down the page and increases the top margin. A negative change moves the image up and decreases the top margin. No compression or expansion occurs.
Bottom margin	-25 to +25 Each increment causes approximately 0.55 mm shift in the bottom margin. The default is 0.	A positive offset moves text down the page and narrows the bottom margin, while a negative offset moves text up the page and narrows the bottom margin. The image is compressed or expanded.
Left margin	-25 to +25 Each increment corresponds to 4 pixels at 600 dpi (0.00666 in. or 0.1693 mm). The default is 0.	A positive change moves the image to the left, and a negative change moves the image to the right. No compression or expansion occurs.
Right margin	-50 to +50 Each increment corresponds to an approximate shift of 4 pixels at 600 dpi. The default is 0.	A positive change moves the image to the left, and a negative change moves the image to the right.
Skew	-100 to +100 Each increment corresponds to 1/1200 of an inch. The default is 0.	A positive value causes the left end of the scan line to move down the page. A negative value causes the left end of the scan line to move up the page. The right end stays fixed. There is no compression or expansion of the image.

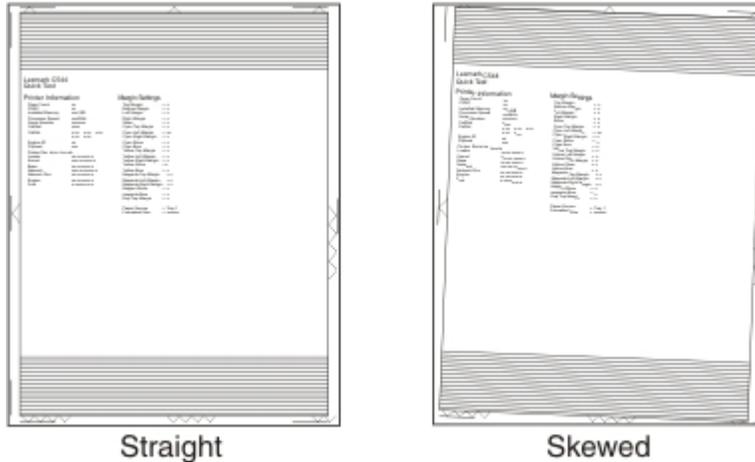
6 Print another copy of the Quick Test to verify your changes.

7 Continue changing the settings by repeating steps 3 through 5.

To exit Registration, press **Back** or **Stop**.

Skew

One printhead houses the four color planes. The black plane is aligned to the printer, and the other color planes are internally aligned to black. Electronic alignment fine tunes the alignment of the color planes to the black plane once the printhead is installed. See “Alignment Menu” on page 165 or instructions on setting printhead alignment. This must be performed before color skew adjustment is attempted. The following illustration shows proper alignment versus skewed alignment.



Quick Test

The Quick Test contains the following information:

- Print registration settings
- Alignment diamonds at the left, right, top, and bottom
- Horizontal lines to check for skew
- General printer information, including current page count, installed memory, serial number, and code level

Lexmark C544		Quick Test	
Device Information			
Page Count	205		
PSAC	205		
Installed Memory	128 MB		
Processor Speed	500MHz		
Serial Number	98P104V		
Engine ID	25		
System Card ID	00040000869		
AA	0000		
CalSet			
C	0.0000	1.0000	
	0.0000	0.0000	
M	0.0000	1.0000	
	0.0000	0.0000	
Y	0.0000	1.0000	
	0.0000	1.0000	
K	0.0000	1.0000	
	0.0000	0.0000	
Printer Revision Levels			
Loader	LF_AS_P075-0		
Serial	FTL_APS_FT51-0		
Base	LF_AS_P075-0		
Network	MF_APS_M11-0		
Network Brvt	LF_AS_P075-0		
Engine	LF_AS_E070a-0		
Printhead	LSU_AS_H007_16		
Panel	0,0		
Font	8_31M02-US-0		
MARGIN SETTINGS			
	Top Margin	= 40	
	Bottom Margin	= -5	
	Left Margin	= -4	
	Right Margin	= 0	
	Cyan Top Margin	= 1	
	Cyan Left Margin	= -20	
	Cyan Right Margin	= -36	
	Yellow Top Margin	= -6	
	Yellow Left Margin	= -56	
	Yellow Right Margin	= -50	
	Magenta Top Margin	= 0	
	Magenta Left Margin	= -8	
	Magenta Right Margin	= -30	
	Dup Top Margin	= -50	
	Dup Left Margin	= 0	
	Paper Source	= Tray1	
	Formatted Size	= Letter	

To print the Quick Test page:

Note: Print the Quick Test Page on letter or A4 paper.

1 Select **Registration** from Diag Menu, and press **Select**

.

2 Select **Quick Test Page**, and press **Select**

.

The message **Printing...** appears on the display.

Once the Quick Test Page completes printing, the Registration screen displays again.

Alignment Menu

Use the alignment menu to align the image on the page for cyan, yellow, and magenta. The black image should be aligned using REGISTRATION before the individual colors are aligned.

Warning—Potential Damage: Read the instructions for the alignment carefully.

Setting alignment for color

- 1 From the Diagnostics menu, touch **Alignment Menu**.
- 2 Select **CYAN, YELLOW, or MAGENTA**.
- 3 Touch **Quick Test**. You may need to scroll to the next page.
A two-page instruction sheet prints.
The printer prints the test page from the default paper source, however if the default source only supports envelopes, then the page prints from Tray 1. Print on A4 or letter paper for the best results.
- 4 Determine which settings to change and follow the instructions on the printed sheets to determine the adjustment.

Description	Range
Top Margin	-128 to +127
Left Margin	-2500 to +2500 (-1000 to +1000 for Yellow)
Right Margin	-2500 to +2500 (-1000 to +1000 for Yellow)
Linearity	Linearity has a separate Quick Test sheet and adjustment instructions.

- 5 Touch (-) to decrease the value or (+) to increase the value. After the value appears, touch to save the value or **Back** to cancel.
- 6 Reprint the Quick Test to evaluate the changes. Continue until each adjustment is correct.
- 7 Repeat steps 4 through 6 as needed.
- 8 Continue until all three colors are aligned. A separate Quick Test prints for each color.
- 9 Touch **Back** to exit the Alignment Menu

Scanner calibration

Scanner calibration

This diagnostic test is used to calibrate both the Black and white values for the ADF and the flatbed. The following values can be adjusted using this menu item:

- Flatbed Black – Values are -10 to 10. The default value is 0.
- ADF Front Black – Values are -10 to 10. The default value is 0.
- ADF Back Black – Values are -10 to 10. The default value is 0.
- Flatbed White – Values are -10 to 10. The default value is 0.
- ADF Front White – Values are -10 to 10. The default value is 0.
- ADF Back White – Values are -10 to 10. The default value is 0.

These should only be used to manually adjust a replacement scanner. To adjust a calibration value, perform the following steps:

- 1 Navigate to **Diagnostics>Scanner Calibration**, and touch Scanner Calibration.
- 2 Select scanner calibration values.
- 3 Select the value to be adjusted by touching it.
- 4 Increment up from 0 to darken a value. Decrement the value to lighten it.
- 5 To view the result for an ADF front adjustment, place a test page image side up and touch **Copy Quick Test**. Compare the results to the original. Adjust as needed.
- 6 To view the result for an ADF back adjustment, place a test page image side down and touch **Copy Quick Test**. Compare the results to the original. Adjust as needed.
- 7 To view the result for a flatbed adjustment, remove any paper from the ADF, place a test page on the flatbed and touch **Copy Quick Test**. Compare the results to the original. Adjust as needed.

Reset flatbed, ADF front, and ADF back calibration values

These settings revert the selected scan source IQT black and white values back to the Nominal Black and Nominal White settings.

This test should not be performed unless it is on a replacement scanner.

To reset a scanner calibration value, do the following:

- 1 Navigate to **Diagnostics>Scanner Calibration**, and touch Scanner Calibration.
- 2 Select the value to reset (Flatbed, ADF Front, ADF Rear) by touching the selection.
- 3 A screen warning displays.
- 4 Touch **Yes** to accept. A message indicating the value is being reset displays.

MISC TESTS

Motor Detect

This test initiates an automatic motor detection process that should be performed whenever the controller board is replaced.

To run Motor Detect:

- 1 Remove the imaging unit and the waste toner bottle. See "Imaging unit (IU) removal" on page 262.
- 2 Reinstall the right cover assembly.
- 3 Close the front door.
- 4 Enter Diagnostics menu.

5 Select **MISC TESTS** in the Diag Menu, and press **Select**.

6 Select **Motor Detect**, and press **Select**.

If you press **Select** before closing the front cover, then a message appears: **Close Cover. Press Select. Motor Detection In Progress...** appears.

The motor detection process takes about 10 seconds, and stops automatically.

Detect Complete. Rebooting... appears, and the printer performs a POR (Power On Reset).

If the motor ran, the test was passed. If the motor did not run, the test failed.

PRINT TESTS

The Print Test determines if the printer can print on media from any of the paper input sources. Each of the installed sources is available within the Print Tests menu.

The content of the test page varies depending on the media installed in the selected input source.

- If a source is selected that contains paper, then a page similar to the Quick Test Page is printed and does not contain the Print Registration diamonds.
- If a source is selected which contains envelopes, then an Envelope Print Test pattern is printed. This pattern contains only text, which consists of continuous prints of each character in the selected symbol set.
- If **Continuous** is selected, then the same page prints continuously from the selected source until you press **Stop (X)**. If **Continuous** is selected from a source which contains envelopes, then the envelope print test pattern is printed on the first envelope, and the rest are blank.

The Print Test page always prints single-sided, regardless of the Duplex setting or the presence of the Duplex option.

To run the Print Test:

- 1** From the Diagnostics menu, touch **PRINT TESTS**.
- 2** Select the paper source.
- 3** Select either **Single** or **Continuous**.
- 4** If **Single** is selected, no buttons are active while the Print Test Page is printing. If **Continuous** is selected, **Stop (X)** can be pressed to cancel the test.
- 5** At the end of the test, the printer returns to the **PRINT TESTS** menu.

Print Quality Pages

The print quality test consists of five pages. Pages one and two contain a mixture of graphics and text. The remainder of the pages only contain graphics.

This test may be printed from either Configuration menu or the Diagnostics menu. To run the print quality pages from the Diagnostics menu, touch **PRINT TESTS > Print Quality Pages**. This test cannot be canceled or terminated after the test has begun. After the test pages print, the printer returns to the **PRINT TESTS** menu.

Print quality test pages

The print quality test consists of five pages. Pages one and two contain a mixture of graphics and text. The remainder of the pages contain only graphics. The test prints on the media in tray 1.

Note: This test may be printed from either the Configuration Menu or the Diagnostics Menu.

To run the print quality pages from the Diagnostics Menu:

- 1 Select **PRINT TESTS**, and press **Select**

.

- 2 Select **Prt Qual Pgs**, and press **Select**

.

The message **Printing Quality Test Pages** is displayed.

Note: Once the test is started, it cannot be canceled.

When the test pages print, the printer returns to the original screen.

HARDWARE TESTS

- “Panel Test” on page 168
- “Button Test” on page 168
- “DRAM Test” on page 169

If the hardware test fails, replace the failing part.

Panel Test

This test verifies the operator panel display function.

To run the Panel Test:

- 1 From the Diagnostics menu, navigate to **HARDWARE TESTS >LCD Test**.
The Panel test continually executes.
- 2 Press **Stop (X)** to cancel the test.

Button Test

This test verifies the operator panel button function.

To run the Button Test:

- 1 From the Diagnostics menu, navigate to:
HARDWARE TESTS >Button Test
- 2 With no buttons pressed, a pattern matching the operator panel buttons is displayed. Press each operator panel button one at a time, and an “X” displays in the box that represents the button.
- 3 Press **Stop (X)** or touch **Back** to exit the test.

DRAM Test

This test checks the validity of DRAM, both standard and optional. The test repeatedly writes patterns of data to DRAM to verify that each bit in memory can be set and read correctly.

To run the DRAM Test:

From the Diagnostics menu, navigate to **HARDWARE TESTS > DRAM Test**.

DRAM Test Testing... appears on the screen, followed by **Resetting the Printer**.

After the printer resets, the results of the test appear: **DRAM Test (x)MB P:##### F:#####**.

- (x) represents the size of the installed DRAM.
- P:##### represents the number of times the memory test has passed and finished successfully, with the maximum pass count being 999,999.
- F:##### represents the number of times the memory test has failed and finished with errors, with the maximum fail count being 999,999.

After the maximum pass count or fail count is reached, or when all the DRAM has been tested, the test stops and the final results appear.

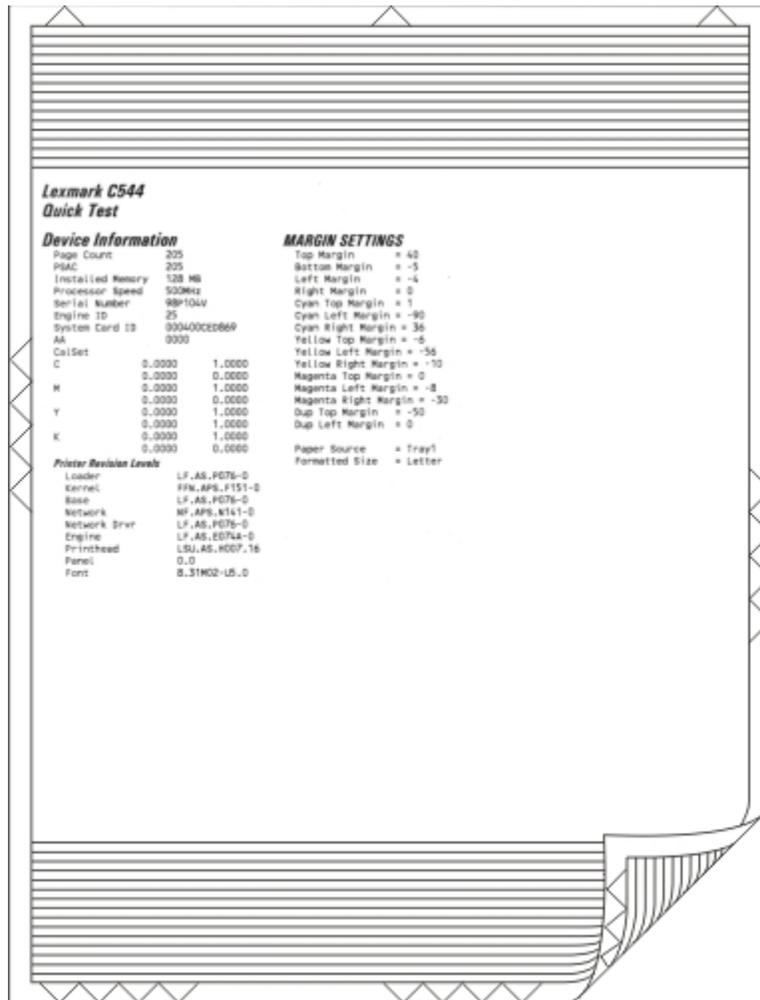
DUPLEX TESTS

- “Duplex Quick Test” on page 169
- “Duplex Top Margin” on page 171
- “Duplex Left Margin” on page 171

Duplex Quick Test

The duplex quick test determines if the Duplex Option Top Margin is set correctly. This test prints a duplexed version of the Quick Test Page that can be used to adjust the Top Margin for the back of the duplexed page. You can run one duplexed page (**Single**) or continue printing duplexed pages (**Continuous**) until **Stop (X)** is pressed.

You must use either Letter or A4 paper.



To run the duplex quick test:

1 From the Diagnostics menu, touch **DUPLEX TESTS > Duplex Quick Test**.

2 Select **Single** or **Continuous**. The single test cannot be canceled.

The printer attempts to print the Quick Test Page from the default paper source. If the default paper source supports only envelopes, then the page is printed from Tray 1.

3 Check the Quick Test Page for the correct offset between the placement of the first scan line on the front and back side of a duplexed sheet.

4 If adjustment is necessary, the Top Margin in the Registration menu must be adjusted first. The Duplex Top Margin Offset may be adjusted next. A positive offset moves the text down the page and widens the top margin, while a negative offset moves the text up the page and narrows the top margin.

5 Press **Stop (X)** to cancel the test.

Duplex Top Margin

This setting controls the offset between the first scan line on the front of the duplex page and the first scan line on the back of the page. Therefore, be sure to set the top margin in REGISTRATION before setting the duplex top margin. See “REGISTRATION” on page 161.

To set the Duplex Top Margin

- 1 Select **DUPLEX TESTS** from Diag Menu, and press **Select**
.
- 2 Select **Quick Test**, and press **Select**
.
- 3 Select **Single**, and press **Select** .
- 4 Hold the page to the light to see whether the top margin of the back aligns with the top margin of the front.
- 5 Select **Top Margin** from DUPLEX TESTS.
- 6 Use **Left** or **Right** to select the margin setting you need to change.
 - Each increment shifts the duplex top margin by 1/100 of an inch.
 - The Top Margin (duplex) range is -50 to +50, and the default value is 0.
 - An increase in the value moves the backside top margin down and widens the top margin. A decrease moves the top margin upward and narrows the top margin.
- 7 Press **Select** to save the new value.
- 8 Print the Quick Test (duplex) again (steps 1–4) to verify the adjustment. Repeat if necessary.

Duplex Left Margin

This setting shifts the image on the back of the duplex sheet to the left or right to correctly position it on the page. Therefore, be sure to set the top margin in REGISTRATION before setting the duplex top margin. See “REGISTRATION” on page 161.

To set the Duplex Left Margin

- 1 Select **DUPLEX TESTS** from Diag Menu, and press **Select**
.
- 2 Select **Quick Test**, and press **Select**
.
- 3 Select **Single**, and press **Select** .
- 4 Hold the page to the light to see whether the top margin of the back aligns with the top margin of the front.
- 5 Select **Left Margin** from DUPLEX TESTS.
- 6 Use **Left** or **Right** to select the margin setting you need to change.
 - Each increment shifts the duplex left margin by 4 pixels at 500 dpi (0.0067 inches or 0.1693 mm).
 - The Left Margin (duplex) range is -25 to +25, and the default value is 0.
 - An increase in the value moves the backside left margin to the right, and widens the left margin. A decrease moves the backside left margin to the left, and narrows the left margin.

- 7 Press **Select** to save the new value.
- 8 Print the Quick Test (duplex) again (steps 1–4) to verify the adjustment. Repeat if necessary.

INPUT TRAY TESTS

- “Feed Tests” on page 172
- “Sensor Test” on page 172

Feed Tests

Any installed input tray can be tested. The pages fed through the printer are blank.

To run the Feed Test:

- 1 Select **INPUT TRAY TESTS** from Diag Menu, and press **Select**.
- 2 Select **Feed Tests**, and press **Select**.
- 3 Select the tray to be tested. Choices are installed trays, including **Tray 1**, **Tray 2**, **MP Feeder**.
- 4 Select **Single** or **Continuous**, and press **Select**.
 - Single—a single sheet of blank paper is fed, and the test stops.
 - Continuous—sheets are fed continuously, until **Stop** is pressed.

Sensor Test

Note: This test is not available on all models.

This test is used to verify that the sensors are working correctly for an individual input tray.

- 1 Select **INPUT TRAY TESTS** from Diag Menu, and press **Select**.
- 2 Select **Sensor Test**, and press **Select**.
- 3 Select the tray where you want to test the sensors. .
- 4 Depending on the tray selected, you may have **Empty Sensor**, **Low Sensor**, or **Passthru Sensor**.

Sensors will be displayed with either **Open** or **Closed**. Toggle the sensor you want to test and note the change of state of that sensor.

Input tray sensors

Input Tray	Empty Sensor	Low Sensor	Passthru Sensor
Tray 1	Closed	Closed	Closed
Tray 2 (650-sheet duo tray)	Open	Open	Open
Tray 3 (550-sheet tray, C546tdn)	Open	Open	Open
MP Feeder	Closed	Closed	Closed

- 5 To Exit the test, press **Back** or **Stop**.

BASE SENSOR TEST

These tests allow you to verify the correct functioning of the front door, input, and output sensors.



CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD: Do not use your hand to toggle these switches. Use a nonconducting item.

To run the Base Sensor Test.

- 1 Select **Base Sensor Test** from Diag Menu, and press **Select**
- 2 Select the sensor you want to test, and press **Select**

The following tests are available:

Available base sensor tests

Sensor	Value	How to test
Front Door	Opened/Closed	Open and close the front door. The sensor should change state.
Input - S1	Media clear... or Media present...	Activate the sensor by removing and reinserting the paper tray. The sensor should change state.
Input - S2	Media clear... or Media present...	Remove the media tray. Activate the input (S2) sensor flag. The sensor should change state.
Fuser exit sensr	Media clear... or Media present...	Open the front cover. Activate the fuser exit flag. The sensor should change state.
Standard Bin	Bin full	Lift up on the bin-full/narrow media flag, and then release. The sensor should change state.
C-TMC	Not Closed/Closed	Remove the cyan toner cartridge while noticing the operator panel for a change in state. If none is noticed, pass a flat reflective object or bright light in front of the TMC sensor. The sensor should momentarily change state.
M-TMC	Not Closed/Closed	Remove the magenta toner cartridge while noticing the operator panel for a change in state. If none is noticed, pass a flat reflective object or bright light in front of the TMC sensor. The sensor should momentarily change state.
Y-TMC	Not Closed/Closed	Remove the yellow toner cartridge while noticing the operator panel for a change in state. If none is noticed, pass a flat reflective object or bright light in front of the TMC sensor. The sensor should momentarily change state.
K-TMC	Not Closed/Closed	Remove the black toner cartridge while noticing the operator panel for a change in state. If none is noticed, pass a flat reflective object or bright light in front of the TMC sensor. The sensor should momentarily change state.

- 3 To exit the test, press **Back** or **Stop**.

DEVICE TESTS

Flash test

This menu item appears only if the flash card is installed. Data is written to the flash card and read back to check the accuracy.

Warning—Potential Damage: This test deletes all data stored on the flash device. After the test is over, reformat the flash using **Format Flash** in the customer Utilities Menu.

To run the Flash Test:

- 1 Select **DEVICE TESTS** from Diag Menu, and press **Select**.
- 2 Select **Flash Test**, and press **Select**.
Contents will be lost. Continue? appears.
- 3 o continue, select **Yes**, and press **Select** (). To end the test, select **No**, and press **Select**.

If you continue, **Flash Test Testing...** appears.

- If the test is successful, then **Flash Test Test Passed** appears. Use Format Flash in the Utilities Menu to reformat the flash card
- If the test is unsuccessful, then **Flash Test Test Failed** appears. Replace the flash card.

- 4 Press **Back** to remove the message and return to the Device Tests menu.

PRINTER SETUP

- “Defaults” on page 174
- “PAGE COUNTS” on page 175
- “Serial Number” on page 175
- “Engine Setting 1 through 4” on page 175
- “Model Name” on page 175
- “Configuration ID” on page 175
- “Transfer Module Barcode” on page 176
- “Reset Fuser Count” on page 176

Defaults

This setting is used by the printer to determine whether US or non-US factory default values should be used. The following printer settings have different US and non-US values:

Printer default values	US value	Non-US value
Paper Sizes setting in the General Settings menu	U.S.	Metric
Default Paper Size (paper feeding sources which do not have hardware size sensing capabilities)	Letter	A4
Default Envelope Size (envelope feeding sources which do not have hardware size sensing capability)	10 Envelope	DL Envelope
Fax media size	Letter	A4

Printer default values	US value	Non-US value
PCL Symbol Set	PC-8	PC-850
PPDS Code Page	437	850
Universal Units of Measure	Inches	Millimeters

Warning—Potential Damage: Modification of the printer setting Defaults causes the NVRAM space to be restored to the printer's factory settings.

PAGE COUNTS

This menu lets you view the total page counts of the printer or the page counts broken down into color and mono pages printed. Unlike in previous printers, none of these values can be changed.

Touch **Back** to return to the Diagnostics menu.

Serial Number

This menu lets you view the total page counts of the printer or the page counts broken down into color and mono pages printed. Unlike in previous printers, none of these values can be changed.

To view the serial number:

- 1 Select **Printer Setup** from Diag Menu, and press **Select** .
- 2 Select **Serial number**, and press **Select**.
The Serial Number is displayed.
- 3 Press **Back** to return to Printer Setup.

Engine Setting 1 through 4

Warning—Potential Damage: Do not change these settings unless requested to do so by your next level of support.

Model Name

The model name can only be viewed and cannot be changed.

Configuration ID

The two configuration IDs are used to communicate information about certain areas of the printer that cannot be determined using hardware sensors. The configuration IDs are originally set at the factory when the printer is manufactured. However, the servicer may need to reset Configuration ID 1 or Configuration ID 2 whenever the system board is replaced. The IDs consist of eight digits. The first seven digits in each ID are hexadecimal numbers, while the last digit is a checksum of the preceding seven digits. Each ID can contain a combination of the digits 0 through 9, and A through F.

Note: When the printer detects a Configuration ID that is not defined or invalid, the following occurs:

- The default standard model Configuration ID is used instead.
- Configuration ID is the only function available in the Diagnostics Menu.
- Unless the menu is in the Diagnostics Menu, Check Config ID displays.

To set the configuration ID:

1 Select **Printer Setup** from Diag Menu, and press **Select** .

2 Select **Configuration ID**, and press **Select** .

The current value for Configuration ID 1 is displayed.

3 Enter the Configuration ID 1.

- Change the left character or digit first.
- To change the value of a character or digit, press **Left** to decrease or **Right** to increase the underlined value, and press **Select** to move to the next character or digit.
- To move to the next character or digit without changing the current value, press **Select**.
- When you press **Select** on the last digit, the value will be submitted.

If **Invalid ID** appears, then the entry is discarded, and the previous Configuration ID 1 is displayed on the screen.

If the process is successful, then **Submitting Selection** appears on the display, followed by the current value for Configuration ID 2.

4 Repeat the steps for entering the Configuration ID 2, and press **Select**.

If the Configuration ID 2 is validated, **Submitting Selection** appears, and a check mark appears next to **Printer Setup**.

5 Restart the printer. A POR is not automatically performed.

Transfer Module Barcode

The 16-digit numeric value matches the transfer module installed in the printer. If you replace the transfer module, reenter this value. **Stop** exits the menu.

To enter the transfer module barcode:

1 Select **Printer Setup** from Diag Menu, and press **Select** .

2 Select **ITU Barcode**, and press **Select**.

3 To enter the 16-digit numeric value:

- Use **Left** to decrease the left most digit value or **Right** to increase the value.
- Press **Select** to advance to the next digit.
- If a digit is already correct, then press **Select** to accept the number and to continue.
- When the last number is entered and you press **Select**, **Submitting changes...** should appear.
- If the entered number is incorrect, then **Check Sum Does Not Match** displays. Check and reenter the number.

Reset Fuser Count

Resets the fuser count value to zero. The Event Log records each time that a user executes the Reset Fuser Count operation. See "EVENT LOG" on page 179 for more information. This setting appears only if the Maintenance Warning and Intervention function is enabled in the printer Configuration ID.

To reset the fuser count:

- 1 Select **Printer Setup** from Diag Menu, and press **Select**.
- 2 Select **Reset Fuser Cnt**, and press **Select**.
- 3 Select **Reset**, and press **Select**.
Reset Resetting... appears.
- 4 To cancel a reset, press **Back**.

EP SETUP

- “EP Defaults” on page 177
- “Fuser temperature” on page 177
- “DC Charge Adjust, Bias Adjust, Transfer Adjust” on page 177

EP Defaults

This setting is used to restore each printer setting listed in EP Setup to its factory default value. Sometimes this is used to help correct print quality problems.

To restore EP Defaults:

- 1 Select **EP Setup** from Diag Menu, and press **Select**.
- 2 Select **EP Defaults**, and press **Select**.
- 3 Select **Restore** to reset the values to the factory settings, and select **Do Not Restore..**
- 4 To cancel a reset, press **Back**.

Fuser temperature

This adjustment can be used to help solve some customer problems with paper curl on low-grade papers and problems with letterheads on some types of media.

To adjust the fuser temperature:

- 1 Select **EP Setup** from Diag Menu, and press **Select**.
- 2 Select **Fuser Temp**, and press **Select**.
- 3 Select Normal, High, or Low. The default is Normal.
- 4 To return to the menus, press **Back**.

DC Charge Adjust, Bias Adjust, Transfer Adjust

Each of these three settings enables you to adjust the high voltage levels controlling the electrophotographic process. You will use these settings to compensate for unusual operating circumstances such as high humidity. The printer uses the value of these settings together with other settings to calculate printing speed and media selection.

TPS Setup: Right or Left

The value of the toner density sensor (also called toner patch sensor or TPS) is set at manufacturing. If a sensor is replaced, enter the 32-digit hexadecimal toner density value (TPS) value from the bar code next to the sensor.

To enter the value:

- 1 Select **TPS Setup** from Diag Menu, and press **Select** .
- 2 Select **Right** or **Left**, and press **Select**.
TPS Right 1-16 or **TPS Left 1-16** appears above a blinking 0 in the left position.
- 3 To enter a character or digit:
 - a Press **Left** to decrease or **Right** to increase the blinking value.
 - b Pause for several seconds without pressing any buttons. The blinking value becomes solid.
 If the value is incorrect, then use **Back** to go back and reenter the number.
 - c Continue until the last value is reached.
 - d When the last of the 16 values is entered and becomes solid, **TPS Right 17-32** or **TPS Left 17-32** appears.
 - e Continue entering and pausing
- 4 After the 32nd number is entered and becomes solid, the number is automatically entered.
 - If the number is incorrect, then **Checksum does not match** appears, and the original screen appears to reenter the value.
 If the number is correct, then **Saving changes to NVRAM** appears.

TPS Setup: Cal Ref Adj

The Cal Ref Adj is used with Reset Color Cal, which resets to a default value, Cal Ref Adj allows you to fine tune the TPS function.

To set the Cal Ref Adj:

- 1 Select **TPS Setup** from Diag Menu, and press **Select** .
- 2 Select **Cal Ref Adj**, and press **Select**.
- 3 Select **CMY** or **Black**, and press **Select**.
- 4 Press **Left** to decrease or **Right** to increase the value.
 The values can be -8 to +8, and the default value is 0.
- 5 To cancel and return to the menus, press **Back**

TPS Setup: Reset Color Cal

This setting allows the device to adjust the alignment of the color planes using pre-programmed default values.

To reset the programmed value:

- 1 Select **TPS Setup** from Diag Menu, and press **Select**.
- 2 Select **Reset Color Cal**, and press **Select**.

Resetting appears. When the reset is complete, the screen is automatically returned to TPS Setup.

Reports: Menu Settings Page

To print the Menu Settings Page:

- 1 Select **Reports** from Diag Menu, and press **Select**.
- 2 Select **Menu Settings Page**, and press **Select**.

EVENT LOG

- “Display Log” on page 179
- “Print Log” on page 179
- “Clear Log” on page 180

Display Log

The event log provides a history of printer errors. It contains the most recent errors that have occurred on the printer. The most recent error displays in position 1. If an error occurs after the log is full, the oldest error is discarded. Identical errors in consecutive positions in the log are entered, so there may be repetitions. All 2xx and 9xx error messages are stored in the Event Log.

To view the event log:

- 1 Select **Event Log** from Diag Menu, and press **Select**.
- 2 Select **Display Log**, and press **Select**.

Error codes display on the screen. Press **Left** or **Right** to view additional error codes. Press **Right** to view additional details.

- 3 Press **Back** to return to the Event Log menu.

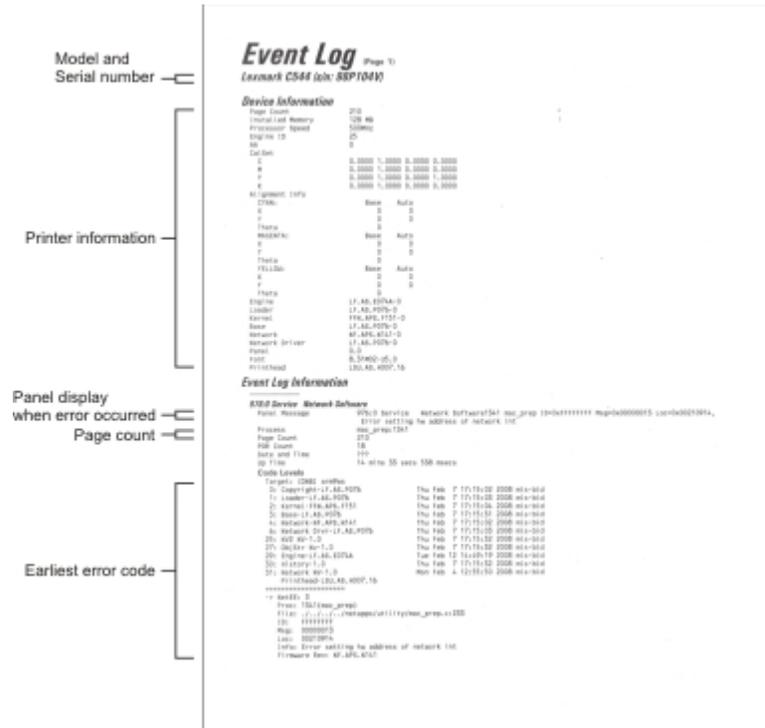
Print Log

Additional diagnostic information is available when you print the event log from the Diagnostics Menu rather than the Configuration Menu.

The Event Log printed from Diag Menu includes:

- Detailed printer information, including code versions
- Time and date stamps
- Page counts for most errors

- Additional debug information in some cases



The printed event log can be faxed to your next level of support for verification or diagnosis.

To print the event log:

- 1 Select **Event Log** from Diag Menu, and press **Select** .
- 2 Select **Print Log**, and press **Select**.
- 3 Press **Back** to return to Event Log.

Clear Log

Use Clear Log to remove the current information in the Event Log. This affects both the viewed log and the printed log information.

To clear the even log:

- 1 Select **Event Log** from Diag Menu, and press **Select** .
- 2 Select **Clear Log**, and press **Select**.
- 3 Select **YES** to clear the Event Log or **NO** to exit the Clear Log menu. If **YES** is selected, the **Deleting EVENT LOG** displays on the screen.
- 4 Press **Back** to return to Event Log.

Scanner tests

- “ASIC test” on page 181
- “Motor tests” on page 181
- “Feed test” on page 182

- “Sensor tests” on page 182
- “Scanner calibration reset” on page 185
- “ADF magnification” on page 185

ASIC test

This setting initiates a scan of the scanner ASIC’s memory.

To perform this test, do the following:

- 1 Navigate to **Scanner Tests > ACIS Tests**.
- 2 Select **ACIS Tests**.
- 3 The test executes. While this test executes, the screen displays **ASIC Test Running....** If the scanner ASIC passed the test, then the panel posts **ASIC Test Passed. Rebooting....** If the scanner ASIC failed the test, then the panel posts **ASIC Test Failed. Rebooting....**

Motor tests

The motor tests allow you to test the functionality of the motors in the ADF unit.

ADF pick

When **Motor On** is selected, the device runs the pick motor continuously for five seconds and then automatically stops the motor.

To perform this test, do the following:

- 1 Navigate to **Scanner Tests > Motor Tests**.
- 2 Select **ADF pick**.
- 3 The test will run if it is working properly.

Flatbed motor scanner

Motor On is selected, the device moves the flatbed scanner along the entire flatbed scanner path (that is, to the far wall and back to the Home position) and then automatically stops at the Home position.

To perform this test, do the following:

- 1 Navigate to **Scanner Tests > Motor Tests**.
- 2 Select **Flatbed Scanner Motor**.
- 3 The test will run.

ADF feed motor forward

When **Motor On** is selected, the device runs the motor forward continuously until **Motor Off** is selected.

To perform this test, do the following:

- 1 Navigate to **Scanner Tests > Motor Tests**.
- 2 Select **ADF Feed Motor Forward**.
- 3 The test will run.

ADF feed motor backward

When **Motor On** is selected, the device runs the motor forward continuously until **Motor Off** is selected.

To perform this test, do the following:

- 1 Navigate to **Scanner Tests > Motor Tests**.
- 2 Select **ADF Feed Motor Backward**.
- 3 The test will run.

Feed test

This test enables a servicer to execute a continuous feed test from either the ADF or the flatbed. The default is to perform the ADF test if paper is loaded into the ADF. To perform the Feed Test, do the following:

- 1 Navigate to **Diagnostic Menu>Scanner Tests > Feed Test**.
- 2 Press **Select a paper size**.
- 3 Select your paper size: A4 or Legal.
- 4 Select the check button on the screen. The screen displays **Feed Test passed** or **Feed Test failed**.
- 5 Press **X** on the keypad to exit the test.

Sensor tests

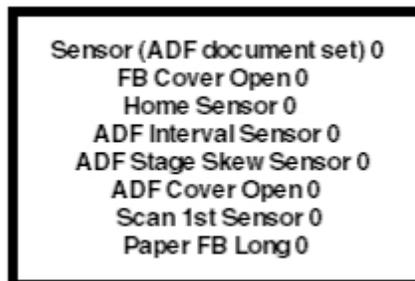
Sensor tests are available to test the sensors on the flatbed and ADF units.

The following sensors can be tested:

- ADF document set – Paper Present
- FB cover open (flatbed top cover)
- Home sensor (carriage home position)
- ADF interval sensor
- ADF stage skew (paper skew) - available on duplex scanners only
- ADF cover open (ADF top cover)
- Scan 1st sensor (paper feed sensor)
- Paper FB long

To test a flatbed or ADF sensor, perform the following steps:

- 1 Navigate to **Scanner Tests>Sensor Tests> <sensor to test>**. The following is displayed:



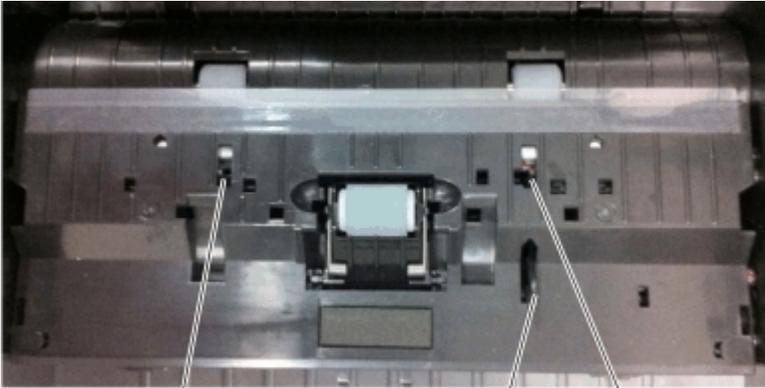
- 2 Select the sensor to be tested.
- 3 Actuate the sensor you selected.
- 4 The screen will toggle between 0 and 1 if the sensor is properly functioning.
- 5 Select **Exit** to leave the test

To test the Paper FB long test, place a sheet of legal paper on the flatbed and close the cover. If the sensor is working properly, the indicator will change from 0 to 1

To test the Home sensor, perform the following steps:

- 1 Exit the sensor test.
- 2 Open the flatbed cover.
- 3 use the carriage motor test to move the carriage out of home position.
- 4 Close the flatbed cover.
- 5 Enter the sensor test. If the home sensor is working properly, then a 1 will display instead of a 0.

Actuator locations

A	Stage skew sensor (paper skew)	
B	Paper present	
C	Interval sensor	

<p>D</p>	<p>ADF cover open</p>	 <p>D</p>
<p>E</p>	<p>Flatbed cover open</p>	 <p>E</p>
<p>F</p>	<p>Paperfeed sensor</p>	 <p>F</p>

Scanner calibration reset

This test is run to reset the scanner calibration. This test should only be run after a flatbed or ADF unit has been replaced.

To perform this operation, do the following:

- 1 Navigate to **Scanner Tests**.
- 2 Select **Scanner Calibration Reset**. **This procedure should only be run after the scanner or ADF has been replaced** displays.
- 3 Ensure that the scanner glass and white flatbed cushion on the ADF are clean.
- 4 Select **Continue**. If the test is successful, then **Operation completed successfully** displays for three seconds, and then returns to the main Scanner Calibration Reset menu. If an error occurs during the test, then **Test Failed, Please Retry** displays, and a Continue button appears that takes you back to the main Scanner Calibration Rest Menu screen.
- 5 Select **Exit** to leave the test

After successfully executing this test, verify the results.

- 1 Load the ADF with a document containing both light and dark content.
- 2 Perform a duplex copy. If the back side of the resulting copy contains vertical streaks, then the SE should clean the scanner glass and backing sheet, execute the back side scan uniformity procedure, and then perform another copy. If streaks still appear on the resulting copy, then the SE can repeat the cleaning and verification procedure a second time or can replace the ADF entirely.
- 3

ADF magnification

This test allows the service technician to adjust the ADF magnification level. To adjust the ADF magnification level, perform the following steps:

- 1 Navigate to **Diagnostic menu>Scanner Tests>ADF magnification**.
- 2 Use the plus or minus buttons to scroll through the magnification values. The values are 1.000, 1.005, 1.007, .980, .985, .990 and .995.
- 3 Press the check button to accept the value. Press the **X** on the screen to exit the test.

Exit Diagnostics

Press **Select** to exit Diag Menu. The printer performs a power-on reset and returns to normal mode.

Configuration menu

- “Entering configuration mode” on page 186
- “Available tests” on page 186
- “Action for prompts” on page 187
- “ADF Edge Erase” on page 187
- “Size sensing” on page 188

- “Print Quality Pages” on page 188
- “Color Trapping” on page 188
- “Reports” on page 189
- “Panel Menus” on page 189
- “PPDS Emulation” on page 189
- “Download emuls” on page 189
- “Safe Mode” on page 189
- “Demo Mode” on page 190
- “Factory Defaults” on page 190
- “Energy Conserve” on page 191
- “Fax low power support” on page 191
- “Min copy memory” on page 191
- “Num pad job assist” on page 191
- “Format fax storage” on page 191
- “Flatbed edge erase” on page 192
- “Scanner manual registration” on page 192
- “Disable scanner” on page 193
- “Auto Color Adjustment” on page 193
- “Font Sharpening” on page 194
- “Exit Config” on page 194

Entering configuration mode

The Configuration Menu group contains a set of menus, settings, and operations which are infrequently required by a user. Generally, the options made available in this menu group are used to configure a printer for operation.

- 1 Turn off the printer.
- 2 Press and hold the **2** and **6** buttons.
- 3 Turn on the printer.
- 4 Release the buttons after 10 seconds.

Available tests

The tests display on the operator panel in the order shown for all models.

Configuration menu

Print Quality Pages	See “Print Quality Pages” on page 188.
Color Trapping	See “Color Trapping” on page 188.
Reports	
Menu Settings Page	See “Reports” on page 189
Event Log	

Panel Menu	See “Panel Menu” on page 189.
PPDS Emulation	See “PPDS Emulation” on page 189.
Demo Mode	See “Demo Mode” on page 190.
Factory Defaults	See “Factory Defaults” on page 190.
Energy Conserve	See “Energy Conserve” on page 191.
Auto Color Adj	See “Auto Color Adjustment” on page 193.
Font Sharpening	See “Font Sharpening” on page 194.
Exit Config Menu	This selection exits Configuration Menu, and Resetting the Printer displays. The printer performs a POR and returns to normal mode.

Action for prompts

This setting enables users to determine which input source would receive paper-related or envelope-related change prompts when they occur. Regardless of the target source, the device always requires some type of user assistance to resolve the change prompt (examples: pushing a button to ignore the prompt and changing the source’s installed media). However, this setting gives a user the option of having the device resolve change prompt situations without requiring any user assistance.

To change this setting:

- 1 From the Configuration Menu, navigate to **Action for prompts**.
- 2 Touch **Left** or **Right** to change the setting.
- 3 Touch **Submit** to save the setting, or touch **Back** to return to the Configuration Menu without saving any changes.

When set to **Prompt user**, the device behaves like the past implementation. When a change prompt occurs, the device stops printing, posts the change prompt to the target source, and waits for the user to select an action before continuing.

When set to **Continue**, the device automatically assumes that the user selects **Continue** every time a change prompt is encountered. Likewise, when the device is set to **Use Current**, all change prompts will perform as if **Use Current** was selected by the user.

ADF Edge Erase

The value of this setting determines the size in millimeters of the “no-print” zone around an ADF scan job.

To change this setting:

- 1 From the Configuration Menu, navigate to **ADF Edge Erase**.
- 2 Touch **Left** or **Right** to change the setting.
- 3 Touch **Submit** to save the setting, or touch **Back** to return to the Configuration Menu without saving any changes.

Size sensing

B5/Executive

Due to engine limitations, Trays 1 through 4 cannot simultaneously sense executive and JIS-B5-size paper. The value of this setting determines which of the two paper sizes these trays will sense automatically. This setting will apply to all automatic trays, but not to the MP Feeder. The MP Feeder can support these paper sizes regardless of the value of this setting.

Tray [x] sensing

By turning the tray [x] sensing setting to **Auto**, every input option equipped with size sensing hardware automatically registers what size of paper it contains. When this setting is turned Off, the printer ignores the size detected by the hardware and treats the input source as a non-sensing source. The media size can be set by the operator panel or the data stream.

To change this setting:

- 1 From the Configuration menu, navigate to **SIZE SENSING**. The screen displays each size sensing equipped input source and its current Size Sensing setting.
- 2 Select the appropriate input source.
- 3 Touch **Left** or **Right** to change the setting.
- 4 Touch **Submit** to save the setting, or touch **Back** to return to the Configuration menu without saving any changes.

Print Quality Pages

The Print Quality Pages can be printed from both the Configuration Menu and the Diagnostics Menu. The Configuration Menu is limited in information compared to the pages printed from the Diagnostics Menu.

To help isolate print quality problems, print the Print Quality Test Pages. The pages are formatted. The **Printing Quality Test Pages** message appears, and then the pages print. The message remains on the operator panel until all the pages print.

Press **Select** to print the pages. The Print Quality Test Pages contain several pages. The first page, which is printed in English text only, contains a mixture of text and graphics. The information includes values of the Quality Menu settings in Settings and printer and toner cartridge configuration information. The remaining pages contain only graphics.

Color Trapping

Color Trapping uses an algorithm to compensate for mechanical incorrect registration in the printer. When small black text or fine black lines are being printed, the printer checks to see if they are being printed on top of a colored background. If so, then rather than remove the color from beneath the black content, the printer leaves the color around the edge of the test or line. The hole in the colored region is reduced in size, which prevents the characteristic white gap that is caused by incorrect registration.

Values include Off and number 1-5 (the default is 2). Values 1 through 5 indicate the amount of color remaining beneath the black content. Each setting increments by 1/600 of an inch. The more inaccurate the registration setting, the higher the setting needs to be adjusted. Selecting **Off** disables color trapping.

Reports

The Reports setting contains the Menu Settings Page and Event Log.

Menu Settings Page

Print the menu settings pages to list the customer settings and to verify printer options are installed correctly. It is helpful to print the customer settings before you restore the factory defaults or make major changes.

To print the menu settings:

- 1 Select **Reports** from the Config Menu, and press **Select**.
- 2 Select **Menu Settings Page**, and press **Select**.

Event Log

The Event Log lets the system support person print a limited set of the information contained in the Diagnostic Menu version of the printed Event Log. The limited Configuration log and the full Diagnostics log printed versions show the same operator panel messages when the print and follow the same layout guidelines.

To print the Event Log:

- 1 Select **Reports** from the Config Menu, and press **Select**.
- 2 Select **Print Log**, and press **Select** to begin printing the log.

Panel Menus

The Panel Menus lets the system support person enable or disable the operator panel menus. Selecting **On** (the default) allows users to change values for the printer. **Off** disables the users' access to menus. If a user presses **Menu**, then they receive a message that the panel menus are locked. When set to **Off**, this setting restricts all menu access, even to menus or items set for PIN access. However, when set to **On**, all PIN restrictions are restored.

This menu item appears only when the PJI PASSWORD Environment variable is set to 0.

PPDS Emulation

PPDS Emulation activates or deactivates (default) the Personal Printer Data Stream (PPDS) emulation language. This menu item appears only if the PPDS interpreter is available.

Download emuls

This appears only if at least one download emulator (DLE) is installed. The default setting is Disable. All download emulators (DLEs) are re-enabled automatically after two PORs.

Safe Mode

The settings for this menu item are On and Off (default). When On, the printer runs in a special mode in which it attempts to continue offering as much functionality as possible despite known issues.

For example, when On, if the duplex motor is nonfunctional, then the printer prints all jobs in simplex.

To change the setting:

- 1 From the Configuration menu, navigate to **Safe Mode**.
- 2 Select **On** or **Off** to change the setting.
- 3 Select **Submit**.
- 4 POR the printer.

Demo Mode

The Demo Mode lets marketing personnel or merchandisers demonstrate the printer to potential customers by printing the demo page.

Selections include Deactivate (default) and Activate. Select **Deactivate** to turn Demo Mode off; or select **Activate** to turn Demo Mode on.

Factory Defaults

Warning—Potential Damage: This operation cannot be undone.

This setting enables a user to restore all of the device settings to either the network settings (on network models only) or to the base device settings.

To print current menu settings:

Note: It is recommended that you first print the customer's current settings by printing a copy of the Menu Settings pages. Customer settings are available from the Ready prompt Diagnostics Menu settings are available in the Diagnostics Menu, and Config Menu settings are available in the Config Menu.

- 1 Turn the printer off, or select **Exit Config Menu**.
- 2 At the Ready prompt, select **Menus** and press **Select**.
- 3 Select **Reports**, and press **Select**.
- 4 Select **Menu Settings Page**, and press **Select**.
- 5 Enter the Diagnostic Menu, select **Reports, Menu Settings Page**, and press **Select**.
- 6 Turn the printer off, or select **Exit Diags**.
- 7 Enter Configuration Menu, select **Reports, Menu Settings Page**, and press **Select**.

To reset factory defaults:

- 1 Select **Reports** from the Config Menu, and press **Select**.
- 2 Select **Factory Defaults**, and press **Select**.
- 3 Select **Restore Base** (for locally attached printers) or **Restore STD NET** (if you have integrated network support).

Submitting Changes... appears on the operator panel, and then the printer PORs (restarts in Ready mode).

Energy Conserve

Energy Conserve affects the values that appear in the Power Saver menu in the customer Setup Menu. This menu item appears only when the printer model does not support Automatic Power Saver or has deactivated Automatic Power Saver. Energy Conserve affects only the values that are displayed in the Power Saver menu.

Select **Off** in Energy Conserve to allow Power Saver in the customer menu to display Disable as an option. If **Disable** is selected in the customer Power Saver, the printer deactivates the Power Saver feature. Select **On** (the default) in Energy Conserve to prevent **Disable** from appearing as an option in the Power Saver setting, and preventing the customer from turning off Power Saver.

Fax low power support

Fax Low Power support allows you to select one of three power settings for the fax. The Auto value relies on the firmware's logic to determine if the device supports the fax portion of the low power architecture. Permit Sleep allows the fax chip to enter low power mode whenever the device determines that it should. Disable Sleep prohibits the fax chip from ever entering low power mode.

To change the fax low power support setting:

- 1 Select **Fax low-power support** in the configuration menu to open the item
- 2 Select one of the three settings: disable, sleep permit or sleep auto
- 3 Select the check sign to accept the setting or press the **X** on the screen to exit the item.

Min copy memory

Values will only be displayed if the amount of installed DRAM is at least twice the amount of the value, that is, at least 200 MB of installed DRAM is required to display the 100 MB selection.

To change this setting:

- 1 Select **Min Copy Memory** from the Configuration Menu. [**setting's current value**] displays.
- 2 Select one of the three settings: disable, sleep permit or sleep auto
- 3 Select the minus to decrease the setting's value or the plus to increase the setting's value.
- 4 Select **Submit** to save the change.

Num pad job assist

This setting determines if a user can configure and initiate a job using the operator panel's hard buttons.

To change this setting:

- 1 Select **Num Pad Job Assist** from the Configuration Menu. [**setting's current value**] displays.
- 2 Select the minus to decrease the setting's value or the plus to increase the setting's value.
- 3 Select **Submit** to save the change.

Format fax storage

This setting enables you to format the non-volatile storage used for storing faxes.

To change this setting:

- 1 Select **Format Fax Storage** from the Configuration Menu.
Note: If an advanced password has been established, then you must enter this password to change the setting. If no advanced password exists, then you can establish one by using the keyboard that appears on the LCD.
- 2 Select **Submit** to save the change.
- 3 Select **Back** to cancel and return to the Configuration Menu. **Formatting Fax Flash DO NOT POWER OFF** appears on the display while the format operation is active.

Flatbed edge erase

This menu item sets the size, in millimeters, of the no print area around a flatbed scan job. Copy jobs will use the setting or two millimeters, whichever is larger.

To adjust the flatbed edge erase setting, perform the following steps:

- 1 Select **FB Edge Erase** from the Configuration Menu. [**setting's current value**] displays.
- 2 Select minus to decrease the setting's value or plus to increase the setting's value.
- 3 Select **Submit** to save the change.
- 4 Select **Back** to cancel and return to the Configuration Menu.

Scanner manual registration

This item is used to manually register the flatbed and ADF on the MFP's scanner unit. Registration should be performed whenever the ADF unit, flatbed unit, or controller card are replaced.

To manually register a Duplex ADF, perform the following steps:

- 1 In the Configuration Menu, scroll to the Scanner Manual Registration menu item.
- 2 Select **Scanner Manual Registration**.
- 3 Select **Print Quick Test Page**.
- 4 To view and adjust the duplex ADF front side registration, place the quick test page face up into the ADF.
- 5 Select **Copy Quick Test**.
- 6 After the quick test page copies, select **ADF Front**.
- 7 Use the plus to increase or the minus to decrease the settings value for horizontal adjust and top margin.
Note: Each button press moves the margin values one pixel in the respective direction.
- 8 Select **Submit** to accept the value.
- 9 changes by placing the print quick test page face up and selecting **Copy Quick Test**.
- 10 Repeat steps 6, 7, and 8 as needed.
- 11 To view and adjust the duplex ADF backside registration, place the quick test page face down up into the ADF, and select **Copy Quick Test**.
- 12 After the quick test page copies, select **ADF Back**.

13 Use the plus or minus to increase or decrease the settings value for horizontal adjust and top margin.

Note: Each button press moves the margin values one pixel in the respective direction.

14 Select **Submit** to accept the value.

15 Verify the changes by placing the print quick test page face down and selecting **Copy Quick Test**.

16 Repeat steps 13, 14, and 15 as needed.

To manually register the flatbed, perform the following steps:

1 In the Configuration Menu, select the Scanner Manual Registration menu item.

2 Select the Print Quick Test Page menu item.

3 To view and adjust the flatbed registration, place the quick test page into the flatbed.

4 Select the Copy Quick Test Page item.

5 After the quick test page copies, select **Flatbed**.

6 Use the plus or minus to increase or decrease the settings value for the left or top margin.

Note: Each button press moves the margin values one pixel in the respective direction.

7 Select **Submit** to accept the value.

8 Place the print quick test page on the flatbed and select **Copy Quick Test**.

9 Repeat steps 5 and 6 as needed.

10 To exit REGISTRATION select **Back** or **Stop**.

Disable scanner

This menu item is used to disable the MFP scanner if it is malfunctioning. The MFP must be powered off and on for the new settings to take effect.

To change this setting:

1 Select **Disable Scanner** from the Configuration menu.

2 Scroll through the setting's other possible values. The settings are Enable, Disable, ADF disable.

3 To save the setting's new value, select **Submit**.

4 Select **Submit** to accept the value.

Auto Color Adjustment

Auto Color Adjustment sets the suggested number of pages which the printer should print between consecutive calibrations.

Selections are **Off** and the values between **100** and **1000** in increments of 50. The default is 500 pages.

If the printer exceeds the set value while printing a job, it completes the current job and any other jobs received while printing the current job before it initiates a calibration. The printer does not cancel or suspend an active job to perform a calibration. If a user is using the menus, including the Configuration Menu and the Diagnostics Menu, an automatic color adjust calibration does not occur.

When an event other than page count triggers this calibration, the count that monitors the maximum number of pages printed will be reset. For example, if the user replaces an empty toner cartridge, the next time the printer is started, it will sense the new cartridge and perform the automatic color adjustment, even though the page counter for Auto Color Adj is fewer than required. The Auto Color Adj page counter is then reset.

Font Sharpening

Font Sharpening allows a user to set a text point-size value below the setting of the high-frequency screens used when printing font data. This menu item affects only the PostScript, PCL 5, PCL XL, and PDF emulators.

Settings are in the range of 0–150 (24 is the default). For example, if the value is set to 24, then all fonts sized 24 points or less use the high-frequency screens. To increase the value by 1, press the right arrow; to decrease the value by 1, press the left arrow.

Exit Config

Press **Select** to exit the Configuration Menu. The printer performs a power-on reset and returns to normal mode.

Entering invalid engine mode

This mode is used if the machine has invalid code and needs the correct code loaded. After entering this mode, the firmware code can be updated.

- 1 Turn off the printer.
- 2 Press and hold the **3**, **4**, and **6** buttons simultaneously.
- 3 Turn on the printer.
- 4 Release the buttons after 10 seconds.

Entering recovery mode

This mode will allow the printer to boot from a secondary set of instructions to allow a code flash to the printer. Code can be flashed from a PC via USB.

- 1 Turn off the printer.
- 2 Press and hold the **7**, **2**, and **8** buttons simultaneously.
- 3 Turn on the printer.
- 4 Release the buttons after 10 seconds.

Accessing the Network SE menu

This menu contains settings for fine tuning the communication settings for the network interfaces and protocols.

- 1 Touch **Select** and **Right**.
- 2 Navigate to **Networks/Ports > Standard Network > Std Network Setup**.
- 3 Press and hold **6**, **7**, and **9** simultaneously.

Accessing the service engineer (SE) menu

From a Web browser on a host PC, add `/se` to the printer IP address.

Accessing the fax SE menu

The Fax SE menu is used for the Fax transmission service check and the Fax reception service check. It should only be used under the direction of your next level of support.

In Ready mode, press `**411` to enter the Fax SE menu.

Repair information

- “Removal precautions” on page 196
- “Removal procedures” on page 212
- “Cover removals” on page 212
- “Base printer removals” on page 226
- “Options removal” on page 302

Removal precautions

 **CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD:** For personal safety and to prevent damage to the printer, remove the power cord from the electrical outlet before you connect or disconnect any cable, electronic board, or assembly. Disconnect any connections between the printer and the PCs/peripherals.

 **CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY:** The printer weight is greater than 18kg (40 lb) and requires two or more trained personnel to lift it safely. Use the hand holds on the side of the printer. Make sure your fingers are not under the printer when you lift or set the printer on the floor or another stable surface.

Handling ESD-sensitive parts

Many electronic products use parts that are known to be sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). To prevent damage to ESD-sensitive parts, use the following instructions in addition to all the usual precautions, such as turning off power before removing logic boards:

- Keep the ESD-sensitive part in its original shipping container (a special “ESD bag”) until you are ready to install the part into the machine.
- Make the least-possible movements with your body to prevent an increase of static electricity from clothing fibers, carpets, and furniture.
- Put the ESD wrist strap on your wrist. Connect the wrist band to the system ground point. This discharges any static electricity in your body to the machine.
- Hold the ESD-sensitive part by its edge connector shroud (cover); do not touch its pins. If you are removing a pluggable module, use the correct tool.
- Do not place the ESD-sensitive part on the machine cover or on a metal table; if you need to put down the ESD-sensitive part for any reason, first put it into its special bag.
- Machine covers and metal tables are electrical grounds. They increase the risk of damage, because they make a discharge path from your body through the ESD-sensitive part. (Large metal objects can be discharge paths without being grounded.)
- Prevent ESD-sensitive parts from being accidentally touched by other personnel. Install machine covers when you are not working on the machine, and do not put unprotected ESD-sensitive parts on a table.
- If possible, keep all ESD-sensitive parts in a grounded metal cabinet (case).
- Be extra careful while working with ESD-sensitive parts when cold-weather heating is used, because low humidity increases static electricity.

Controller board/control panel replacement

This procedure should be followed only if both the controller board and the operator panel fail. If you need to replace only one of the FRUs, follow the startup procedure described in the FRU's removal procedure.



CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY

The lithium battery in this product is not intended to be replaced. There is a danger of explosion if a lithium battery is incorrectly replaced. Do not recharge, disassemble, or incinerate a lithium battery. Discard used lithium batteries according to the manufacturer's instructions and local regulations.

Warning—Potential Damage: If the operator panel and the controller board are being replaced at the same time, replace the parts in this order to avoid damage to the machine.

- 1 Replace the controller board first.

Note: Do not replace the new operator panel and controller board in the machine at the same time.

- 2 After installing the new controller board, and before installing the new operator panel, start the printer into diagnostics mode.
- 3 After the printer has completed startup, turn off the printer and replace the operator panel.

Note: If the operator panel display has failed, the printers' startup cycle is complete when the driver motor and fans shut down, and the machine is quiet.
- 4 After installing the new operator panel, start the printer into diagnostics mode, and allow the printer to go through a complete startup cycle and the display to go to Ready.
- 5 If the problems persist, leave the new operator panel in the machine, place the old controller board back in the machine, and start it up. After the machine startup, shut down the machine, and install the new controller board. After installing the new controller board, restart the machine, and let it go through the startup cycle.

After this procedure is completed successfully, there is no need to adjust any settings.

If the above procedure fails, you must contact the technical support center for further instructions.

eSF solutions backup

If a technician needs to replace the RIP board, the steps below should be taken to backup the eSF solutions and settings:

- 1 POR the printer into invalid engine code mode.
- 2 Open a Web browser, and navigate to the printer Web page.
- 3 Navigate to **Settings**, and click the link.
- 4 Navigate to **Solutions**, and click the link.
- 5 Navigate to **Embedded Solutions**, and click the link.
- 6 On the Embedded Solutions page, select the apps to be exported by clicking the selection box next to the app.
- 7 Choose **Export**.

If the Web page cannot be accessed, or an error persists despite trying to boot in Invalid Engine code mode, then there is no way to back up the eSF apps. The technician needs to make the customer aware that the applications and their settings could not be saved.

There is a size limit on the export file - 128kb. Because of this, it is recommended that you don't use the "global" backup found in **Settings > Import/Export > Export Shortcuts File, Export Settings File, Export Embedded Solutions Settings File and Export Security Setups File**. Customers with a large number of applications or settings may exceed the file size limit and have information truncated in the exported file.

Ribbon cable connectors

- "Zero Insertion Force (ZIF) connectors" on page 198
- "Horizontal top contact connector" on page 199
- "Horizontal bottom contact connector" on page 202
- "Vertical mount contact connector" on page 205
- "Horizontal sliding contact connector" on page 208
- "Low Insertion Force (LIF) connector" on page 211

Zero Insertion Force (ZIF) connectors

Zero Insertion Force (ZIF) connectors are used on the boards and cards used in this printer. Before inserting or removing a cable from these connectors, read this entire section. Great care must be taken to avoid damaging the connector or cable when inserting or removing the cable.

Warning—Potential Damage: Do not insert the cable so that the contacts are facing the locking actuator. The contacts always face away from the actuator.

Warning—Potential Damage: Do not insert the cable diagonally into the ZIF socket. This can cause damage to the contacts on the cable.

Warning—Potential Damage: Avoid using a fingernail, or sharp object to open the locking mechanism. This could damage the cable.

Warning—Potential Damage: Avoid pressing against the cable when opening the locking mechanism. This can also damage the cable.

These are the types of ZIF connectors used in this printer:

- Horizontal top contact connector
- Horizontal bottom contact connector
- Vertical mount contact connector
- Horizontal sliding connector

Horizontal top contact connector

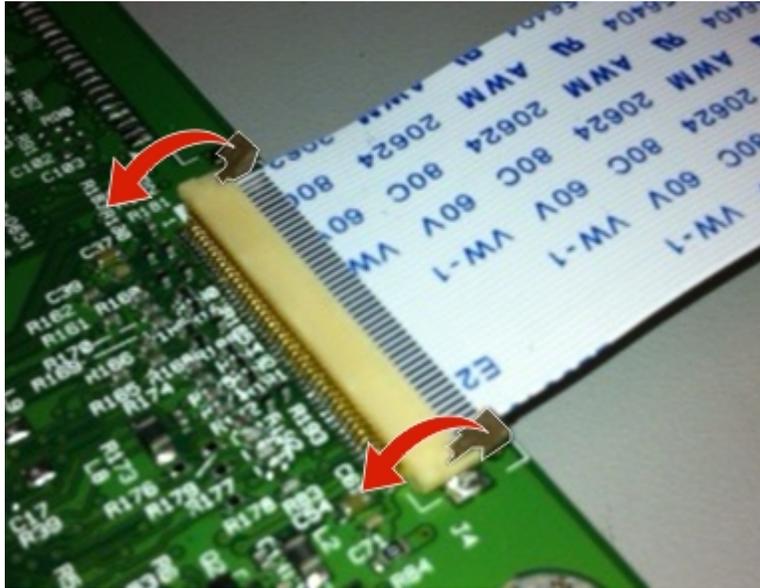
This FRU contains a horizontal top contact cable connector. Read the instructions before proceeding.

The horizontal top contact connector uses a back flip locking actuator to lock the ribbon cable into the Zero Insertion Force (ZIF) connector. The cable is inserted horizontally into the connector.

Warning—Potential Damage: When opening or closing this type of actuator, gently lift or close the two tabs located on each end of the actuator. The two tabs should be moved simultaneously. Do not close the actuator from the center of the actuator.

Removing a cable from the horizontal top contact connector

- 1 Place a finger at each end of the locking actuator, and then gently lift the actuator to the unlocked position.



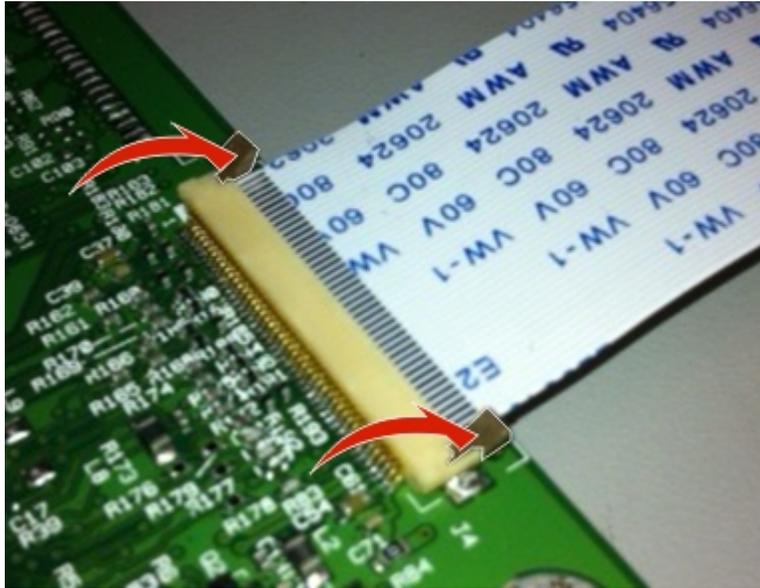
- 2 Slide the cable out of the connector.

Inserting a cable into the horizontal top contact connector

- 1 When installing the cable, check the locking actuator to ensure it is in the unlocked position. The tabs on the ends of the actuator are vertical when the actuator is unlocked.



- 3 Rotate the locking actuator to the locked position. The cable should not move while this step is performed. If the cable moves, open the actuator, reposition the cable, and then close the actuator to the down position.



Horizontal bottom contact connector

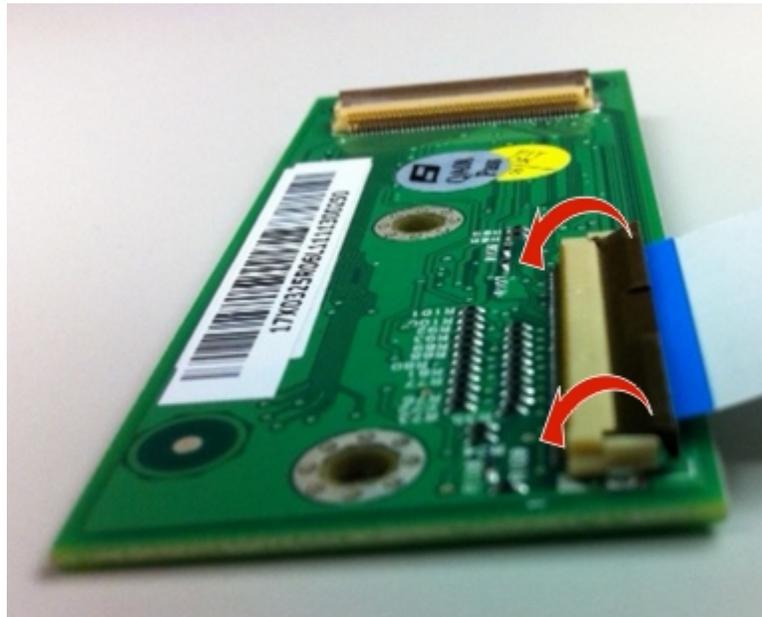
The FRU contains a horizontal bottom contact cable connector. Read the instructions before proceeding.

The horizontal bottom contact connector uses a flip locking actuator to lock the ribbon cable into the Zero Insertion Force (ZIF) connector. The cable is inserted horizontally into the connector.

Warning—Potential Damage: When opening or closing this type of actuator, gently lift the center of the actuator using your finger. Do not use a fingernail or screwdriver to open the actuator. This could damage the ribbon cable. Do not close the actuator from the ends of the actuator.

Removing a cable from the horizontal bottom contact connector

- 1 Place two fingers towards each end of the locking actuator, and then gently lift the actuator to the unlocked position.



- 2 Slide the cable out of the connector.

Inserting a cable into the horizontal bottom contact connector

- 1 Check the actuator to verify it is in the open position.



- 2 Insert the cable into the ZIF connector with the contacts facing downward and away from the locking actuator. The cable needs to be inserted below the actuator.

Note: Verify that the cable is installed squarely into the connector. If the cable is not squarely installed, then intermittent failures could occur.



- 3 Place your finger in the middle of the actuator, and then rotate the locking actuator to the locked position.



Vertical mount contact connector

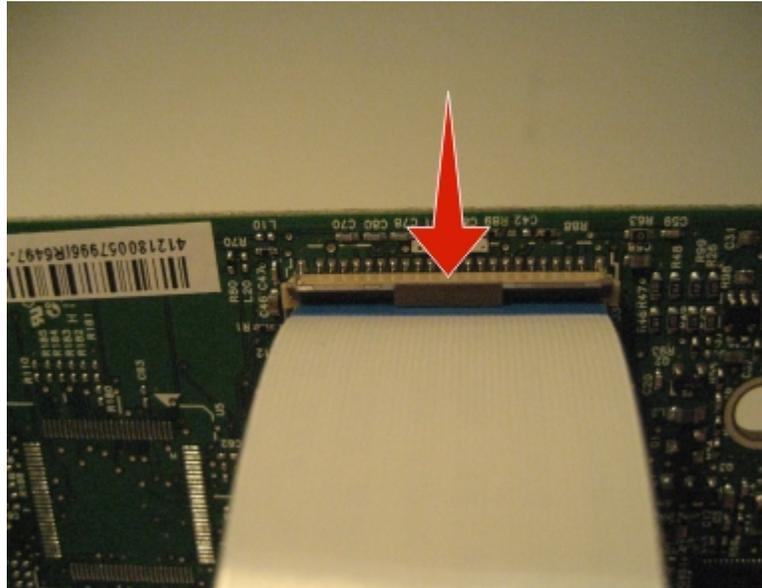
This FRU contains a vertical mount contact connector. Read the instructions before proceeding.

The vertical mount contact connector uses a back flip locking actuator to lock the ribbon cable into the Zero Insertion Force (ZIF) connector. The cable is inserted vertically into the connector.

Warning—Potential Damage: When opening or closing this type of actuator, gently lift the center of the actuator using your finger. Do not use a fingernail or screwdriver to open the actuator. This could damage the ribbon cable. Do not close the actuator from the ends of the actuator.

Removing a cable from the vertical mount contact connector

- 1 Gently rotate the locking actuator from the center of the actuator to the unlocked position.



- 2 Slide the cable out of the connector.

Inserting a cable into the vertical mount contact connector

- 1 When installing the cable, check the locking actuator to verify it is in the open position.

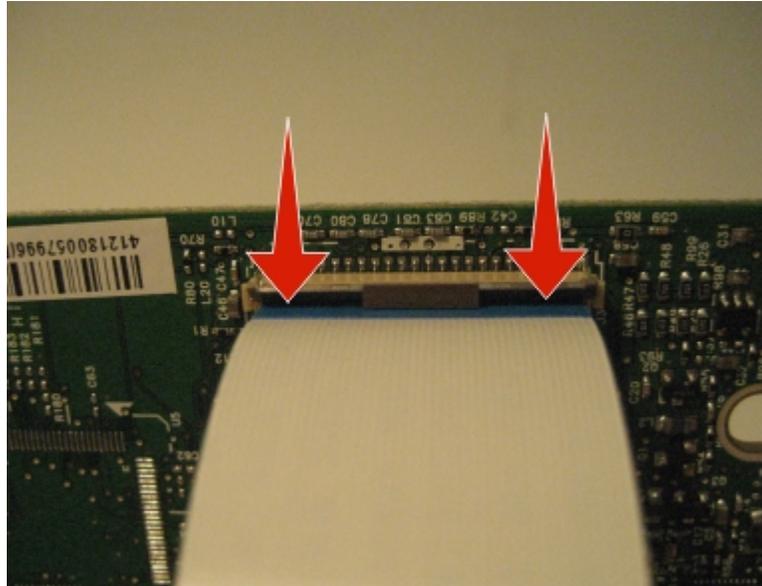


- 2 Insert the cable with the contacts on the cable away from the locking actuator. Insert the cable on top of the actuator.

Note: Verify that the cable is installed squarely into the connector. If the cable is not squarely installed, then intermittent failures could occur.



- 3 Rotate the locking actuator to the locked position by pressing down on both ends of the actuator. The cable should not move when this step is performed. If the cable moves, open the actuator, reposition the cable, and then close the actuator to the down position.



Horizontal sliding contact connector

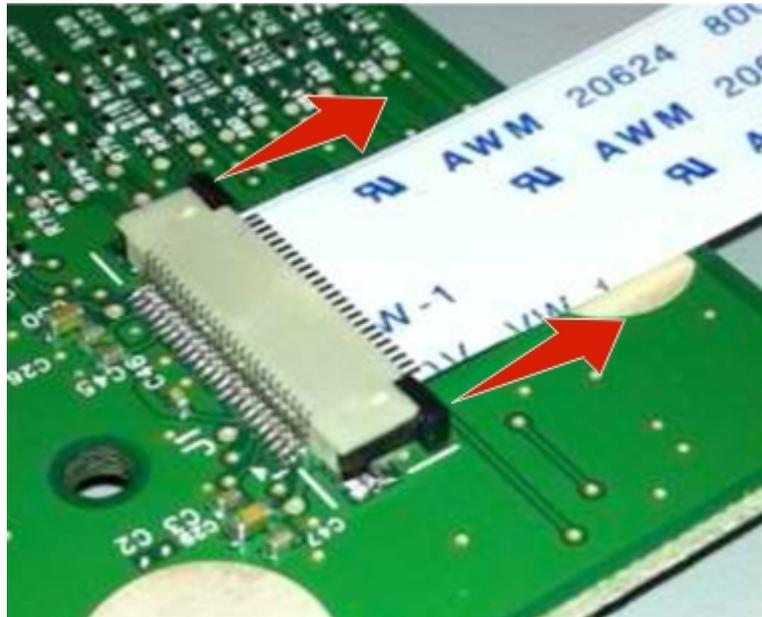
This FRU contains a horizontal sliding contact connector. Read the instructions before proceeding.

The horizontal sliding contact connector uses a slide locking actuator to lock the ribbon cable into the Zero Insertion Force (ZIF) connector. The cable is inserted horizontally into the connector.

Warning—Potential Damage: When opening or closing this type of actuator, gently push or pull the two tabs located on each end of the actuator. Do not close the actuator from the center of the actuator. Do not use a screwdriver to open or close the actuator. Damage to the cable or connector could occur.

Removing a cable from the horizontal sliding contact connector

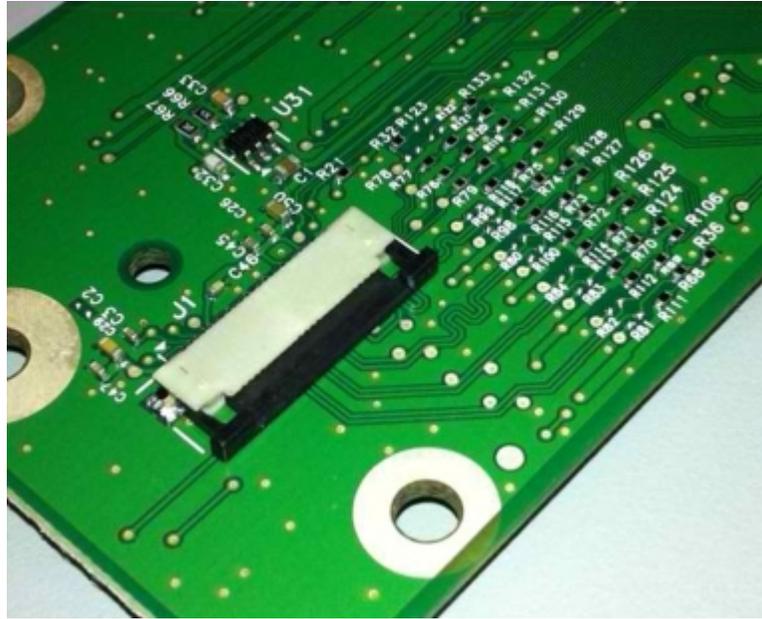
- 1 Simultaneously slide the two tabs located on the ends of the locking actuator away from the connector.



- 2 Slide the cable out of the connector.

Inserting a cable into the horizontal sliding contact connector

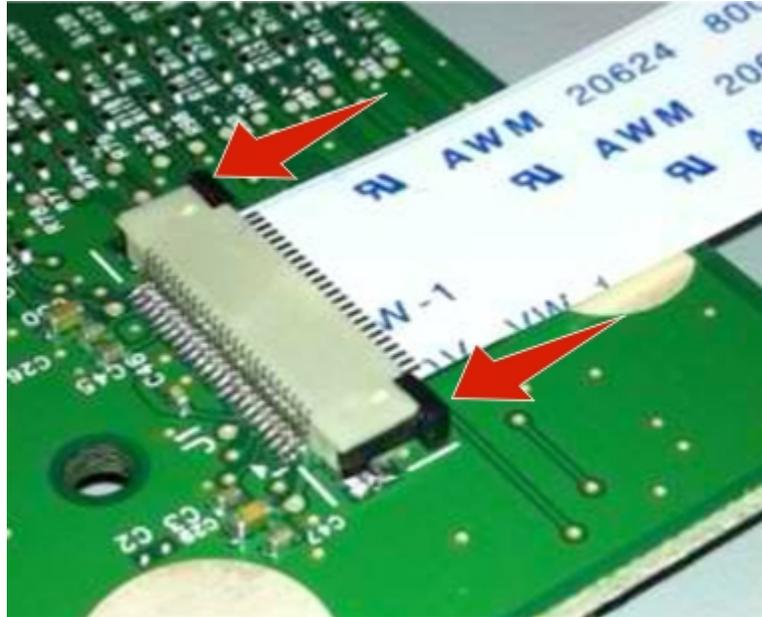
- 1 When installing the cable, check the locking actuator to verify it is in the open position. If you are opening the connector, pull back on both end tabs using equal force to avoid breaking the connector.



- 2 Insert the cable with the contacts on the cable facing away from the locking actuator. Insert the cable on top of the actuator.



- 3 Slide the locking actuator towards the connector, locking the cable into place. The cable should not move when this step is performed. If the cable moves, open the actuator, reposition the cable, and then close the actuator to the down position.



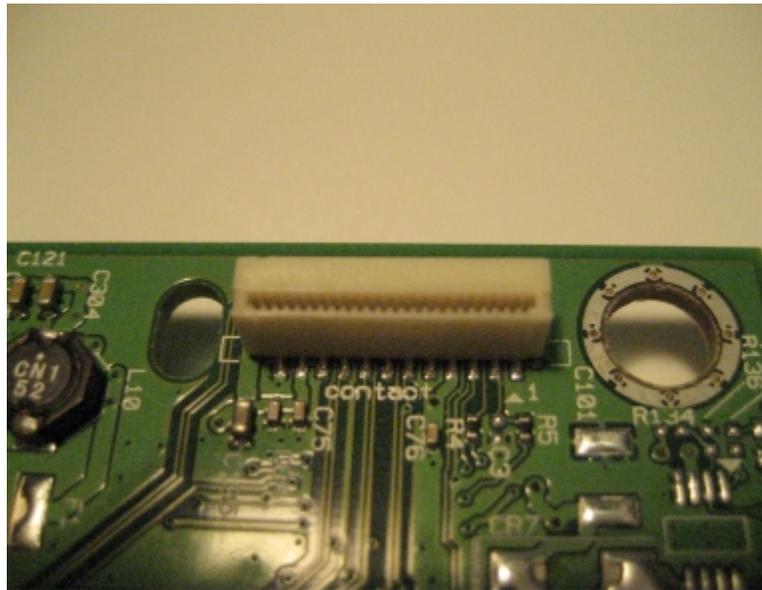
Low Insertion Force (LIF) connector

This FRU contains a Low Insertion Force (LIF) connector. Read the instructions before proceeding.

Warning—Potential Damage: When installing a cable into an LIF connector, care must be taken to avoid bending the edges of the cables and damaging the contacts on the cables.

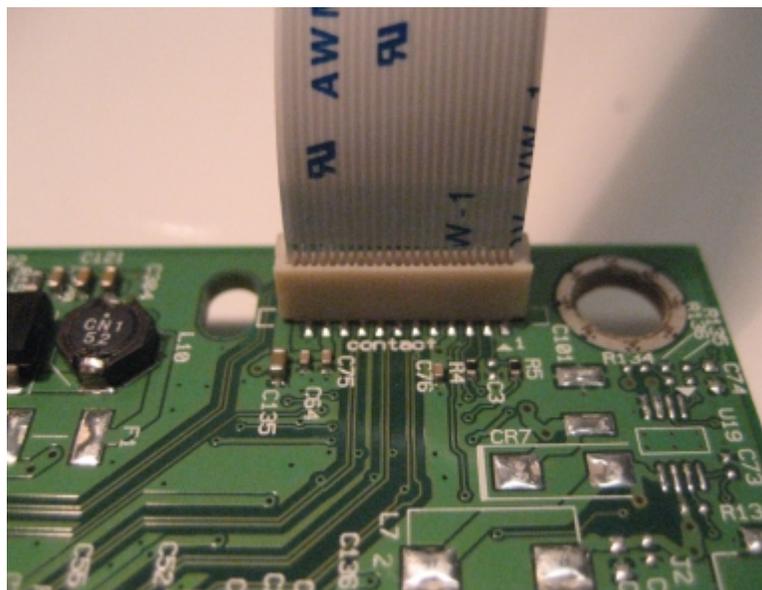
Inserting a cable into the LIF connector

- 1 Looking at the connector, take note on which side the contacts are located. Many boards will have the word “contacts” stamped on them to indicate which side of the LIF has the contacts. When looking at the board, take note that the contacts from the board to the connector are located on the side of the connector with the contacts.



- 2 Insert the cable squarely into the connector.

Note: Verify that the cable is installed straight into the connector. If the cable is not installed properly, then intermittent failures could occur.



Removal procedures

Keep the following tips in mind as you replace parts:

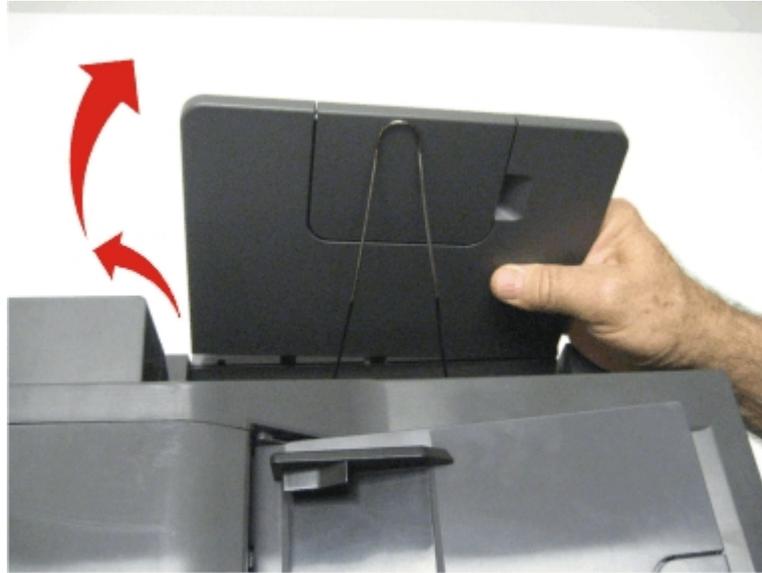
- Some removal procedures require removing cable ties. You must replace cable ties during reassembly to avoid pinching wires, obstructing the paper path, or restricting mechanical movement.
- Remove the waste toner bottle, color toner cartridges, imaging unit, and media tray before removing other printer parts. The imaging unit should be carefully set on a clean, smooth, and flat surface. It should also be protected from light while out of the device.
- Disconnect all external cables from the printer to prevent possible damage during service.
- Unless otherwise stated, reinstall the parts in reverse order of removal.
- When reinstalling a part held with several screws, start all screws before the final tightening.
- Toroids may be on cables but not shown in the Service Manual. Be sure to replace the toroid precisely as it was found.

Cover removals

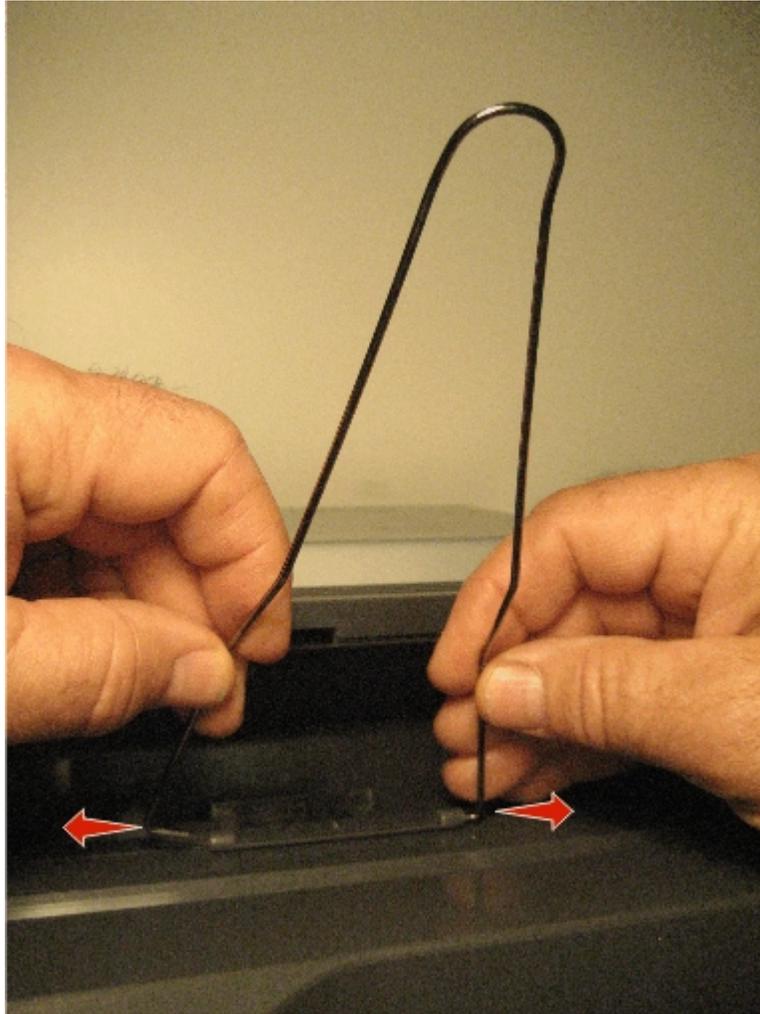
- “Output bin tray and exit bail removal” on page 213
- “Front cover assembly removal” on page 214
- “Front middle cover removal” on page 216
- “Left cover assembly removal” on page 216
- “Rear cover removal” on page 218
- “Rear scanner cover removal” on page 219
- “Right cover assembly removal” on page 220
- “Right scanner cover removal” on page 220
- “Top cover assembly removal” on page 222
- “Top cover ADF sheet feed removal” on page 226

Output bin tray and exit bail removal

- 1 Rotate the output bin tray forward.
- 2 Lift the output bin tray, and remove.



- 3 Pull out the legs of the exit bail one at a time, and lift to remove.

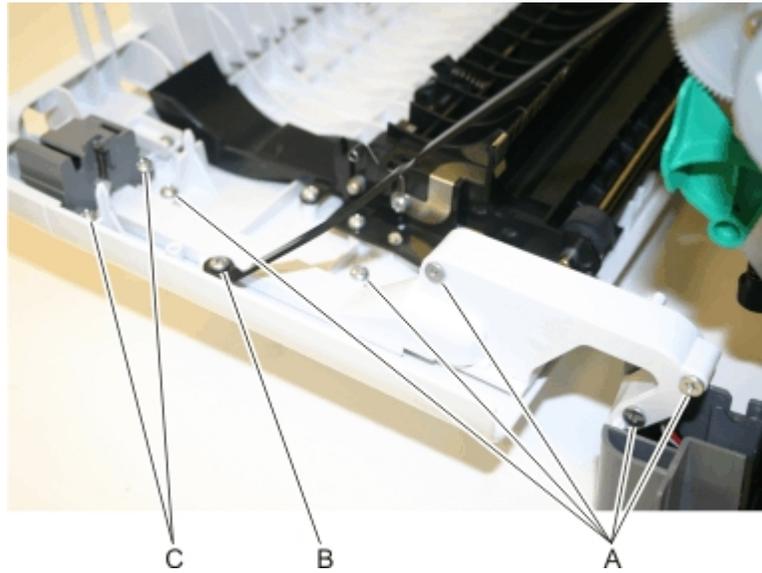


Front cover assembly removal

- 1 Remove the media tray.
- 2 Open the front cover.
- 3 Remove the front middle cover (optional). See "Front middle cover removal" on page 216.
- 4 Remove the five screws (A) from the cable cover.
- 5 Remove the cable cover.
- 6 Remove the screw (B) securing the right restraining strap to the front cover.

Note: Support the door with one hand after removing the screw holding the restraining strap. This is the longest screw of the eight. The two flat-head Phillips screws are used in the door hinge.

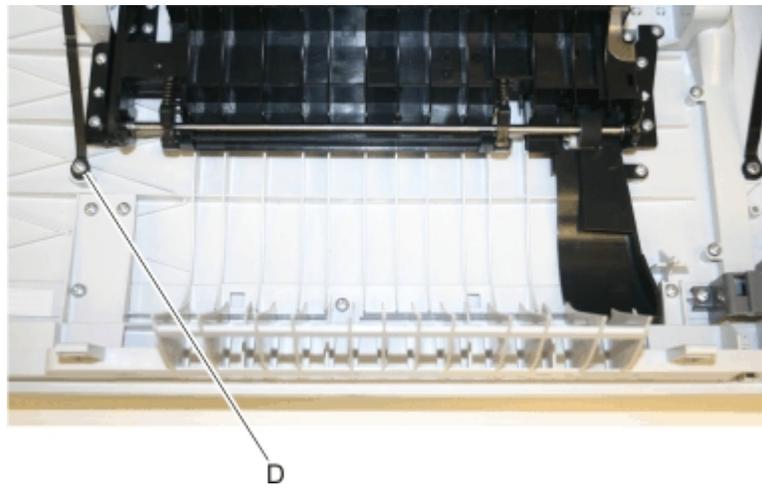
7 Remove the two screws (C) securing the interlock and cable.



8 Route the cable through the right hinge.

Note: Pay close attention to the routing of the interlock sensor cable through the right hinge and front door.

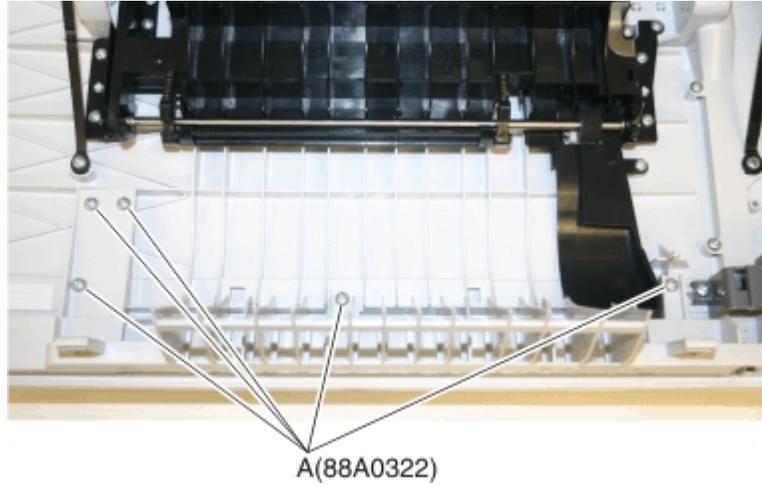
9 Remove the screw (D) securing the restraining strap to the left side of the front door.



10 Lower the front cover to align the flats on the hinges, and remove the front cover.

Front middle cover removal

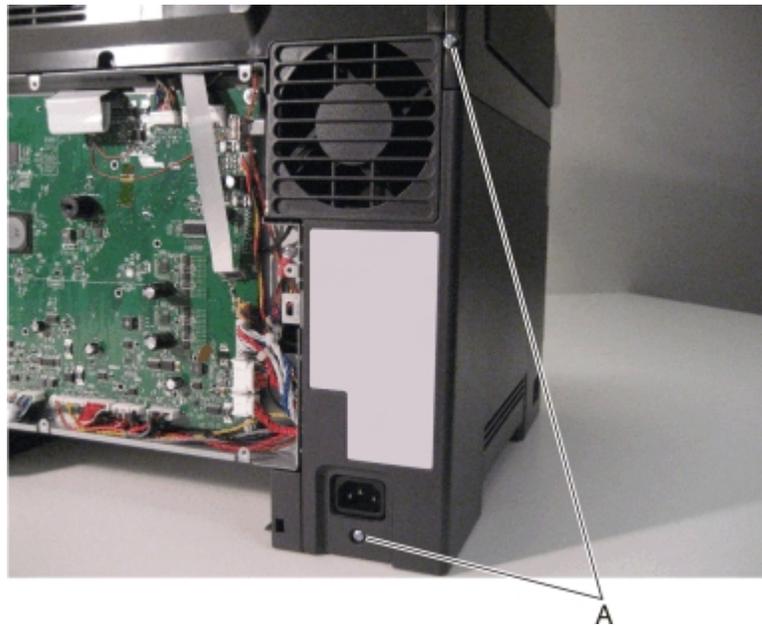
- 1 Open the front cover.
- 2 Remove the five screws (A) attaching the front middle cover to the lower front cover.



- 3 Pull the front middle cover away from the front cover to remove.

Left cover assembly removal

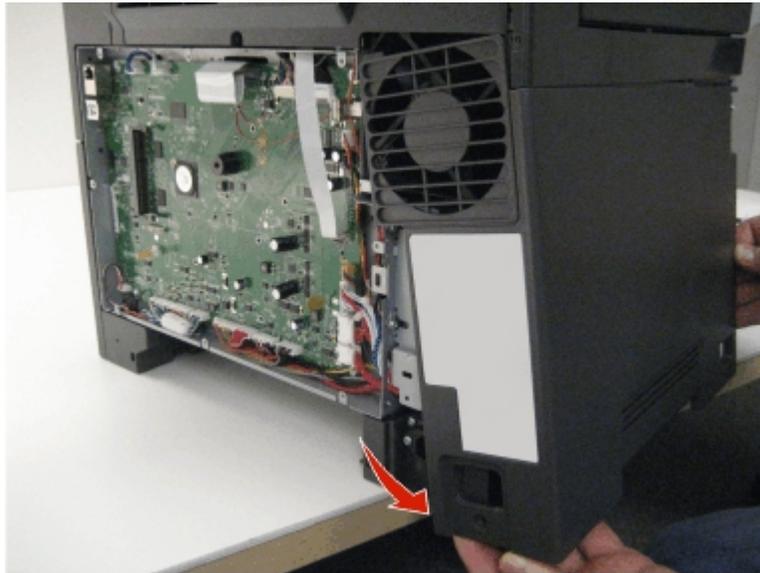
- 1 Remove the two screws (A) from the rear of the printer.



- 2 Remove the screw (B) beneath the right cover.



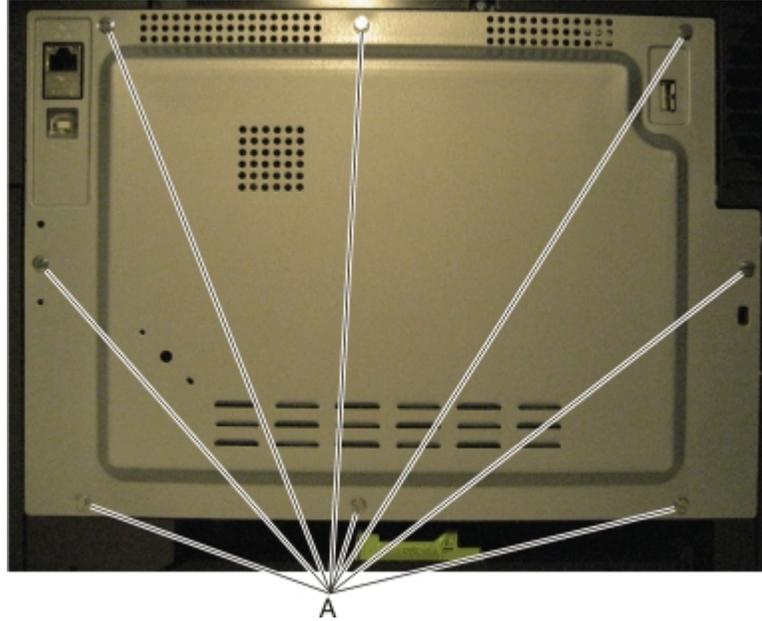
- 3 Position the right side of the printer over the edge of the table to have enough room to swing the right cover out.



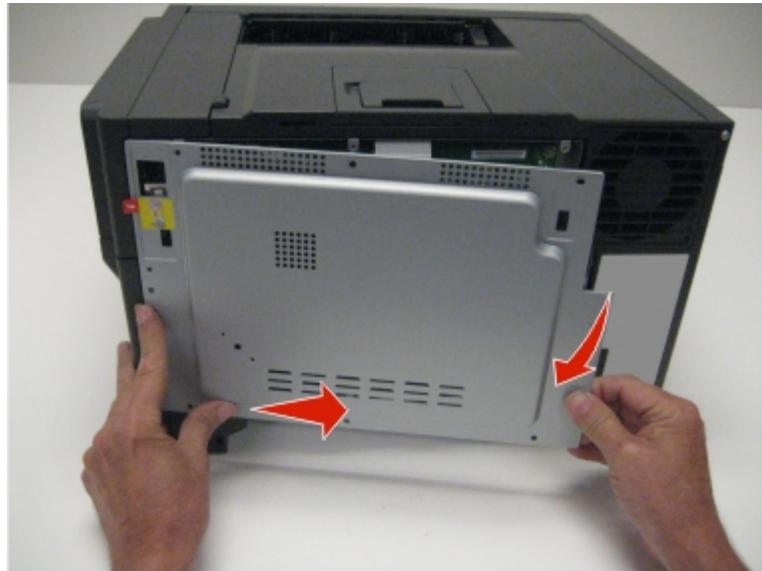
- 4 Disconnect the right cover assembly from the right side of the printer, and remove.

Rear cover removal

- 1 Remove the eight screws (A).

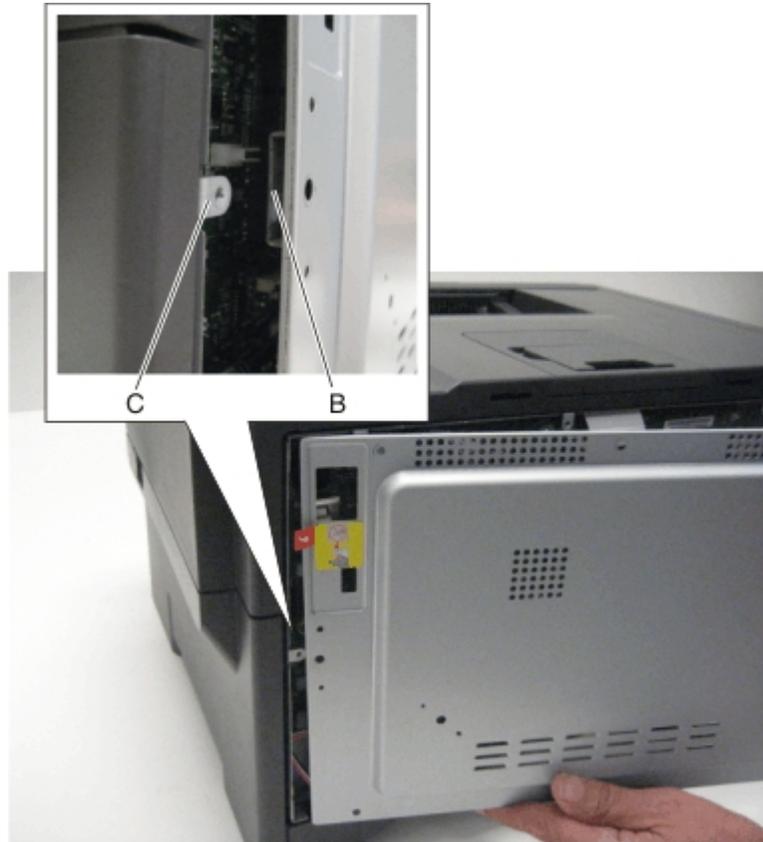


- 2 Swing the side of the cover out, and slide to the right to remove.



- 3 Remove the rear cover.

Installation note: When installing the rear cover, be sure that the ear (C) is inserted into the bracket (B).



Rear scanner cover removal

- 1 Remove the two screws (A) from the rear scanner cover.

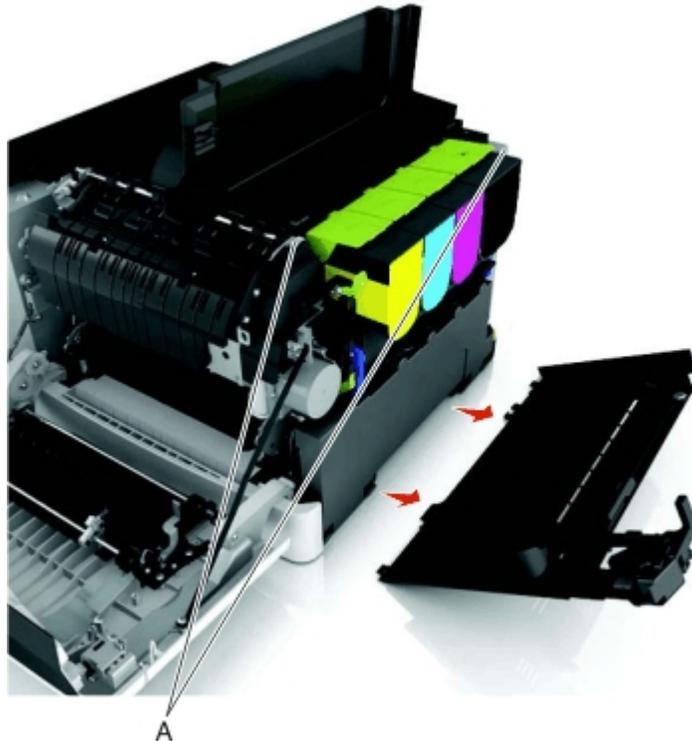


- 2 Use a flat-blade screwdriver to pry the bottom part of the cover out first.

- 3 Remove the rear scanner cover.

Right cover assembly removal

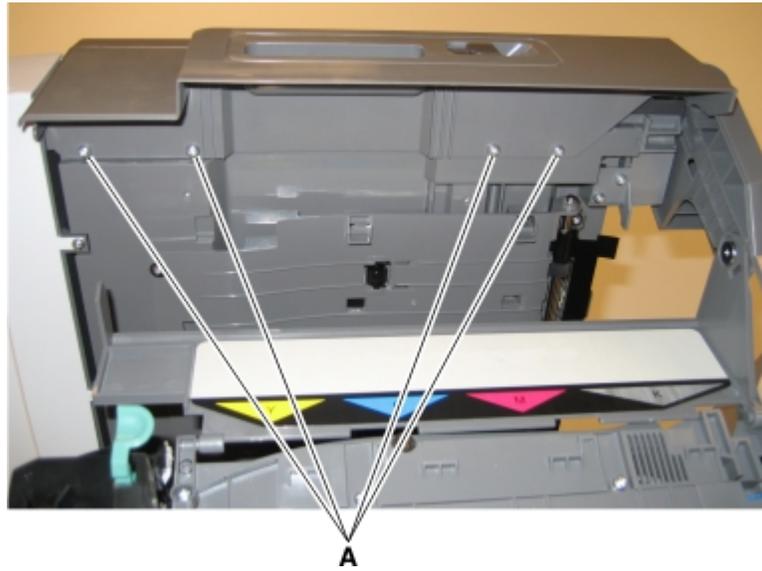
- 1 Open the toner supply door.
- 2 Open the front door.
- 3 Release the latches (A), and lift off the cover.



Right scanner cover removal

- 1 Remove the imaging unit in the print engine. See “Imaging unit (IU) removal” on page 262.
- 2 Raise the scanner assembly to the up position, and lock in place.

- 3 Remove the four screws (A) securing the right scanner cover to the flatbed unit.



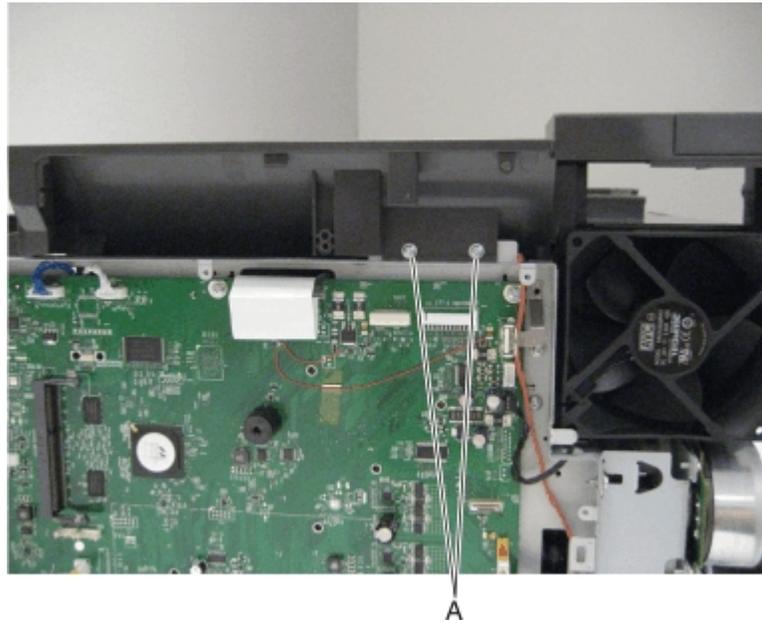
- 4 While holding the ADF away from the flatbed, use the other hand to lift and disengage the right scanner cover from the flatbed unit.



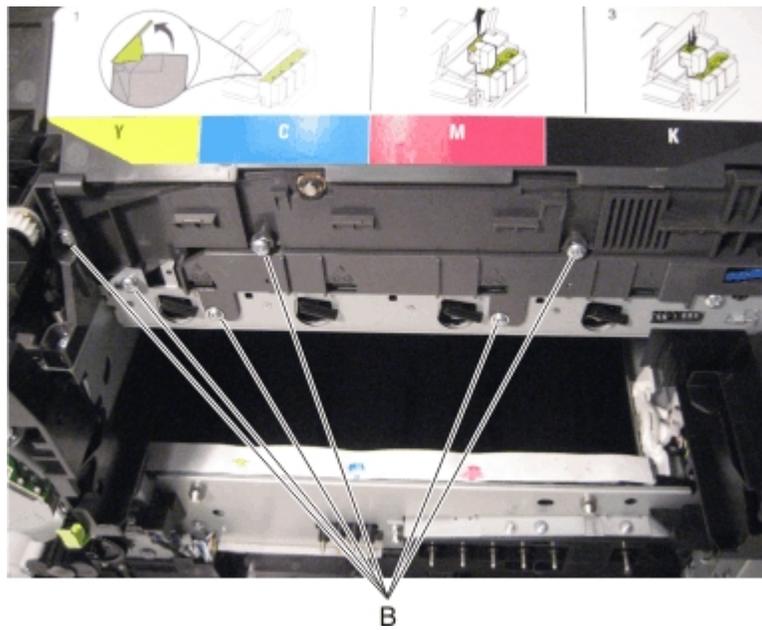
Top cover assembly removal

- 1 Remove the rear cover. See "Rear cover removal" on page 218.
- 2 Remove the flatbed scanner assembly. See "Flatbed scanner assembly removal" on page 249.

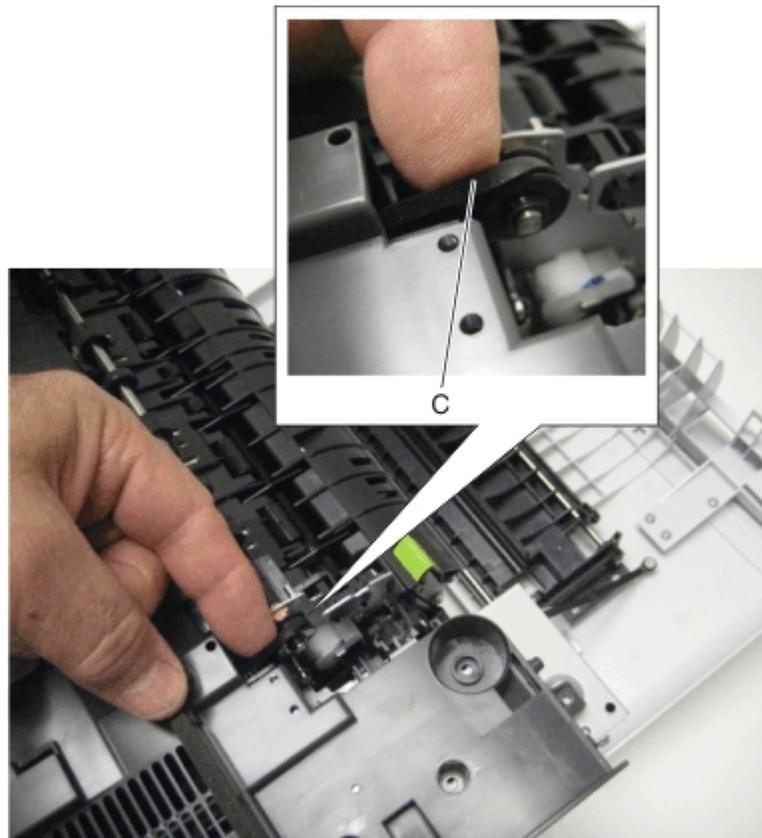
3 Remove the two screws (A) from the rear of the top cover assembly.



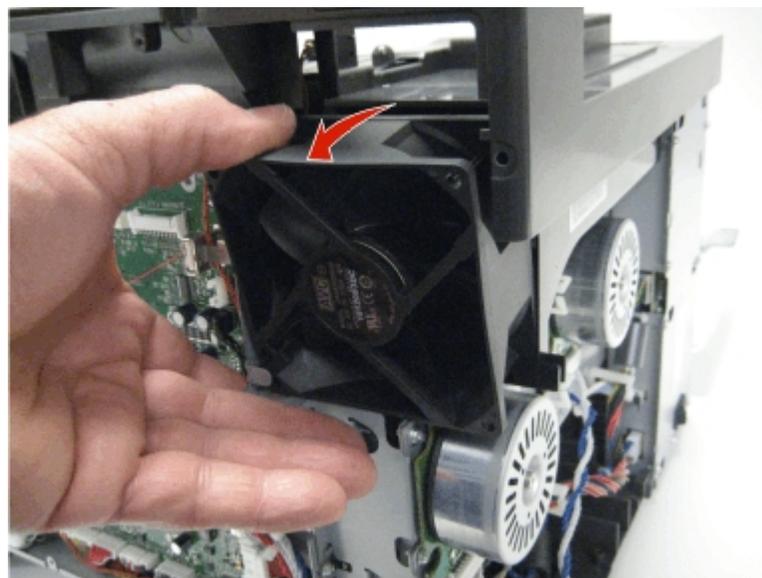
4 Remove the six screws (B) from the right side of the top cover assembly.



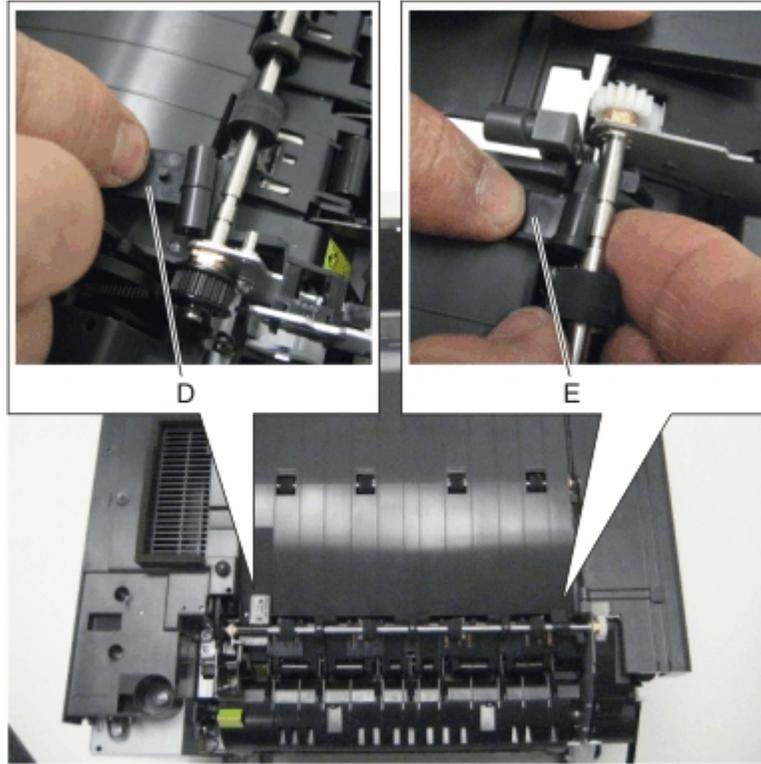
5 Disconnect the belt (C).



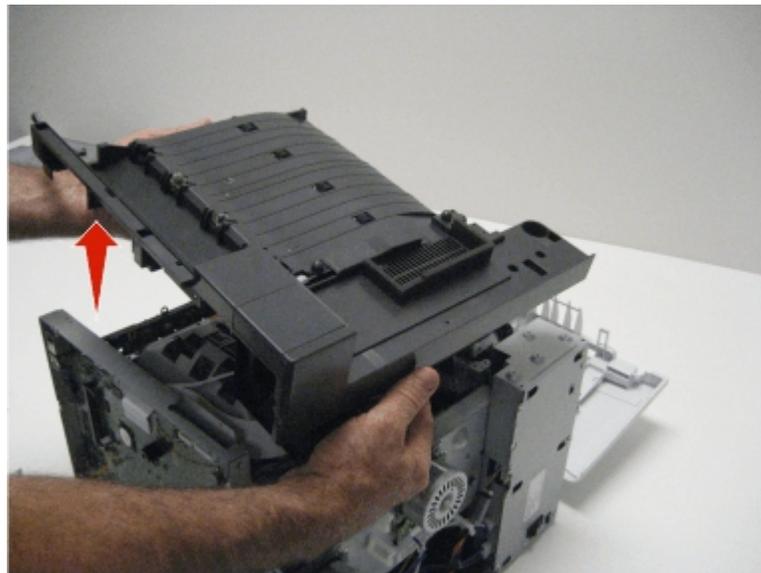
6 Disconnect the fan, and remove.



7 Disconnect the left flag (D) and the right flag (E).



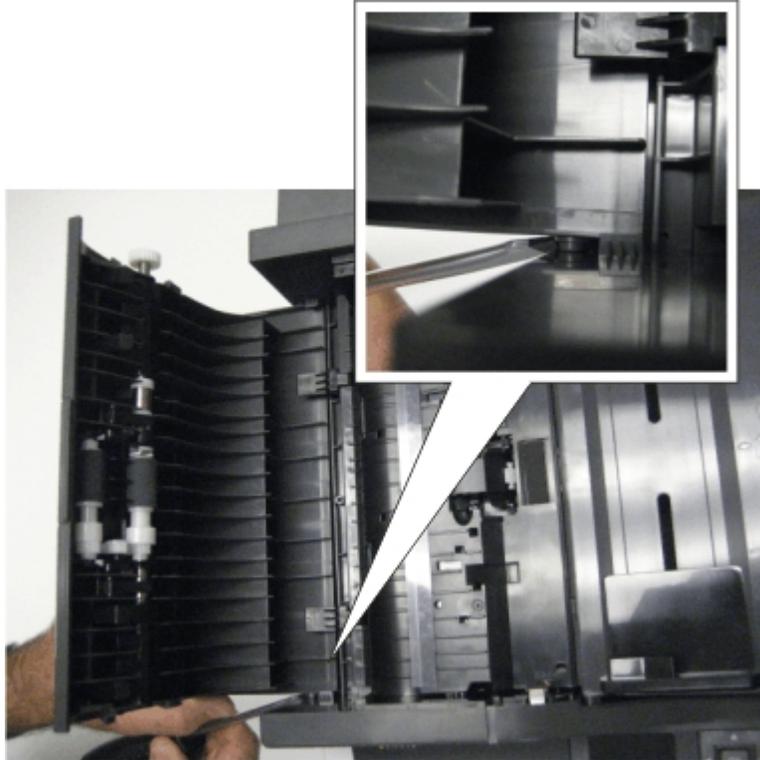
8 Lift the top cover up and away from the printer frame to remove.



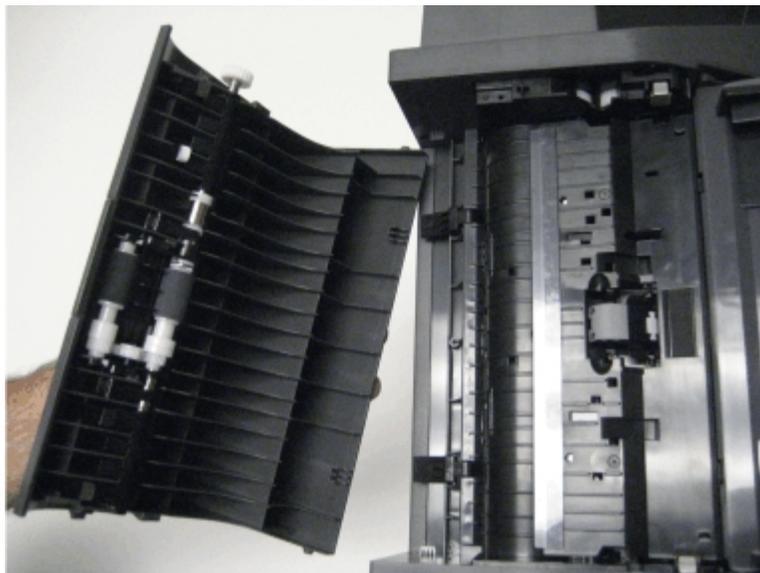
Installation note: Install the narrow media flag to the fuser before rotating the fuser into the printer.

Top cover ADF sheet feed removal

- 1 Separate the top cover sheet feed from the top of the printer.



- 2 Remove the top cover sheet feed.



Base printer removals

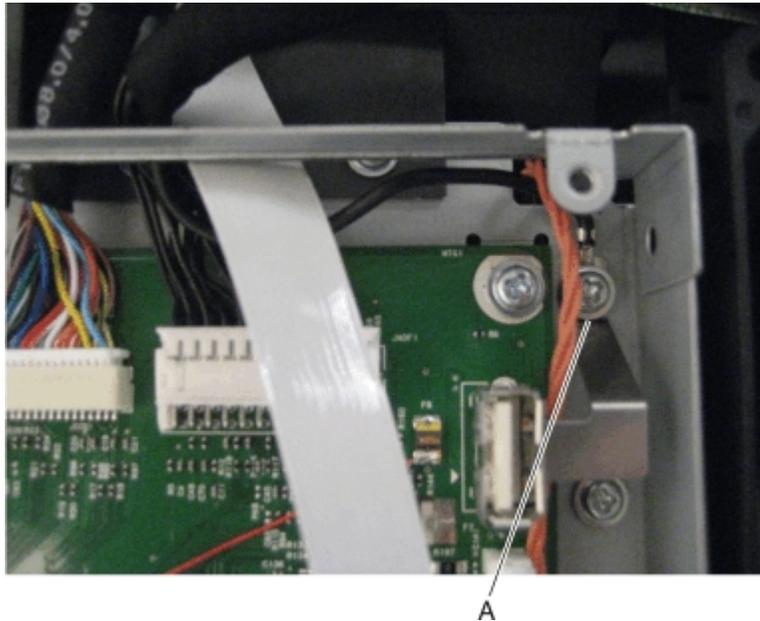
- “ADF assembly removal” on page 228
- “ADF input tray removal” on page 230

- “ADF separator roll removal” on page 230
- “ADF separator pad removal” on page 231
- “AIO toner cover removal” on page 232
- “AIO link removal” on page 233
- “AIO release lever removal” on page 234
- “Bin-full flag removal” on page 235
- “Controller board removal” on page 235
- “Developer unit removal” on page 237
- “Duplex reference edge removal” on page 238
- “Duplex sensor removal” on page 241
- “EP drive assembly removal” on page 242
- “Flatbed pivot link removal” on page 248
- “Flatbed scanner assembly removal” on page 249
- “Front logo cover removal” on page 253
- “Fuser assembly removal” on page 254
- “Fuser drive motor assembly removal” on page 255
- “Fuser exit sensor removal” on page 256
- “High-voltage power supply (HVPS) removal” on page 258
- “Imaging unit (IU) removal” on page 262
- “Low-voltage power supply (LVPS) assembly removal” on page 264
- “Lower left frame removal” on page 266
- “Lower right frame removal” on page 272
- “Narrow media sensor removal” on page 276
- “Narrow media sensor flag removal” on page 277
- “Operator panel bezel removal” on page 278
- “Operator panel logo plate removal” on page 278
- “Operator panel removal (for CX310 and CX410 models only)” on page 279
- “Operator panel removal (for CX510 models only)” on page 285
- “Paper pick motor drive assembly (standard tray) removal” on page 286
- “Printhead removal” on page 288
- “Redrive unit removal” on page 289
- “Speaker removal” on page 290
- “System fan removal” on page 290
- “Toner cartridge contacts removal” on page 290
- “Toner density sensor (TDS) (left or right sensor) removal” on page 292
- “Toner meter cycle (TMC) card removal” on page 294
- “Transfer module removal” on page 296
- “Tray present sensor removal” on page 298
- “USB port connector removal” on page 299
- “Waste toner bottle removal” on page 300

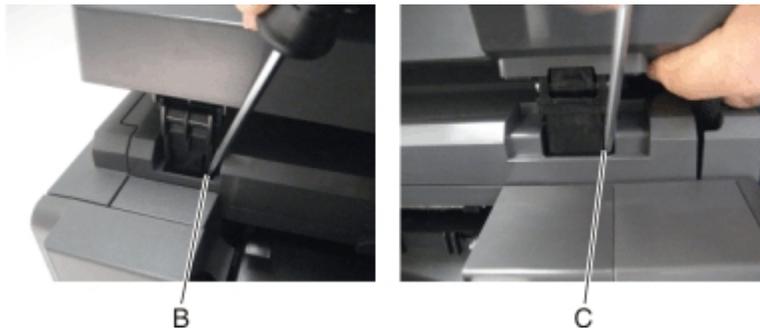
- “Waste toner bottle contact block removal” on page 301

ADF assembly removal

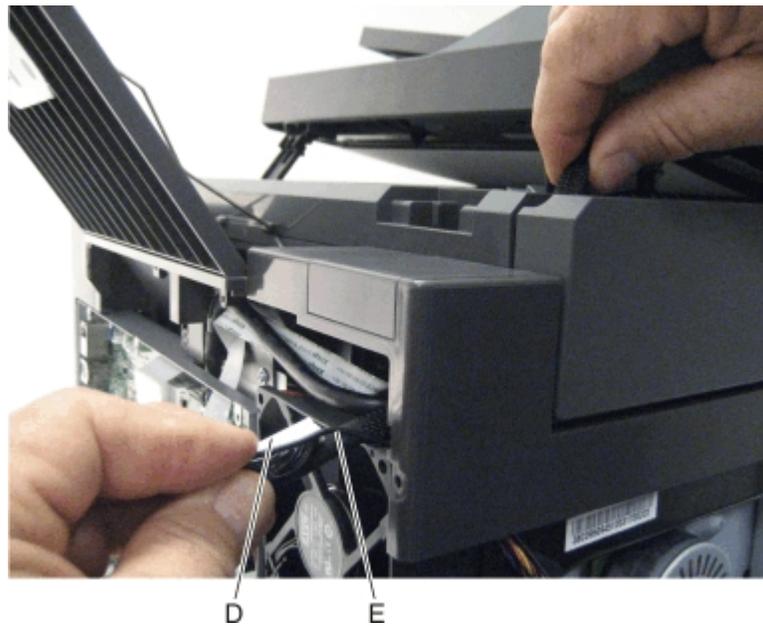
- 1 Remove the exit tray. See “Output bin tray and exit bail removal” on page 213.
- 2 Remove the rear cover. See “Rear cover removal” on page 218.
- 3 Remove the rear scanner cover. See “Rear scanner cover removal” on page 219.
- 4 Remove the ground screw (A) from the ADF assembly.



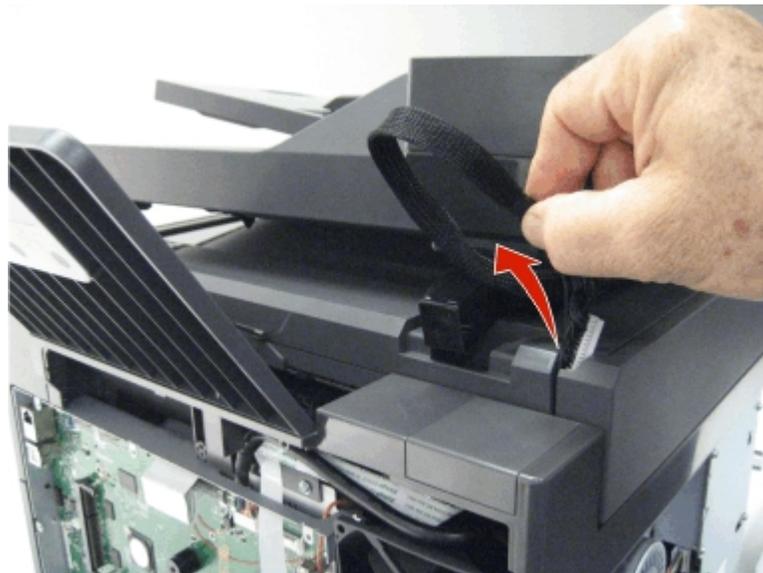
- 5 Disconnect the left hinge (B) and the right hinge (C) from the top of the printer, lift, and let the ADF assembly rest on the top of the printer.



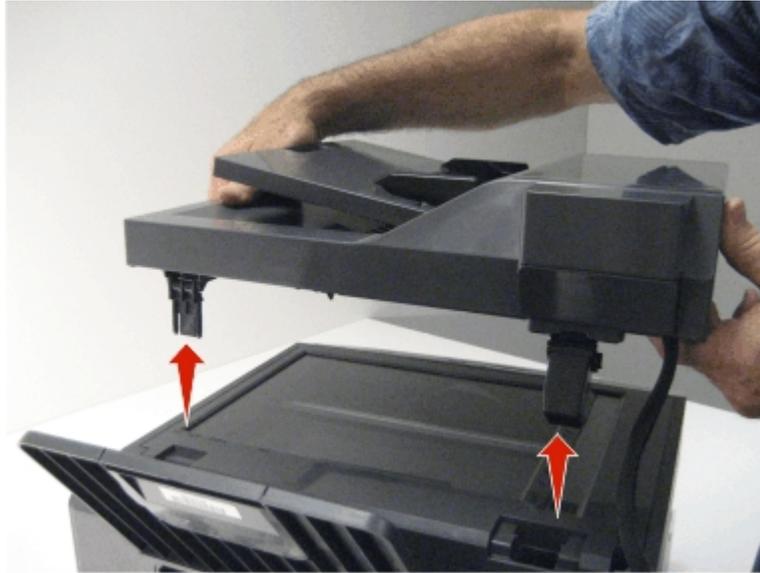
- 6 Fold the cable connector (D) parallel to the cable (E).



- 7 Pull the cable through the opening in the top of the printer.



- 8 Lift the ADF assembly, and remove.



Note: After replacing this part, a scanner manual registration must be performed. See “Scanner manual registration” on page 192. A scanner calibration reset must also be performed. See “Scanner calibration reset” on page 185.

ADF input tray removal

- 1 Push in on the side of the ADF input tray to disconnect it from the top of the printer.



- 2 Remove the ADF input tray.

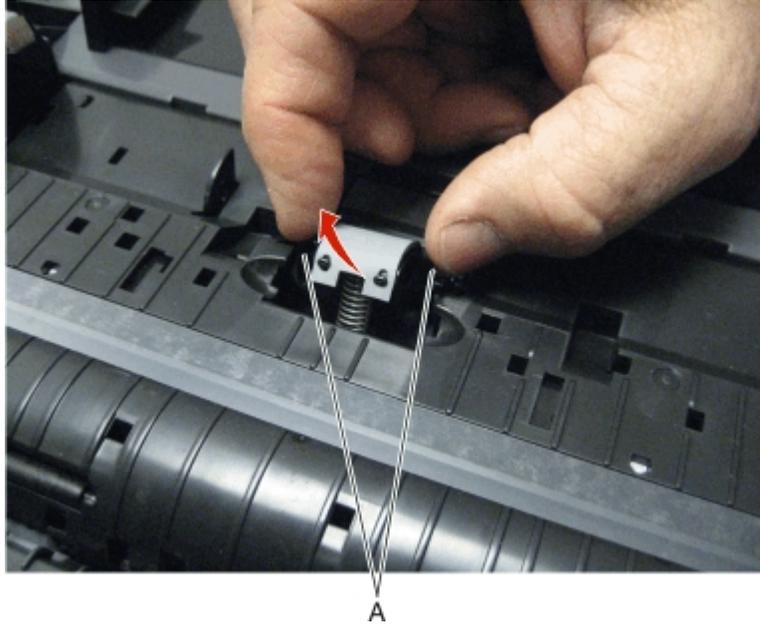
ADF separator roll removal

- 1 Open the ADF top cover.
- 2 Pinch the ADF separator retaining tabs (A).

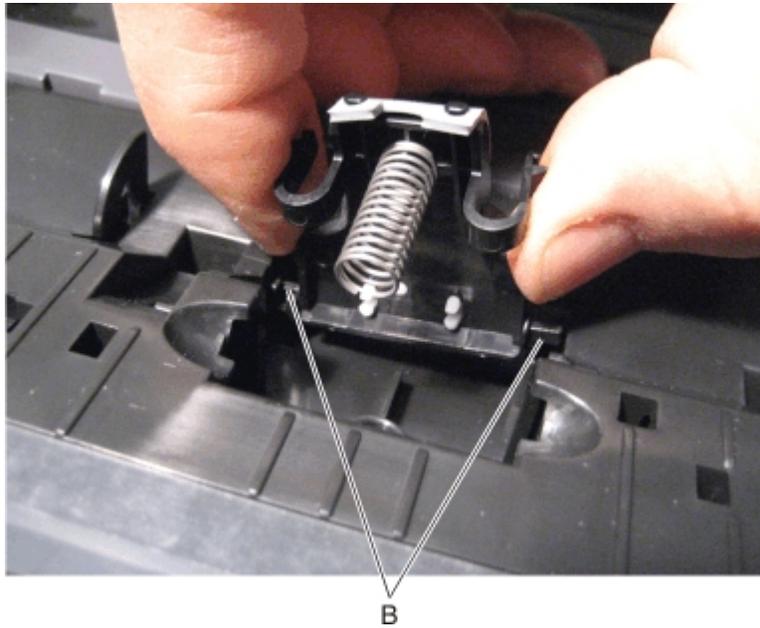
- 3 Lift the ADF separator roll to the vertical position.
- 4 Pull the ADF separator roll up and out of the ADF unit.

ADF separator pad removal

- 1 Open the ADF top cover.
- 2 Press in on the separator retaining tabs (A), and rotate the ADF separator roll to the vertical position.



- 3 Disconnect the ADF separator pad tabs (B) from the printer, and remove.

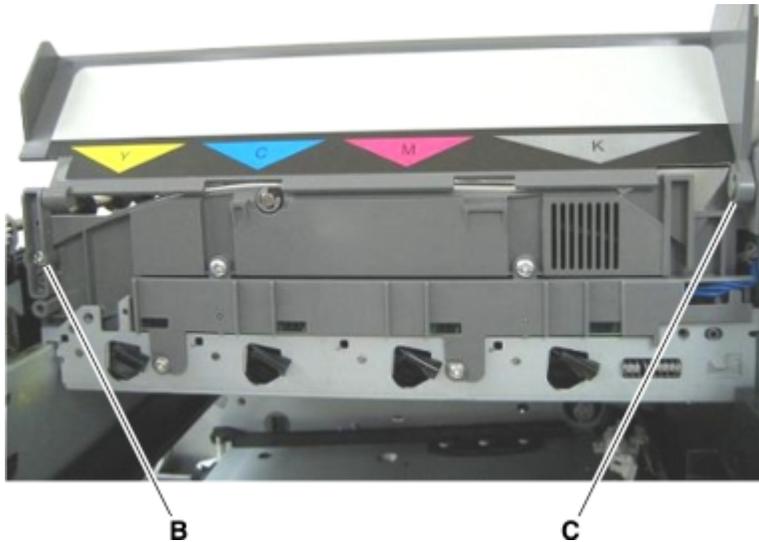


AIO toner cover removal

- 1 Lift the scanner unit to the up position.
- 2 Remove the screw (A) fastening the AIO toner cover to the scanner unit.



- 3 Remove the screws (B) securing the AIO hinge to the MFP.
- 4 Remove the hinge (C). Save this for the new AIO toner cover, or top cover.
- 5 Rotate the AIO toner cover so the tab (D) on the cover lines up with the hole on the AIO toner cover.



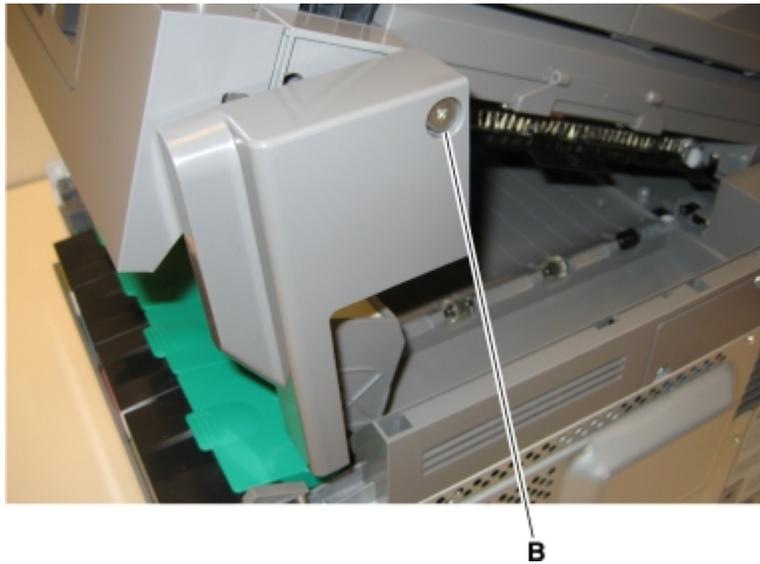
- 6 Pull the AIO toner cover to the left, and remove it from the printer.

AIO link removal

- 1 Lift the scanner to the up position. Use a Phillips screwdriver to remove the screw (A) securing the AIO link to the AIO toner cover.



- 2 Return the flatbed to the down position.
- 3 Remove the screw (B) securing the AIO link to the flatbed unit.

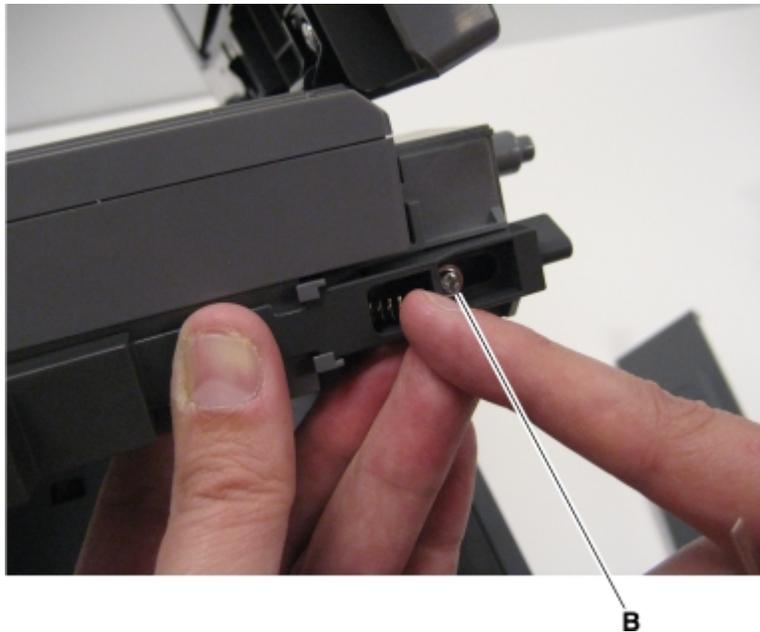


AIO release lever removal

- 1 Remove the right scanner cover. See “Right scanner cover removal” on page 220.
- 2 Remove the screw (A) securing the AIO link to the flatbed unit.



- 3 Disengage the AIO link from the flatbed unit.
- 4 Remove the screw (B) securing the AIO release lever to the flatbed.



- 5 Slide the AIO release lever towards the back of the flatbed.
- 6 Remove the spring and AIO release lever.

Installation note: When reinstalling the AIO release lever, place the release lever on the flatbed, and then inset the spring before replacing the screw.

Bin-full flag removal

- 1 Lift the scanner assembly and lock it into the up position.
- 2 Gently disconnect the three snaps (A) from the rear shaft of the redrive unit.



Controller board removal

⚠ CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD: After disconnecting the high-voltage power cable from the controller board, always check that the HVPS connection was not loosened. Make this check anytime you are working near the HVPS cable.

Warning—Potential Damage: Observe all ESD precautions while handling electrostatic discharge sensitive parts. See Handling ESD-sensitive parts on page 4-1.

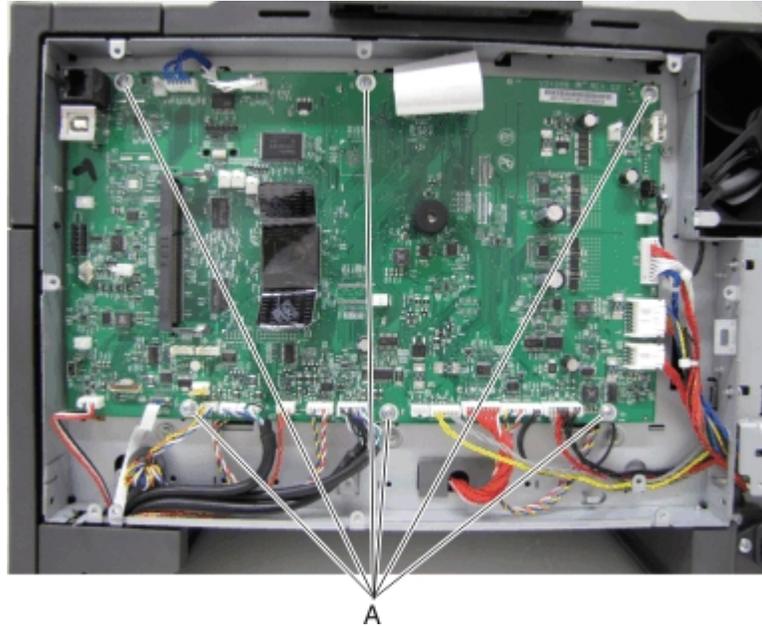
Warning—Potential Damage: Replace one of the following components, and perform a POR before replacing a second component. Never replace both of the components without performing a POR after installing each one, or the printer may be rendered inoperable:

- UICC
- Controller board

Warning—Potential Damage: Never install and remove components listed above as a method of troubleshooting components. **Once one of these components has been installed in a printer, and the printer is powered on, the component cannot be used in another printer. The component must be returned to the manufacturer.**

- 1 Remove the rear cover. See “Rear cover removal” on page 218.
- 2 Disconnect all cables from the controller board, and remove the six screws (A).

Note: To prevent damage, do not use tools when disconnecting the ribbon cables from JPH1 and JLCD1 on the controller board.



3 Remove the controller board.

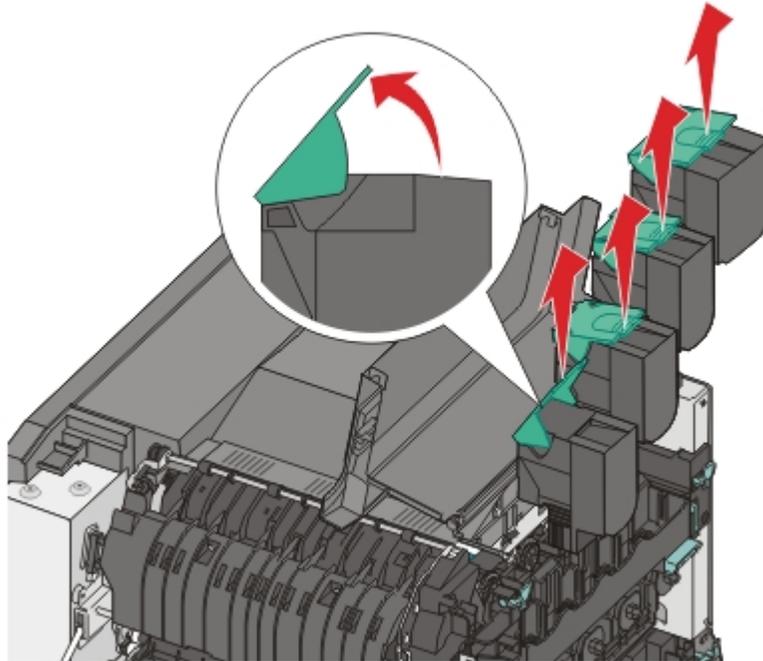
Warning—Potential Damage: When replacing the controller board, verify the cable from the high-voltage power supply is seated properly. The cable may have come loose from the HVPS. Print a few pages to verify the installation. If the pages are blank, then confirm that the high-voltage power supply cable is properly seated. The connector may have been loosened at the HVPS. A blank page that should have toner on it could be an indication that toner is applied to the ITU belt but not transferred. Therefore the toner goes into the ITU cleaner which cannot process massive amounts of toner. It is important to prevent extensive blank pages from being processed if they should have toner on them.

Note: After replacing this part, a scanner manual registration must be performed. See “Scanner manual registration” on page 192.

Developer unit removal

Note: The developer units are not FRUs.

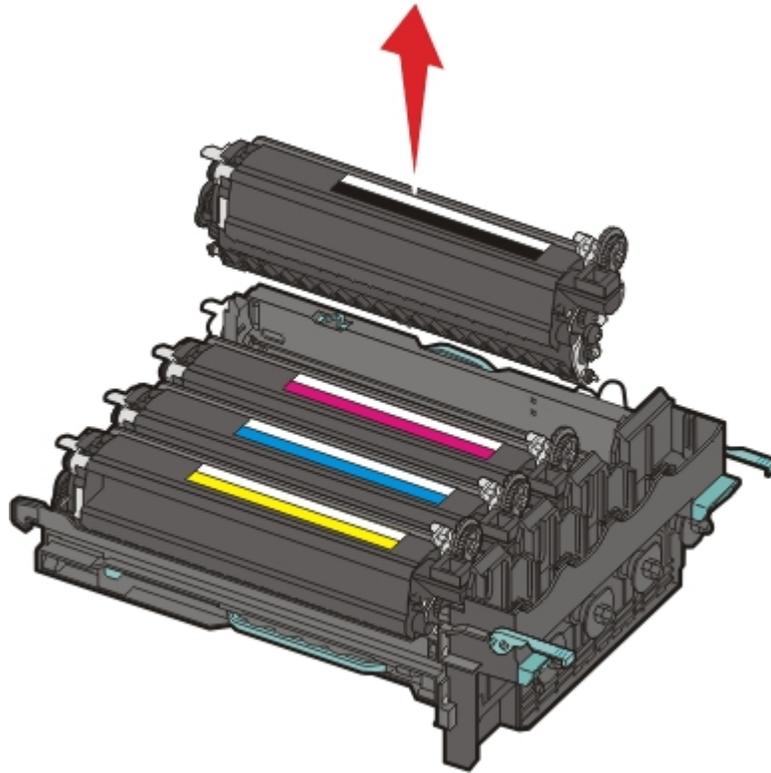
- 1 Open the toner access door.
- 2 Remove the toner cartridges.



- 3 Remove the imaging unit. See “Imaging unit (IU) removal” on page 262.

Warning—Potential Damage: Do not touch the underside of the imaging unit. This could damage it.

- 4 Remove the developer unit(s).



Duplex reference edge removal

- 1 Open the front door.
- 2 Remove the two screws (A), the two screws (B), the two screws (C), and the two screws (D) in the back of the duplex aligner.



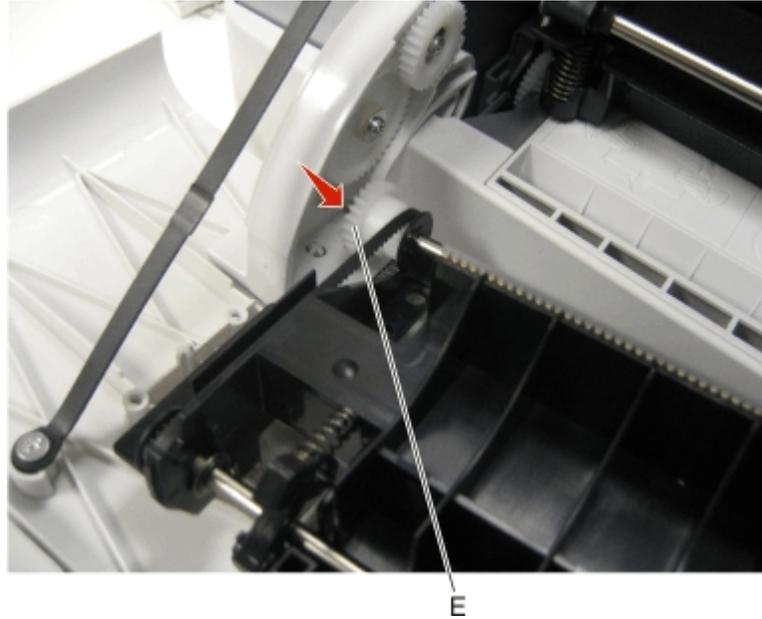
A(88A0322)

B(88A0324)

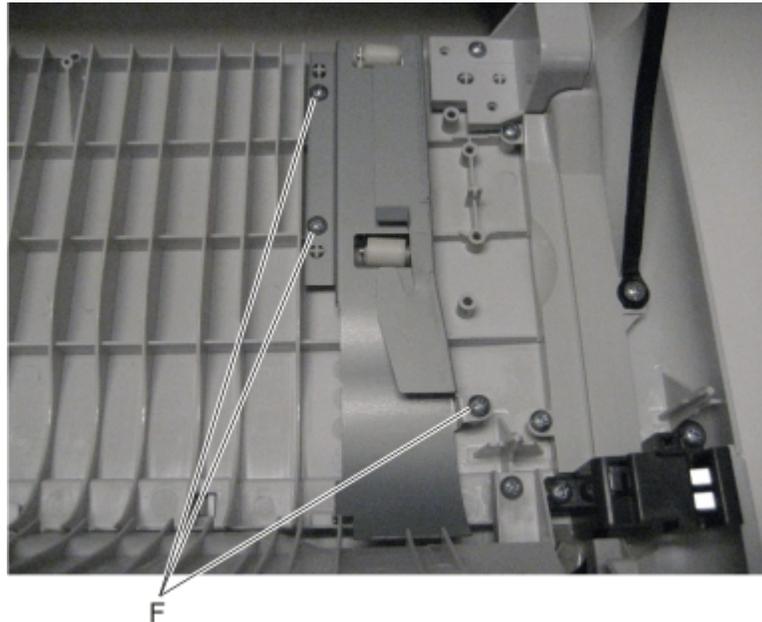
C(88A0322)

D(88A0323)

- 3 Lift the duplex aligner on the right side, and disengage the gears (E) on the left.



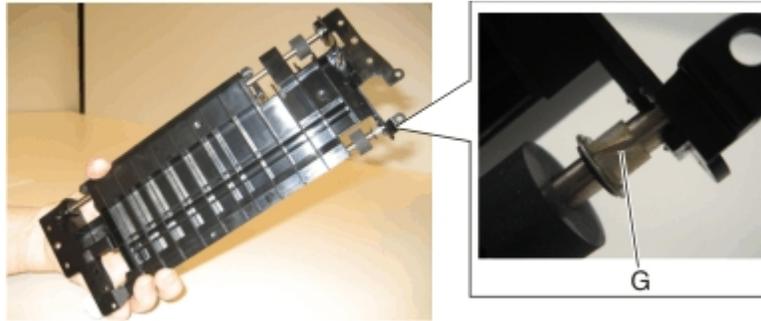
- 4 Remove the three screws (F) from the duplex reference guide, and remove the guide.



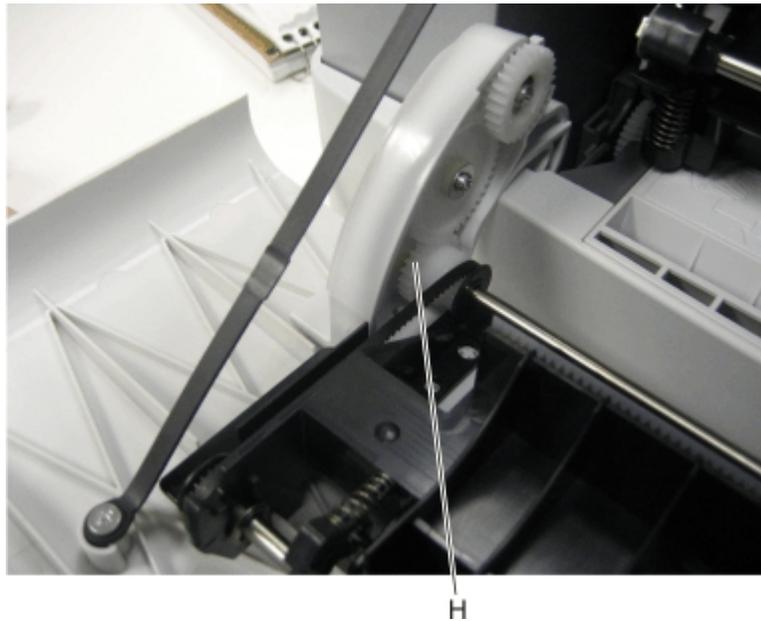
Installation notes:

- a Align the duplex reference guide so that the tabs are inserted into the slots, and the top of the reference guide fits under the door ribs.
- b Replace the three screws in the duplex reference guide.
- c Be sure that the shaft and bearing have not shifted out of the guide. If they have, then make sure that the bearing on the left is aligned with the slot (G) facing down (towards the front door).

Note: Improperly aligned bearings or seated shafts may cause vibration and noise in the front door.



d Align the duplex aligner guide so that the gears (H) mesh on the left.

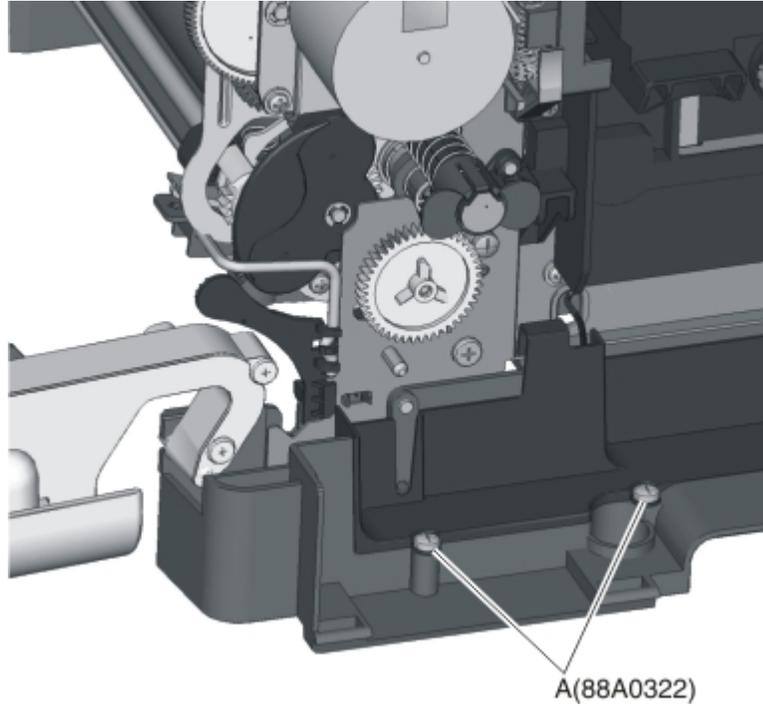


e Replace the eight screws in the duplex aligner.

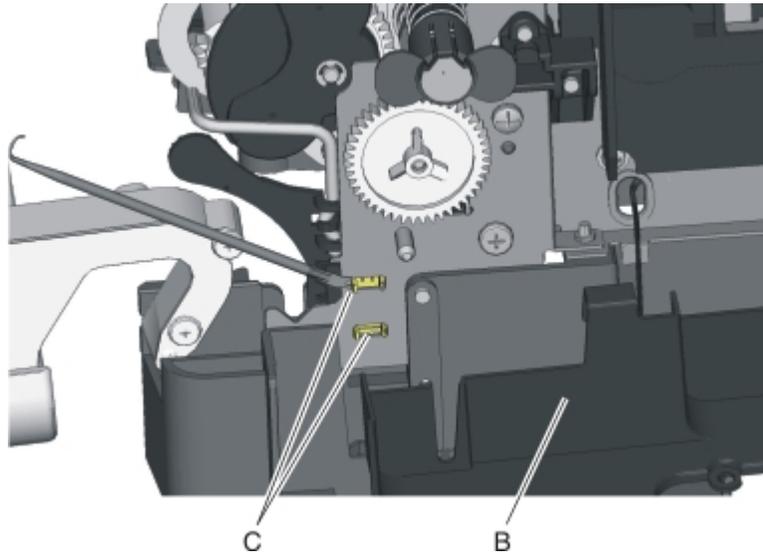
f Close the front door.

Duplex sensor removal

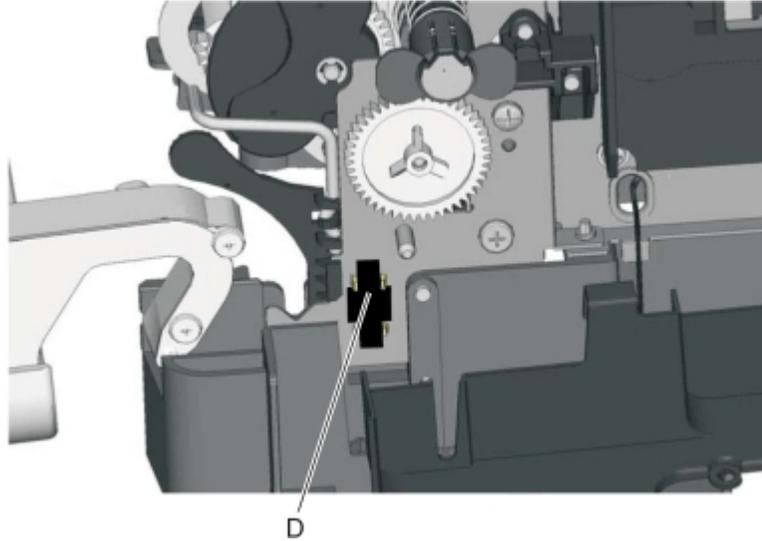
- 1 Remove the imaging unit. See “Imaging unit (IU) removal” on page 262.
- 2 Remove the two screws (A) from the cable cover.



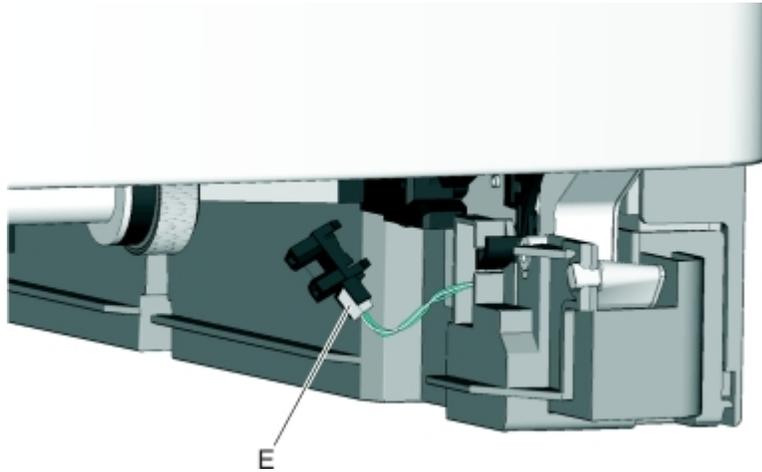
- 3 Pull the corner of the cable cover (B) away from the right side to access the two sensor posts (C).



- 4 Remove the sensor plate (D).



- 5 Push in on the latches to disconnect the duplex sensor from the printer.
6 Disconnect the cable (E) from the duplex sensor.



Installation notes:

- a Clean the contact surface where you removed the sensor retaining plate, or where you need to install the new one.
- b Install the new sensor.
 - Note:** Make sure the clamps on the legs of the sensor latch to the metal frame.
- c Remove the backing from the new plate, and place the plate on the surface between the sensor mounting latches.

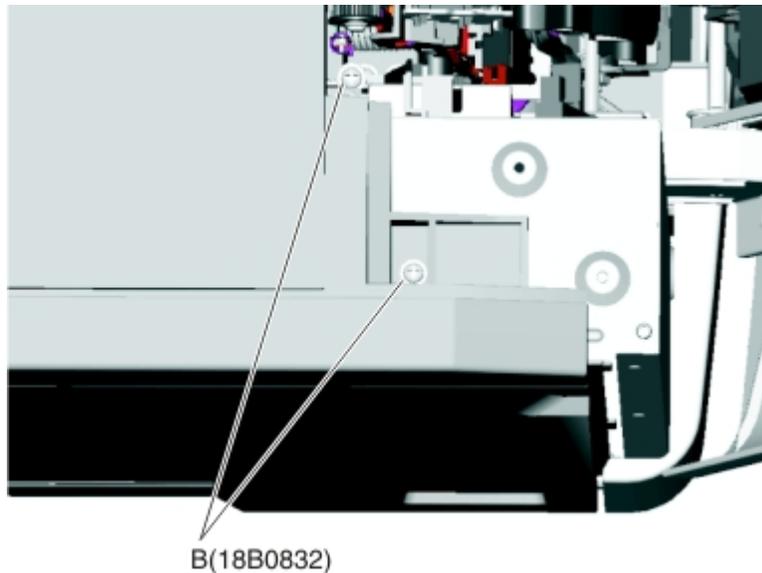
EP drive assembly removal

- 1 Remove the left cover assembly. See “Left cover assembly removal” on page 216.
- 2 Remove the transfer module. See “Transfer module removal” on page 296.

- 3 Disconnect the three cables (A) from the LVPS.

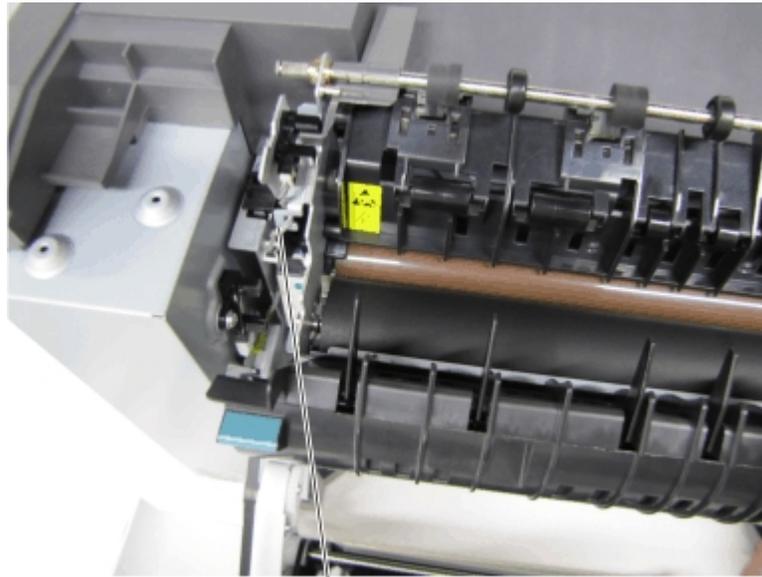


- 4 Remove the ADF assembly. See “ADF assembly removal” on page 228.
- 5 Remove the flatbed scanner assembly. See “Flatbed scanner assembly removal” on page 249.
- 6 Remove the two top screws (B) holding the top cover to the LVPS shield.



- 7 Remove the narrow media sensor flag. See “Narrow media sensor flag removal” on page 277.
- 8 Press to *unsnap* the tabs (C), and gently rotate the exit deflector to remove.

- 9** Disconnect the cable (D) from the narrow media sensor, and unrout the cable from its retainer.



D

- 10** Unhook the springs (E) from both sides of the fuser.



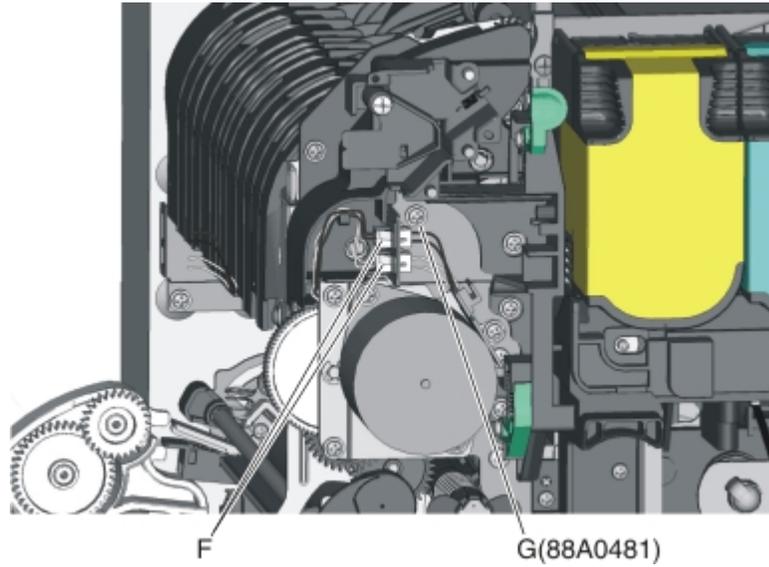
E



E

- 11** Disconnect the thermistor cables (F), and pull them over the retainer.

- 12** Remove the screw and grounding washer (G) on the right side of the frame.



Note: Be careful to not lose the grounding washer.

- 13** Rotate the top of the fuser toward the front, and then slide to the left to align the fuser side frames with the flat area of the shaft.
- 14** Remove the two screws (H).

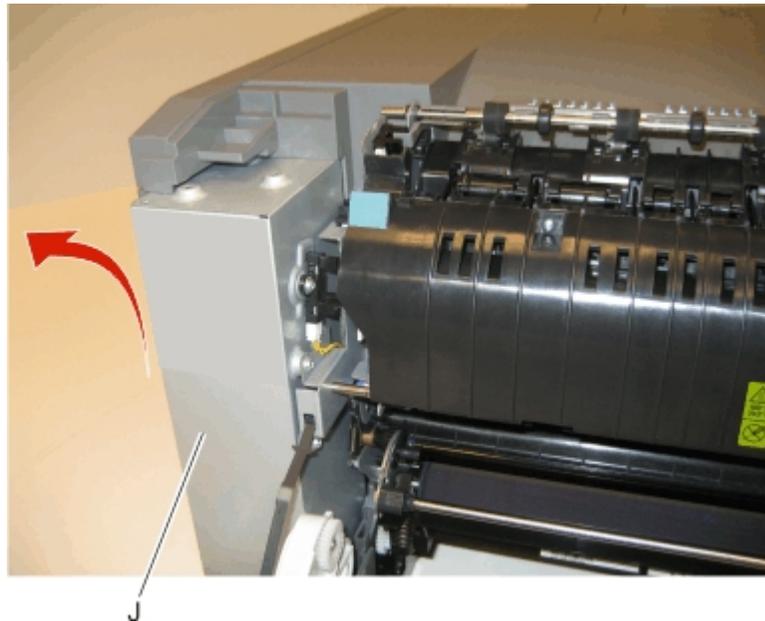


- 15 Disconnect the fuser exit cable (I).



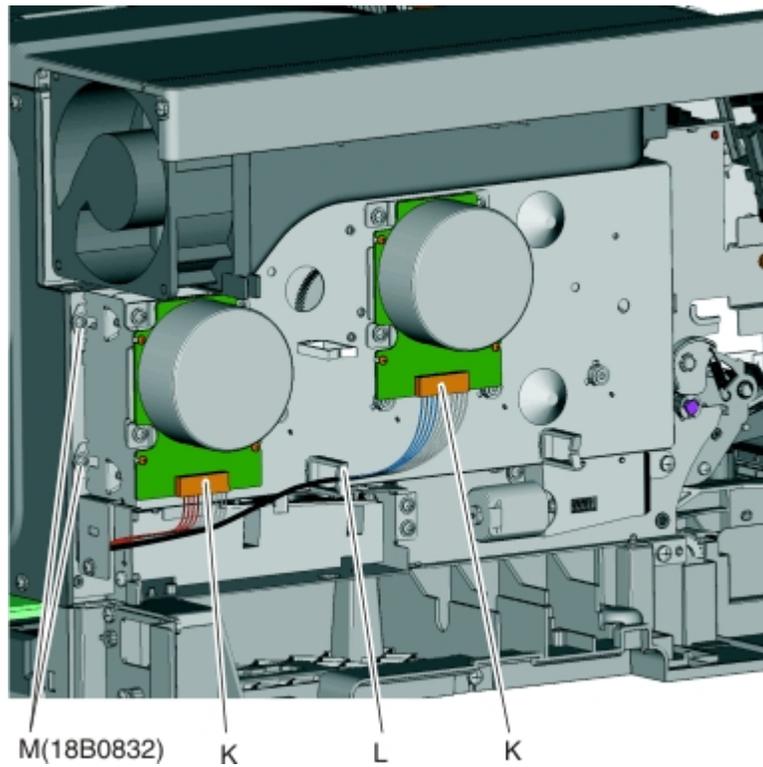
- 16 Lift the front left corner of the top cover, and tilt the LVPS cage (J) to remove. There are two posts at the bottom of the cage on the left side that need to be disengaged.

Note: Be careful to not damage the fuser exit sensor as it remains in the cage.

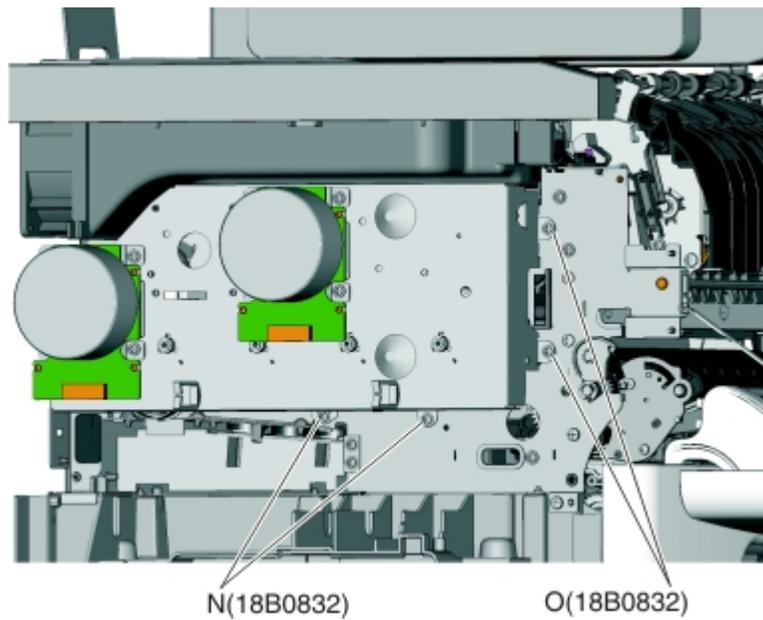


- 17 Disconnect the cables from the motors (K) and the two cables from the retainer (L).

18 Remove the two screws (M) from the rear, and unrout all of the cables.



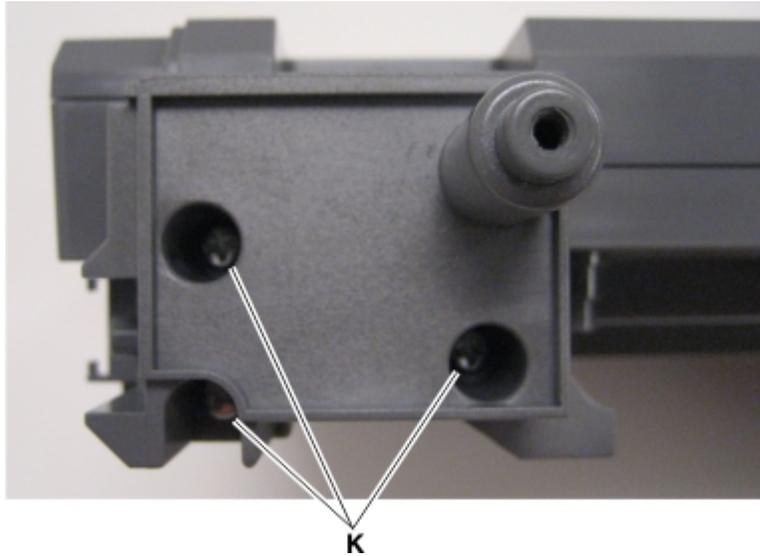
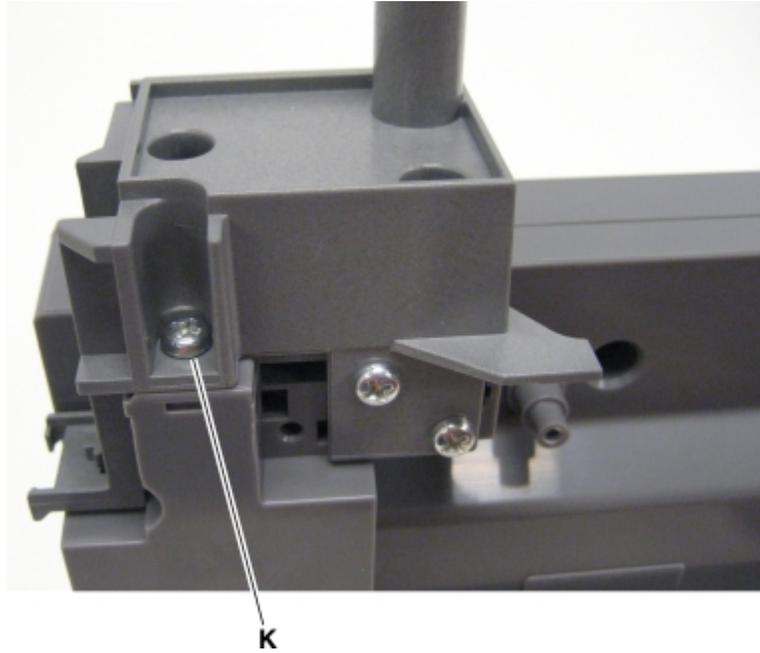
19 Remove the two screws (N) from below the EP drive assembly, and the two screws (O) from the right of the EP drive assembly.



20 Lift the EP drive assembly, and remove.

Flatbed pivot link removal

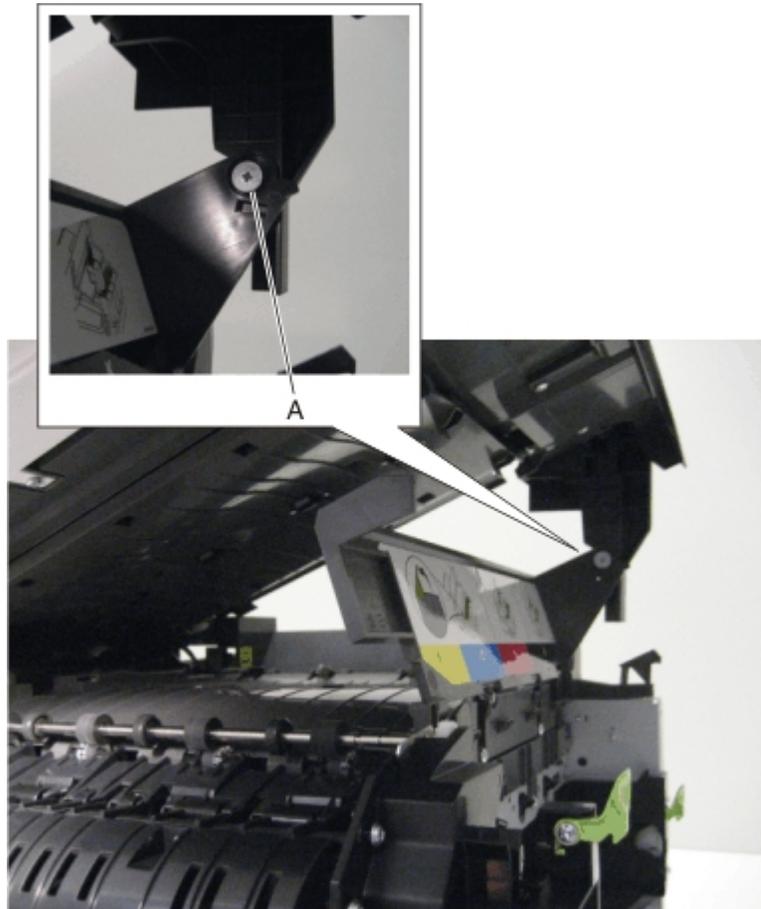
- 1 Remove the AIO link. See “AIO link removal” on page 233.
- 2 Remove the right scanner cover. See “Right scanner cover removal” on page 220.
- 3 Remove the AIO release lever. See “AIO release lever removal” on page 234.
- 4 Remove the screws (A) securing the flatbed link to the flatbed.



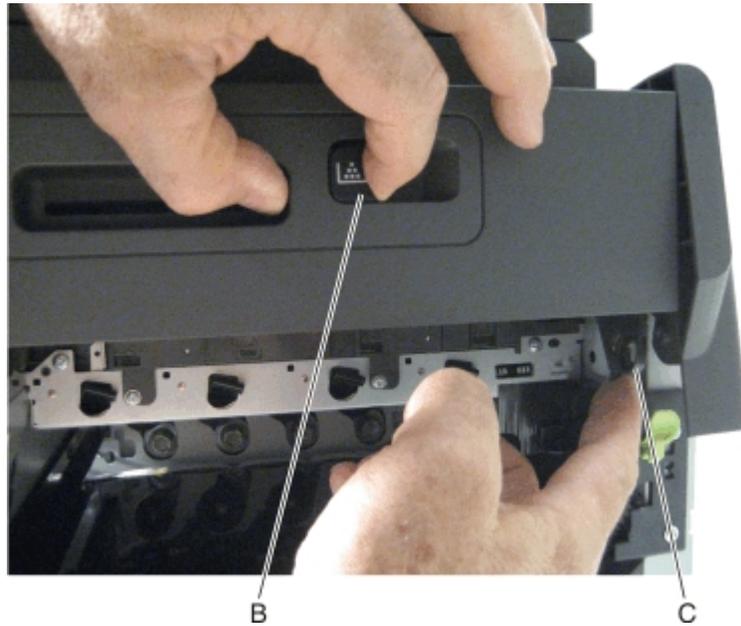
- 5 Remove the flatbed pivot link.

Flatbed scanner assembly removal

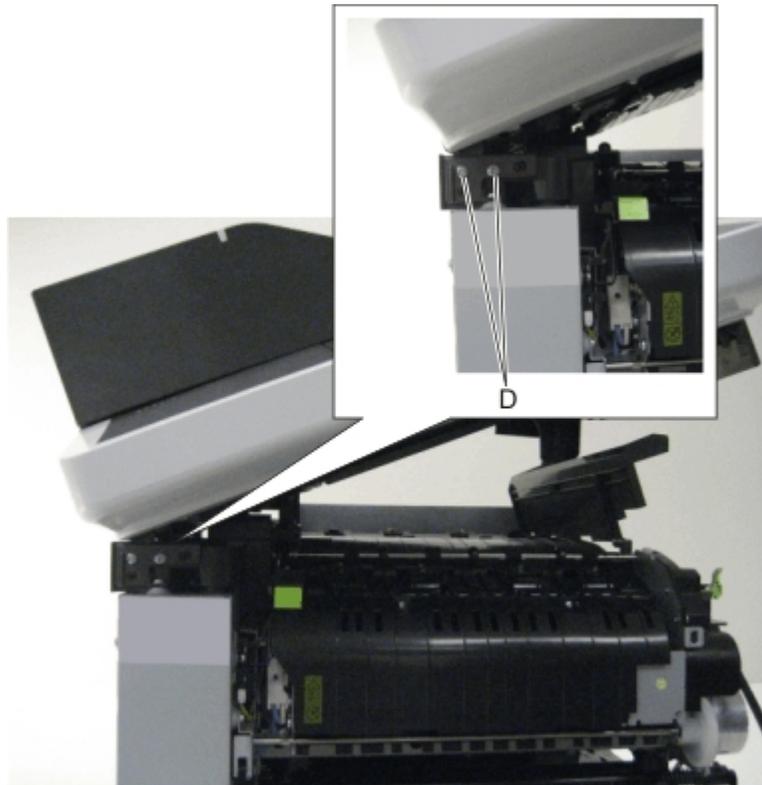
- 1 Remove the waste toner bottle. See “Waste toner bottle removal” on page 300.
- 2 Remove the right cover assembly. See “Right cover assembly removal” on page 220.
- 3 Lift the ADF assembly.
- 4 Remove the screw (A) from the right rear side lift lock.



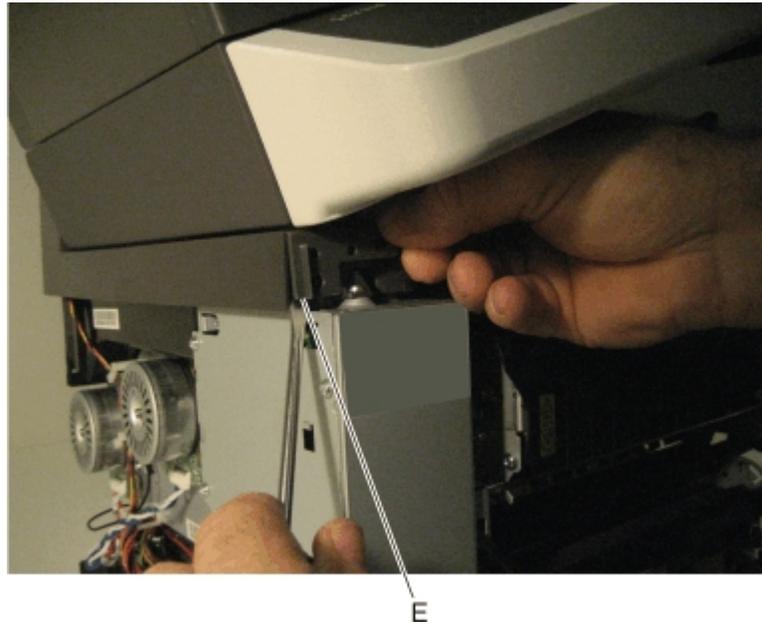
- 5 Unlock the lift lock (B) at the top of the scanner, lower the flatbed scanner assembly until there is resistance, and disconnect the lift lock arm from the joint (C).



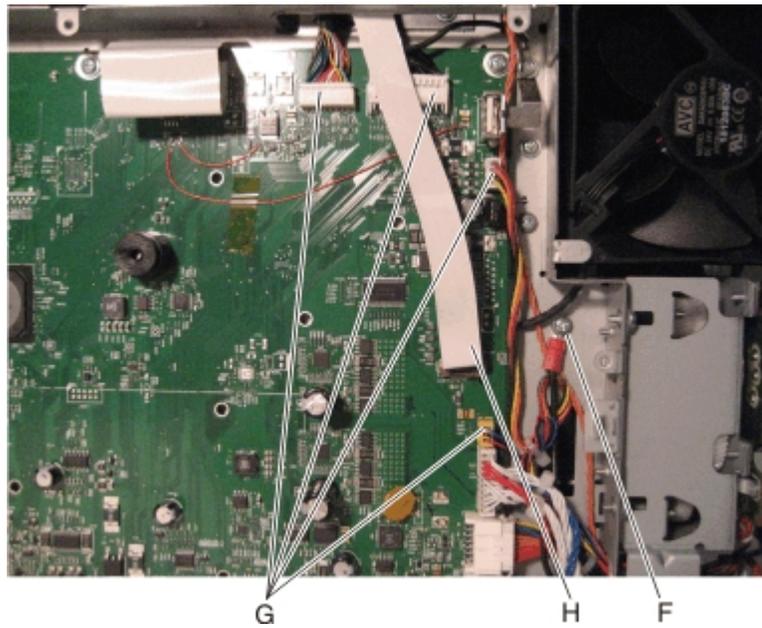
- 6 Remove the two screws (D) from the front left scanner hinge.



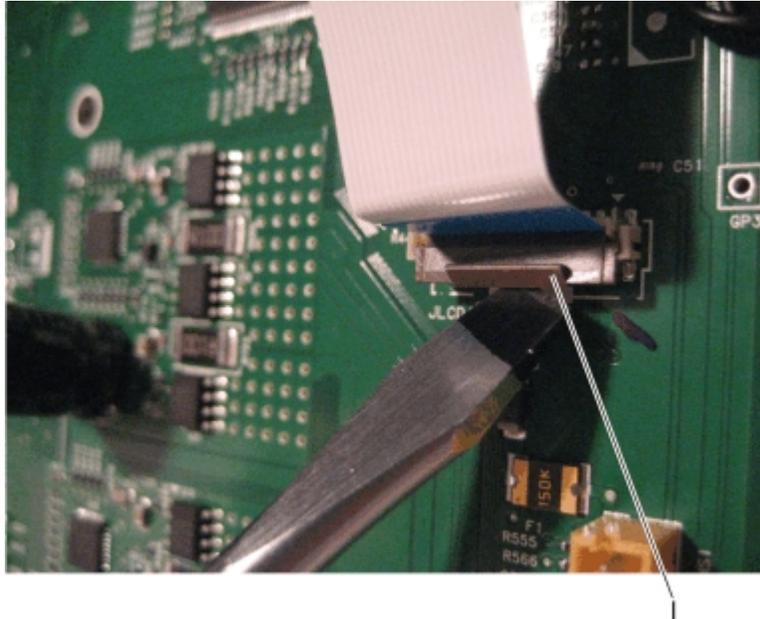
- 7 Use a screwdriver to disconnect the left hinge (E) from the left side of the printer.



- 8 Remove the ground screw (F), and disconnect the four cables (G) and the ribbon cable (H.)



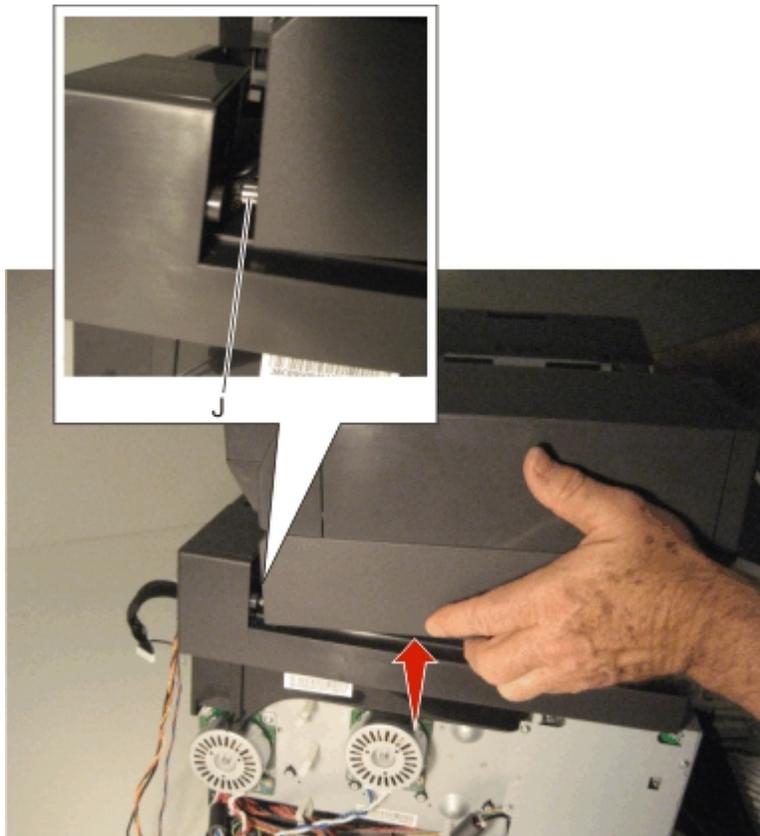
Note: Disconnect the ribbon cable by using a screwdriver to pull the pivot (I) out and rotate up. See “Ribbon cable connectors” on page 198 for the proper way to handle ribbon cables.



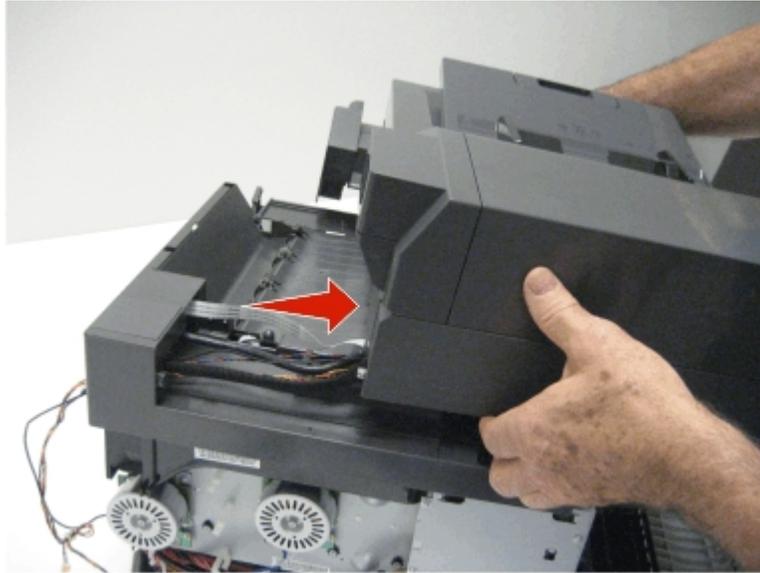
Note: After replacing this part, a scanner manual registration must be performed. See “Scanner manual registration” on page 192. A scanner calibration reset must also be performed. See “Scanner calibration reset” on page 185.

Installation note: To install the ribbon cable, rotate the latch down and push it back into the connector. Be careful to not damage the latch.

- 9 Lift the flatbed scanner assembly, and slide the latch (J) out of place.



10 Remove the flatbed scanner assembly.



Note: Gently pull the flatbed scanner assembly cables through the opening when removing the flatbed scanner assembly.



Front logo cover removal

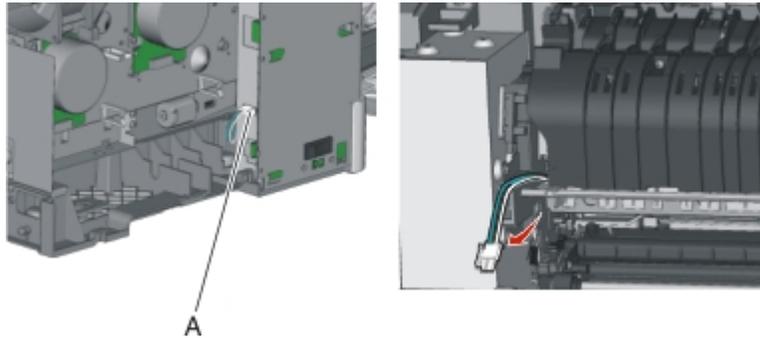
1 Grasp the front logo, and pull sharply.

Note: A flat-tipped screw may have to be used at the outer edges on the CX510. This cover part does not give access to any other part and therefore does not need to be removed except for replacement

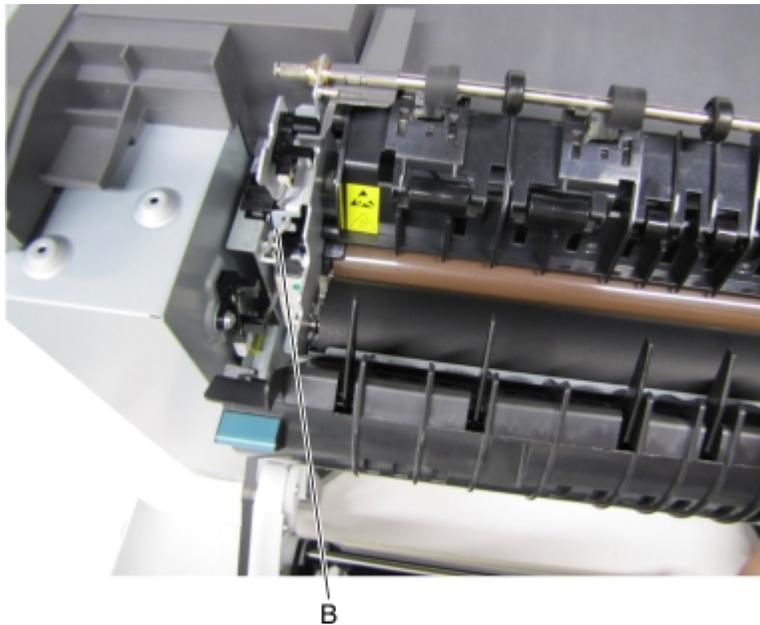
Fuser assembly removal

- 1 Remove the right cover assembly. See “Right cover assembly removal” on page 220.
- 2 Remove the left cover assembly. See “Left cover assembly removal” on page 216.
- 3 Disconnect the two-wire fuser cable (A) from the LVPS.
- 4 Position the fuser cable so that it can be pulled through from the front of the printer, and guide the cable through to the front.

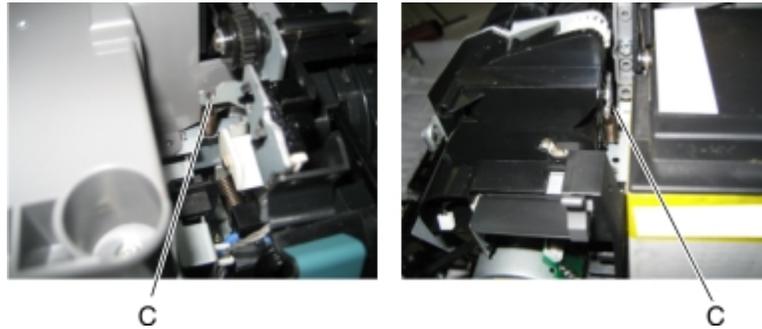
Warning—Potential Damage: Be careful not to damage the cable by pulling too hard or cutting the cable insulation.



- 5 Disconnect the cable (B) from the bin-full/narrow media sensor, and unroute the cable from its retainer.

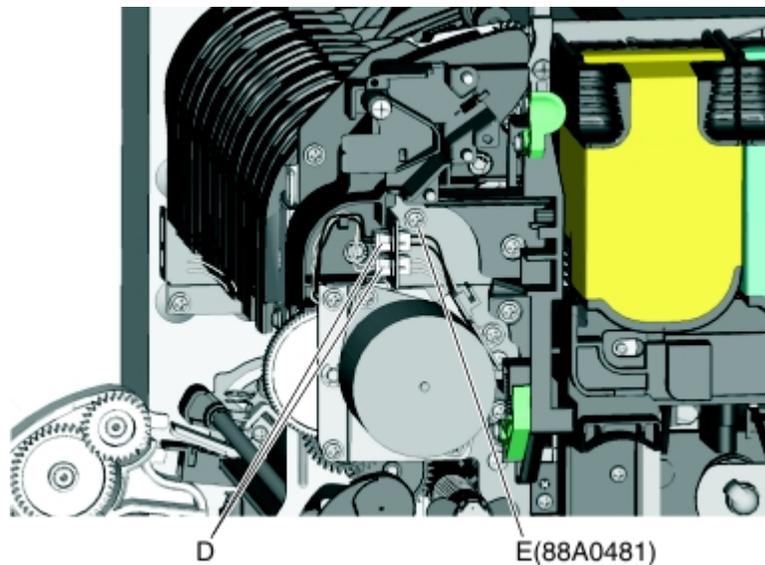


- 6 Unhook the springs (C) from both sides of the fuser.



- 7 Disconnect the thermistor cables (D), and pull them over the retainer.

- 8 Remove the screw and grounding washer (E) on the right side of the frame.



Note: Be careful to not lose the grounding washer.

- 9 Rotate the top of the fuser toward the front, and then slide to the left to align the fuser side frames with the flat area of the shaft.
- 10 Lift the fuser, and remove.

Warning—Potential Damage: Be careful to not interfere with or damage the fuser exit sensor to the left of the fuser when rotating.

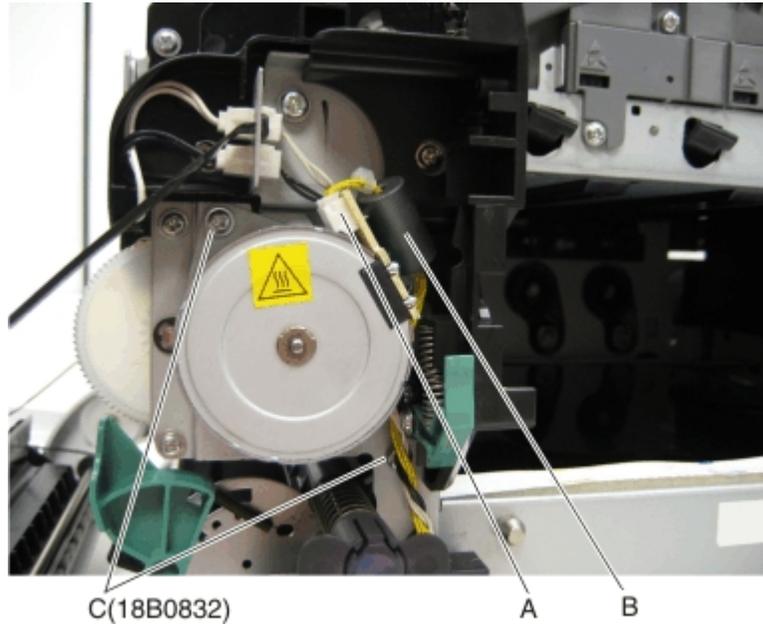
Installation note: Install the narrow media flag to the fuser before rotating the fuser into the printer.

Fuser drive motor assembly removal

- 1 Remove the right cover assembly. See “Right cover assembly removal” on page 220.
- 2 Disconnect the cable (A) from the fuser drive motor assembly.

Note: If you remove the toroid (B) from the cable, be sure to return the toroid to the cable when reinstalling.

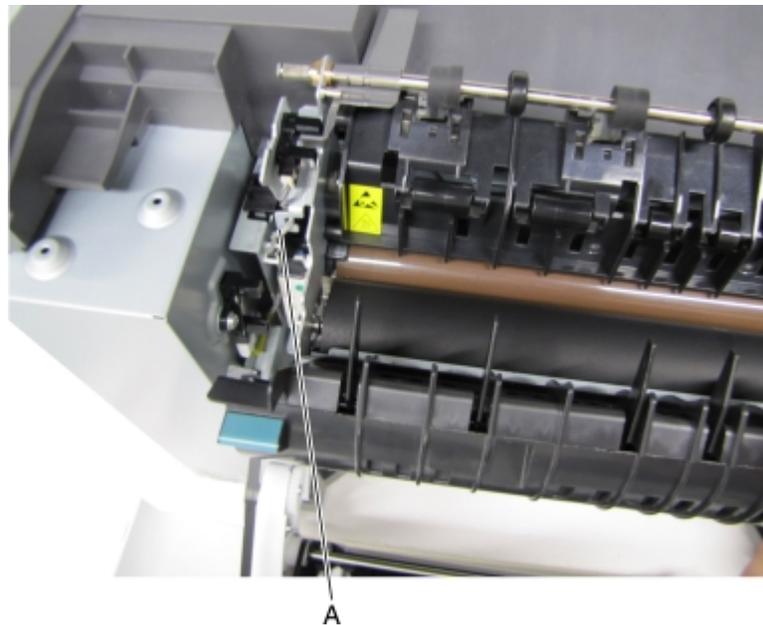
- 3 Remove the two screws (C).



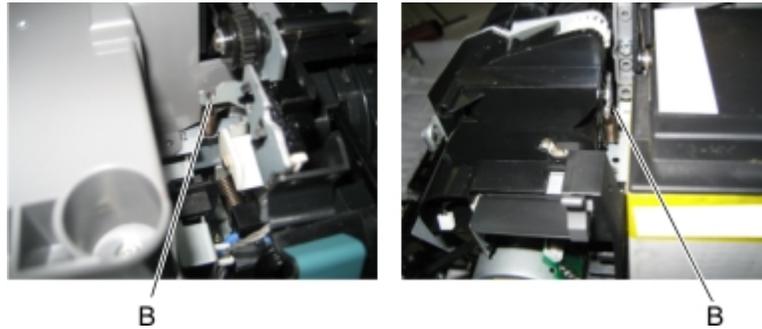
- 4 Remove the fuser drive motor assembly.

Fuser exit sensor removal

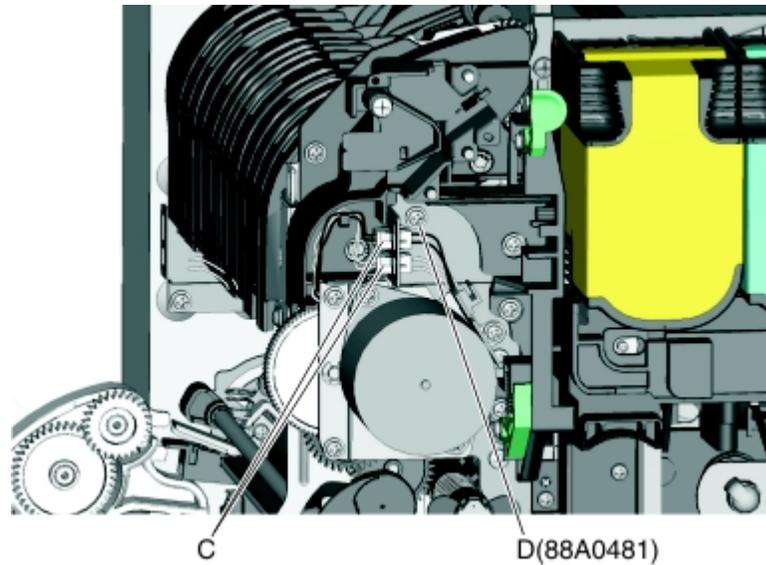
- 1 Remove the left cover assembly. See “Left cover assembly removal” on page 216.
- 2 Remove the fuser cables from the retainer to give needed slack.
- 3 Disconnect the cable (A) from the bin-full/narrow media sensor, and unroute the cable from its retainer.



- 4 Unhook the springs (B) from both sides of the fuser.



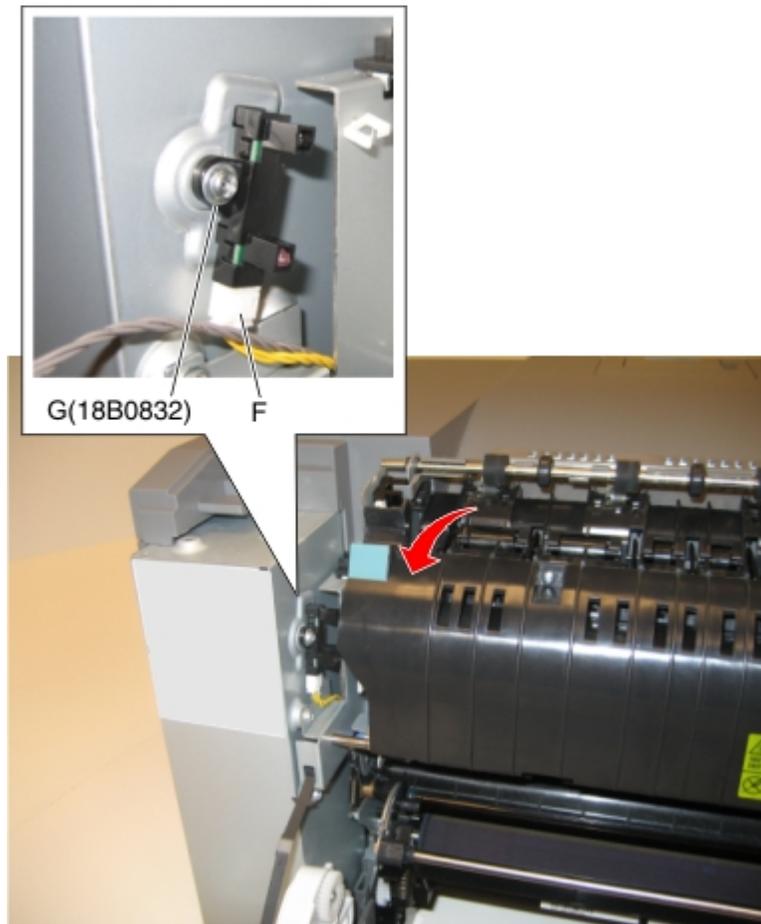
- 5 Disconnect the thermistor cables (C).
- 6 Remove the screw and grounding washer (D) on the right side of the frame.



Note: Be careful to not lose the grounding washer.

- 7 Rotate the top of the fuser toward the front to gain access to screw (E).
- 8 Disconnect the cable (F), and remove the screw (E) from the fuser exit sensor.

- 9 Remove the lower end of the sensor with a flat-blade screwdriver, and gently pull the sensor from the frame.

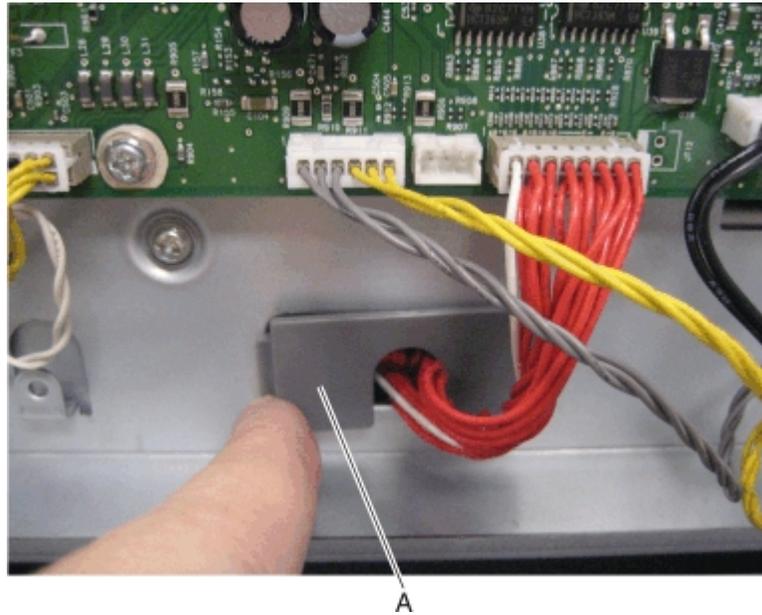


High-voltage power supply (HVPS) removal

- 1 Remove the rear cover. See “Rear cover removal” on page 218.
- 2 Remove the controller board. See “Controller board removal” on page 235.

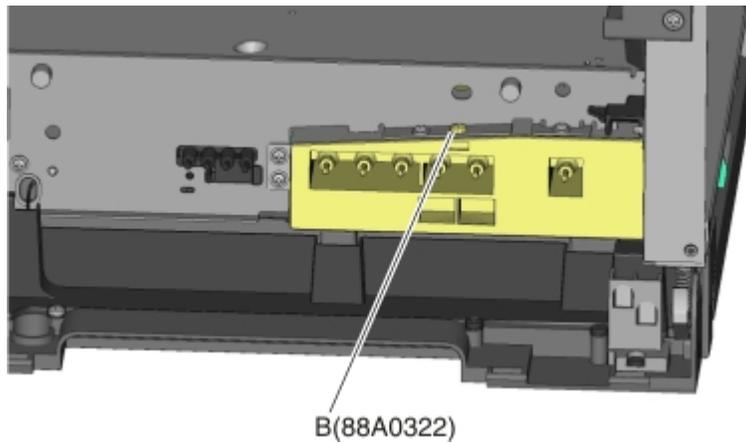
Note: Pay close attention of the routing of the HVPS cable when removing the controller board.

- 3 Remove the cable cover (A).



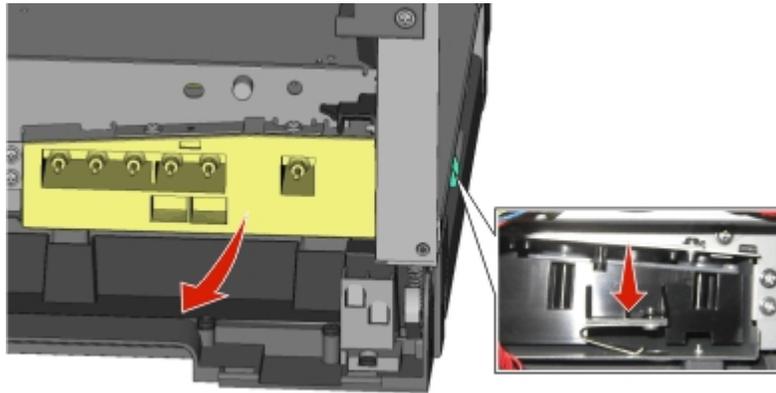
Note: Leave the cable attached to the HVPS until the HVPS has been removed.

- 4 Remove the transfer module. See “Transfer module removal” on page 296.
- 5 Remove the waste toner bottle. See “Waste toner bottle removal” on page 300.
- 6 Remove the screw (B) securing the HVPS.



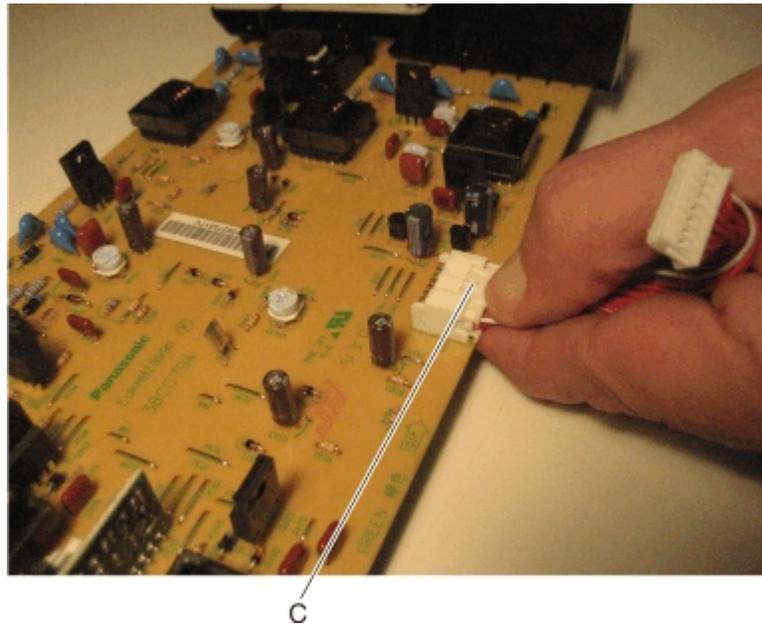
- 7 Remove the left cover assembly. See “Left cover assembly removal” on page 216.

- 8 Press down on the spring mount, and carefully slide the HVPS out by pulling from one side and pushing from the other. Release the pressure on the spring mount, and pull the HVPS the remaining distance.



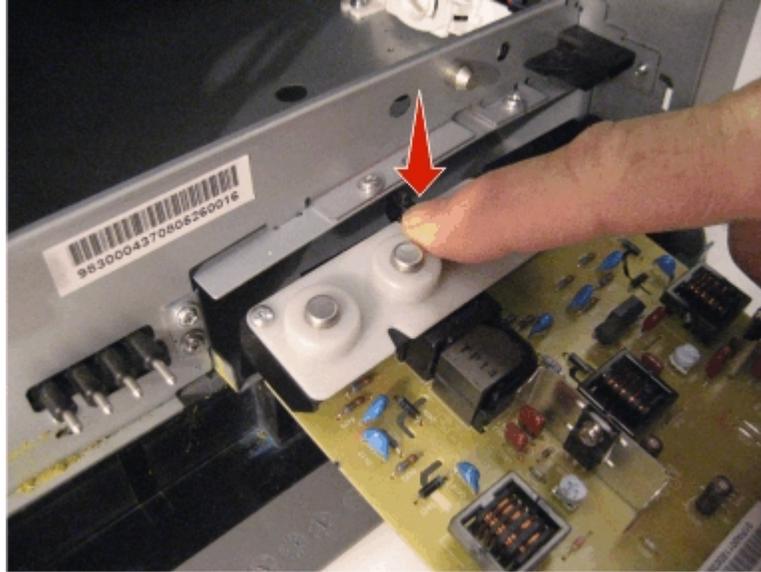
- 9 Slide the HVPS out to remove.
- 10 Press down on the latch (C) to disconnect the cable from the HVPS board.

 **CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD:** After disconnecting the high-voltage power cable from the controller board, always check that the HVPS connection was not loosened. Make this check anytime you are working near the HVPS cable.



Installation notes:

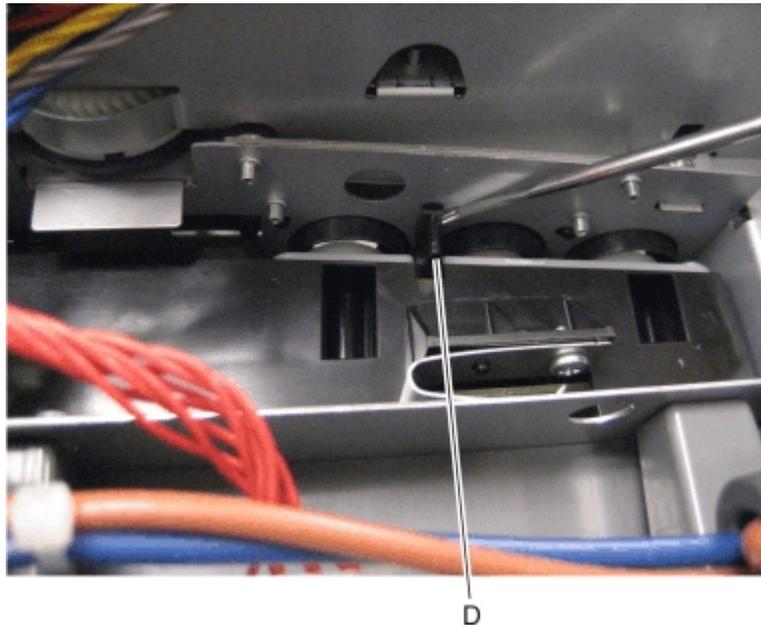
- a** To install the new HVPS board, insert the spring end of the HVPS board while compressing the spring, as shown below.



- b** Slide the HVPS into position while holding its sides, as shown below. Do not allow the card to flex and touch the cage.



- c Check the position of the card at the left side of the printer. The small vertical post (D) in the endcap has to be positioned in the hole above it, as show below.



- d Install the new cable, making sure the connector to the board is locked into position.

Note: Reinstall the screw to hold the HVPS to the right side of the printer.

Imaging unit (IU) removal

Note: The imaging unit is a customer replacement unit and is not a FRU.

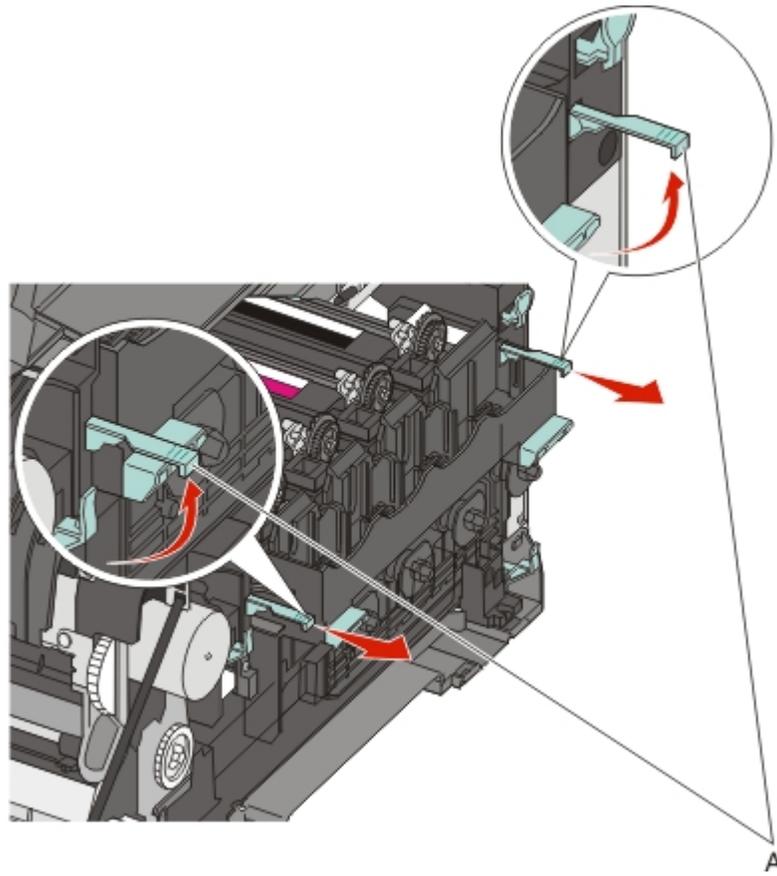
Note: The imaging unit contains:

- Photoconductor unit
- Developer units

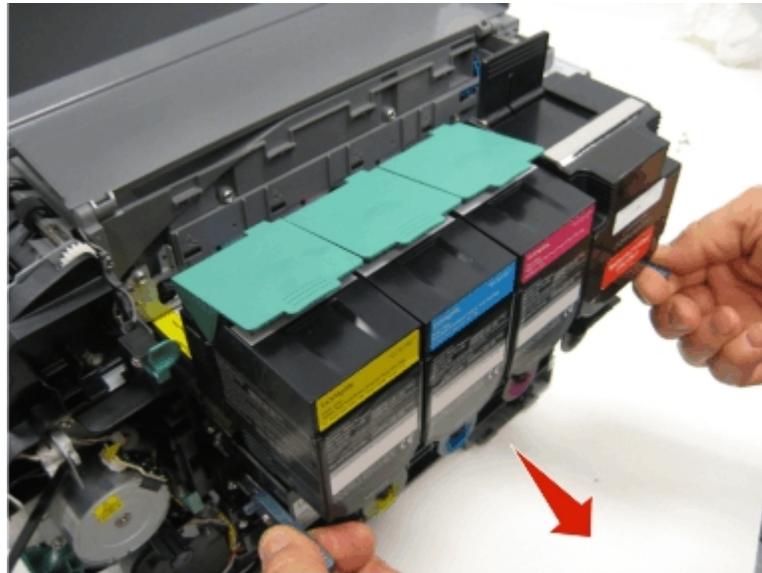
To remove only the photoconductor, remove the entire imaging unit, remove the developer units, place the original developer units in the new photoconductor, and reinstall the imaging unit. When you replace the imaging kit, you are replacing *both* the photoconductor and the developer units.

- 1 Remove the waste toner bottle. See “Waste toner bottle removal” on page 300.
- 2 Remove the toner cartridges.

3 Lift the two latches (A) to unlock the imaging unit.



4 Pull the two latches until the imaging unit meets resistance.



5 Press and hold the handles (B) on the right and left sides, and pull the imaging unit straight out.

Note: Avoid touching the bottom of the imaging unit.



B

Low-voltage power supply (LVPS) assembly removal

- 1 Remove the left cover assembly. See “Left cover assembly removal” on page 216.
- 2 Press in on the latches to disconnect the three cables (A) from the LVPS.



A

3 Remove the six screws (B).



B(18B0832)

4 Remove the LVPS.

Warning—Potential Damage: If you receive a new low-voltage power supply with a voltage selector switch (C), then be sure to set the switch to the correct setting for your voltage requirements before installing the low-voltage power supply. The switch can be set for either 115 V or 230 V. Failure to do so could result in damage to the power supply.

Note: If there is no switch, the LVPS automatically senses the line voltage.

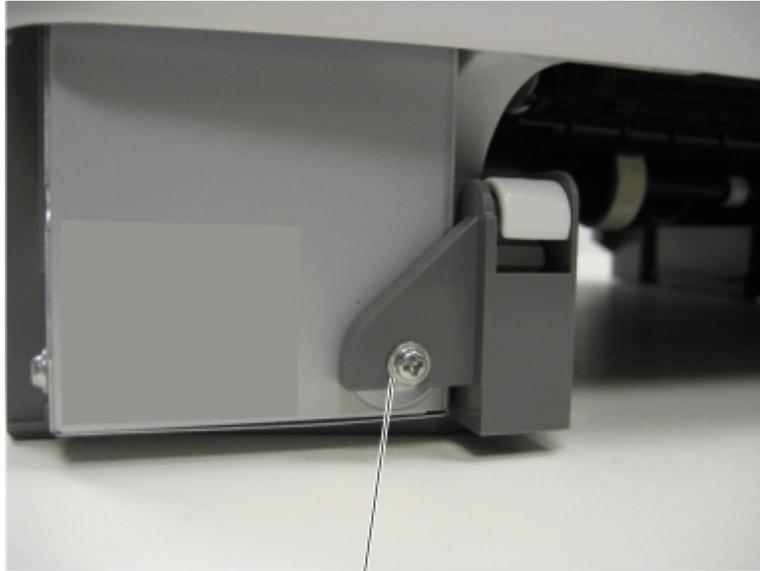


C

Lower left frame removal

Note: The right and left lower frames are in the same FRU.

- 1 Remove the media tray, and remove the screw (A) from the front.



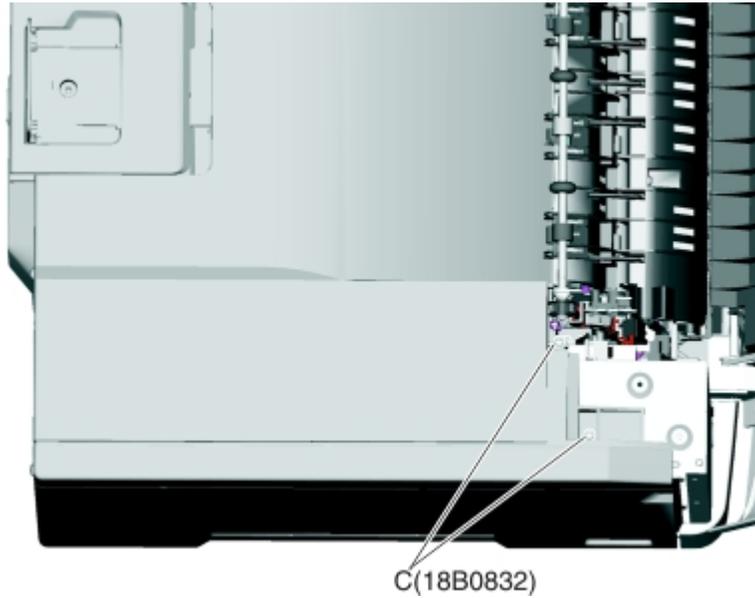
A(18B0832)

- 2 Remove the waste toner bottle. See “Waste toner bottle removal” on page 300.
- 3 Remove the imaging unit. See “Imaging unit (IU) removal” on page 262.
- 4 Disconnect the three cables (B) from the LVPS.



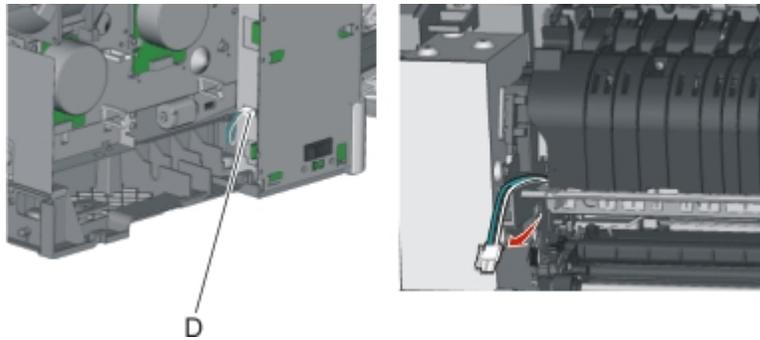
- 5 Remove the flatbed scanner assembly. See “Flatbed scanner assembly removal” on page 249.

- 6 Remove the two top screws (C) near the front holding the top cover to the LVPS shield.

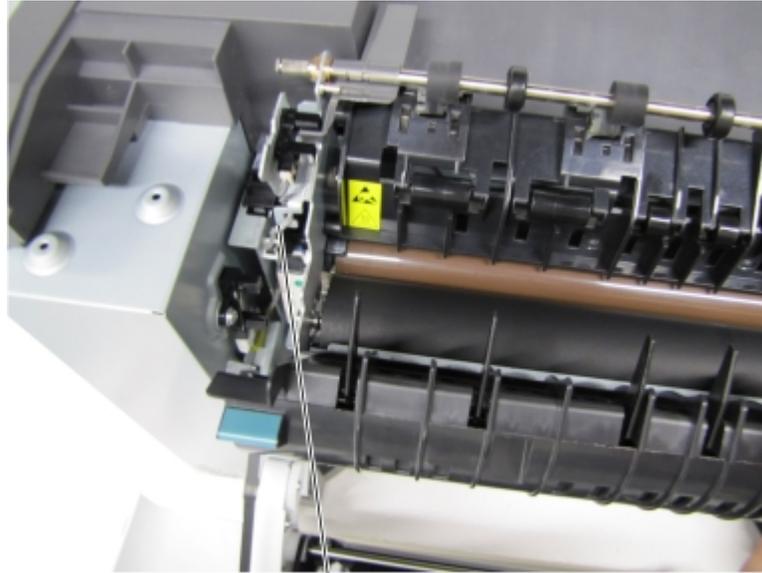


- 7 Position the fuser cable (D) so that it can be pulled through from the front of the printer, and guide the cable through to the front.

Warning—Potential Damage: Be careful not to damage the cable by pulling too hard or cutting the cable insulation.

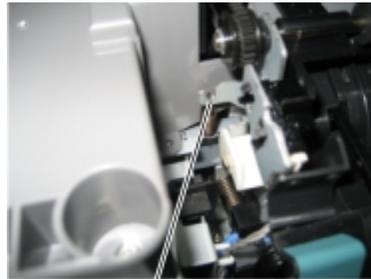


- 8** Disconnect the cable (E) from the bin-full/narrow media sensor, and unrout the cable from its retainer.



E

- 9** Unhook the springs (F) from both sides of the fuser.



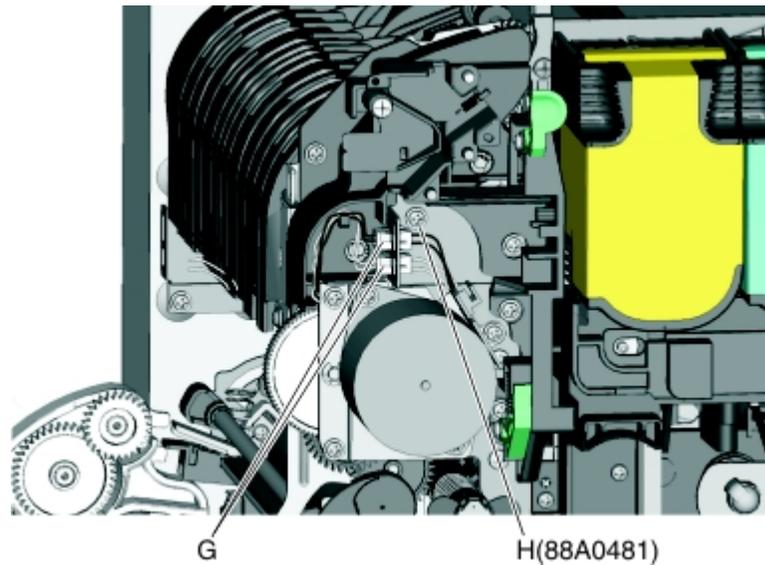
F



F

- 10** Disconnect the thermistor cables (G), and pull them over the retainer.

- 11** Remove the screw and grounding washer (H) on the right side of the frame.



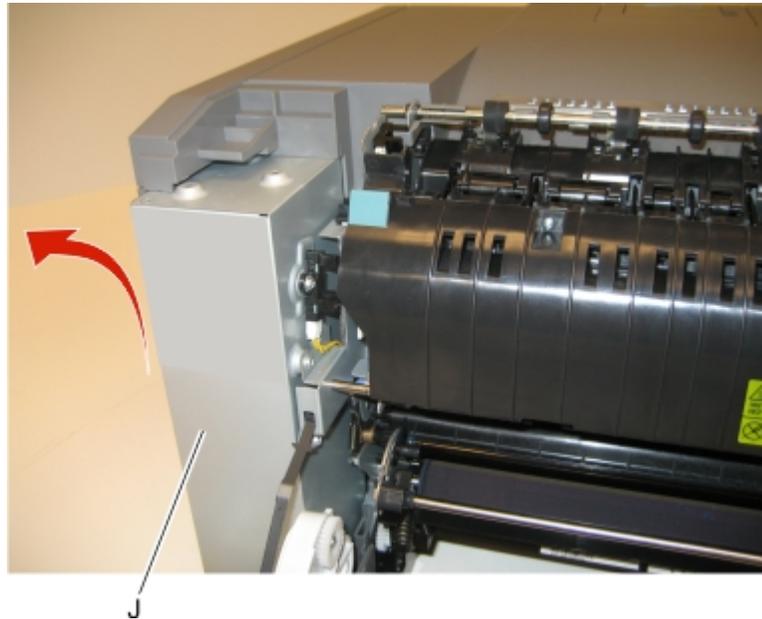
Note: Be careful to not lose the grounding washer.

- 12** Rotate the top of the fuser toward the front, and then slide to the left to align the fuser side frames with the flat area of the shaft.
- 13** Disconnect the fuser exit sensor cable (I).



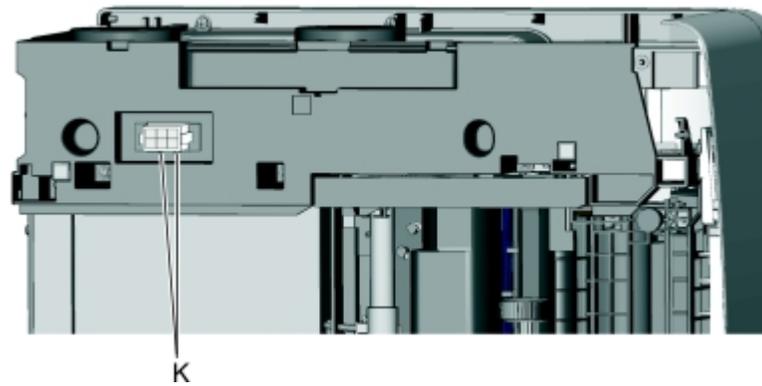
- 14** Lift the front left corner of the top cover, and tilt the LVPS cage (J) to remove. There are two posts at the bottom of the cage on the left side that need to be disengaged.

Note: Be careful with the fuser exit sensor which remains with the cage.

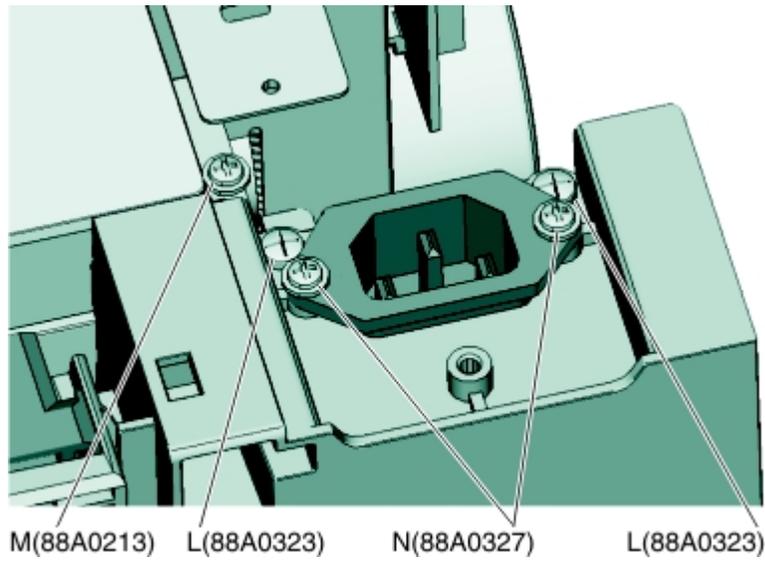


15 Place the printer on its right side.

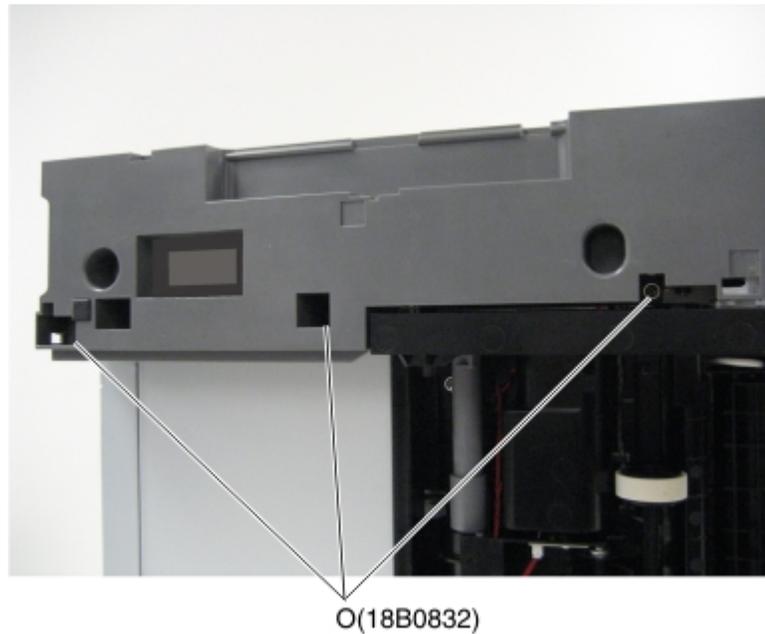
16 Remove the tray 2 connector (K) by pinching the tabs together and pushing the connector into the printer.



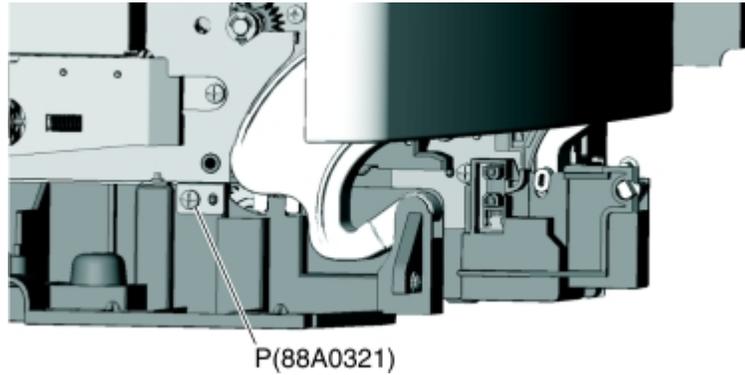
- 17** At the rear of the printer, remove the two screws (L) from the AC receptacle, and the ground screw (M), and the two screws (N) holding the plastic shield.



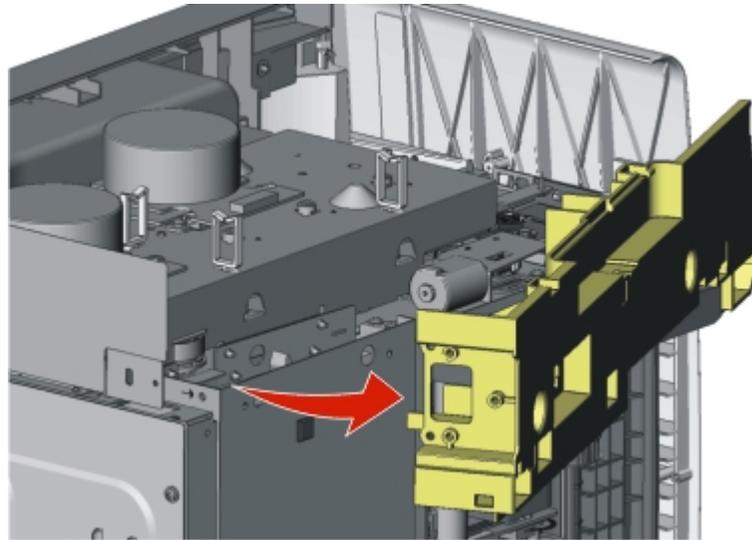
- 18** Remove the AC receptacle from the left lower frame.
- 19** Remove the three screws (O) securing the left lower frame.



20 Remove the screw (P) above the frame.



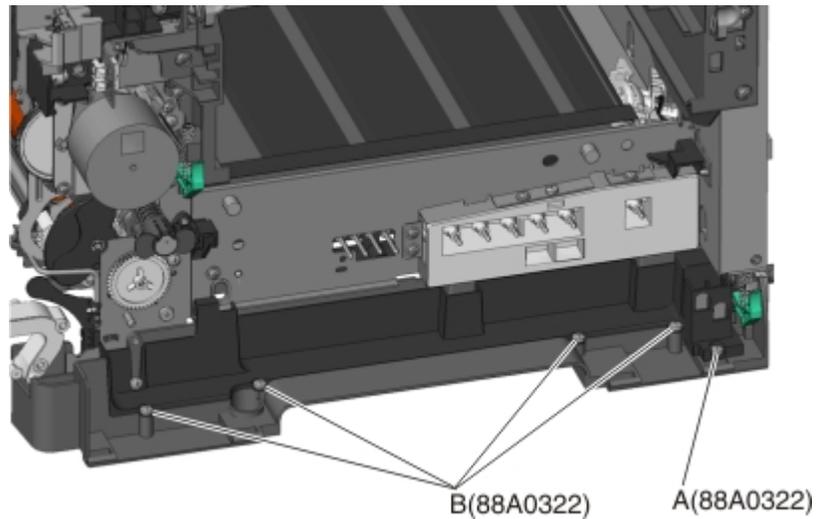
21 Swing the left lower frame away from the printer, and remove.



Lower right frame removal

- 1** Remove the waste toner bottle. See “Waste toner bottle removal” on page 300.
- 2** Remove the imaging unit. See “Imaging unit (IU) removal” on page 262.

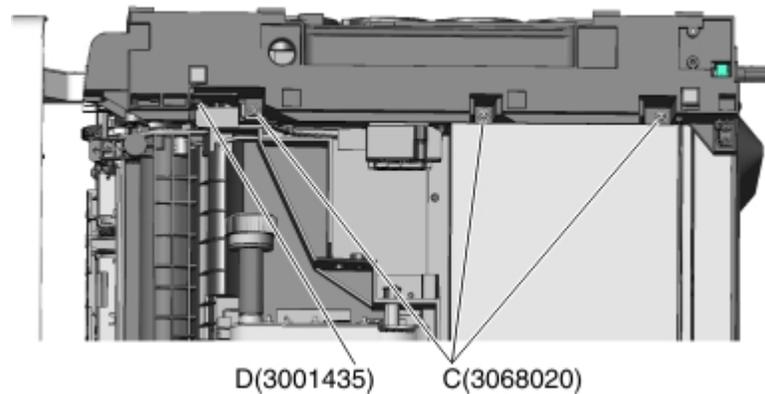
- 3 Remove the screw (A) in the waste toner bottle sensor contact to allow access to the cable cover, and remove the four screws (B) securing the cable cover.



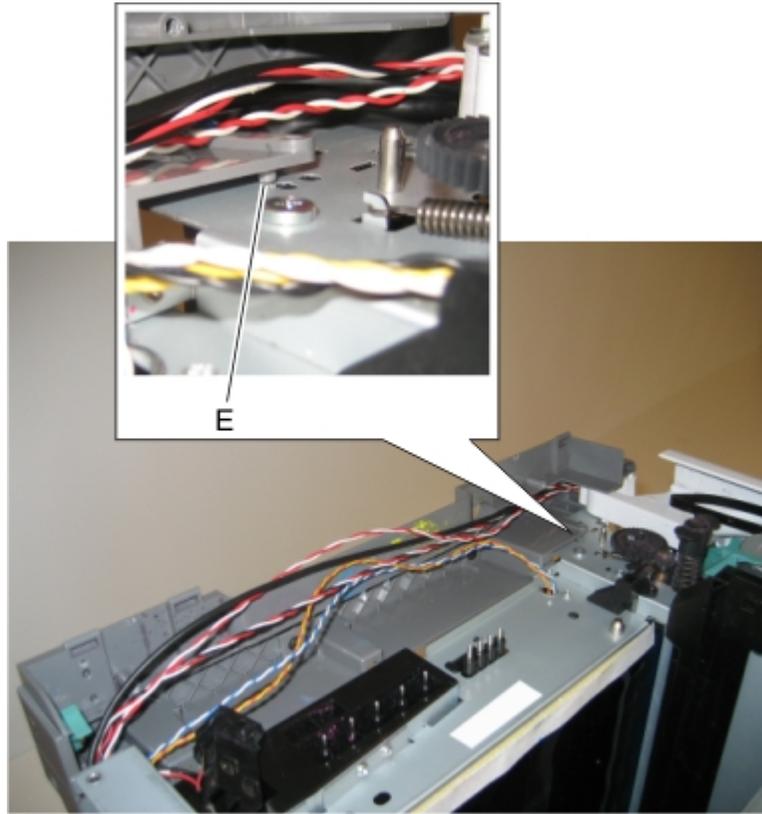
Notes:

- The waste toner bottle sensor contact does not need to be unplugged.
- The cable cover is part of the right lower frame FRU.

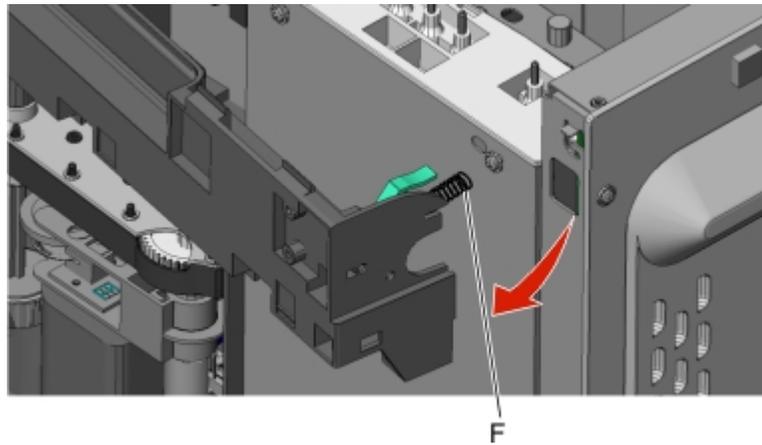
- 4 Carefully place the printer on its left side.
- 5 Remove the three screws (C) securing the lower right frame to the printer.
- 6 Remove the screw (D) closer to the front of the printer.



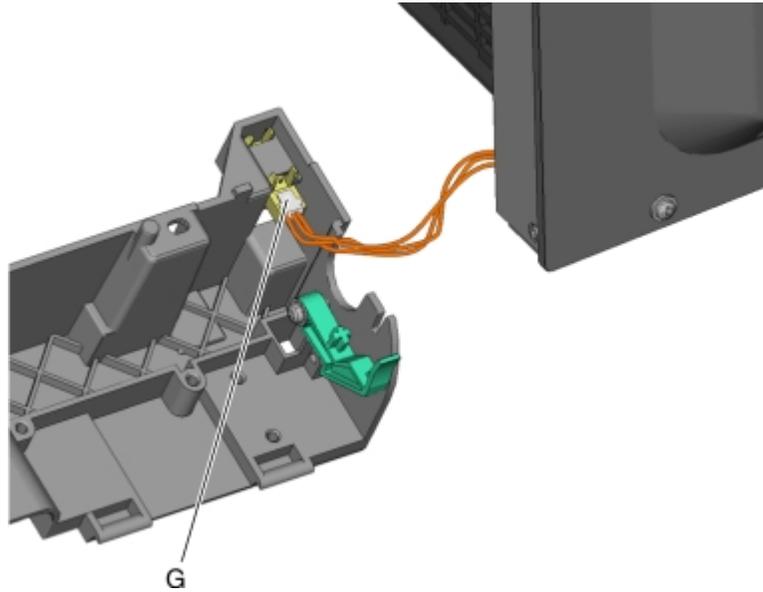
- 7 Next to screw, lift the right lower frame pin (E) out of the hole in the printer frame.



- 8 Swing the rear part away from the printer to access the spring, and remove the spring (F) from the right lower frame.



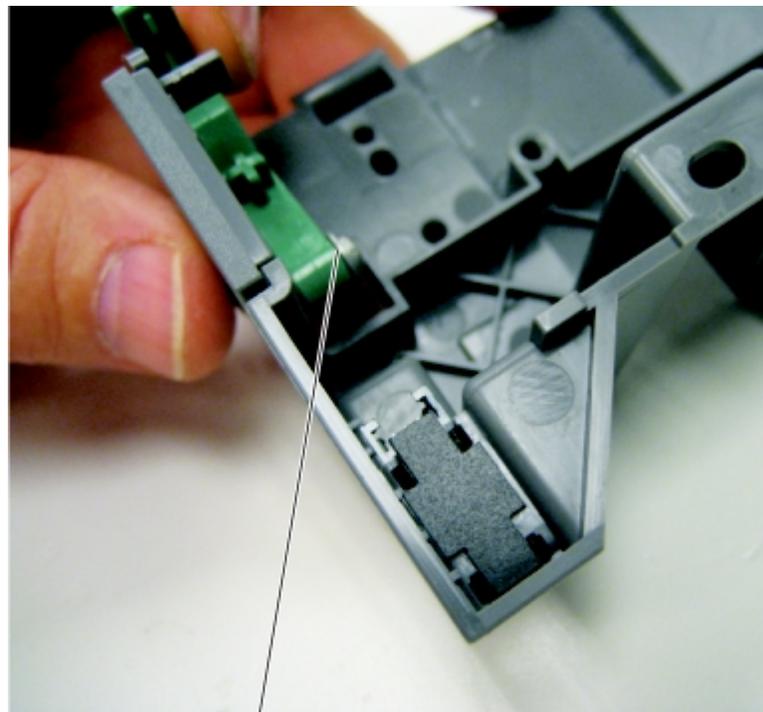
- 9 Disconnect the cable (G) from the tray present sensor.



- 10 Swing the rear of the lower frame away from the printer, and remove the right lower frame.

Note: There are parts in the right lower frame that are not included in the frame. The following instructions show how to remove them.

- 11 Remove the screw (H), and remove the spring bracket.



H(18B1236)

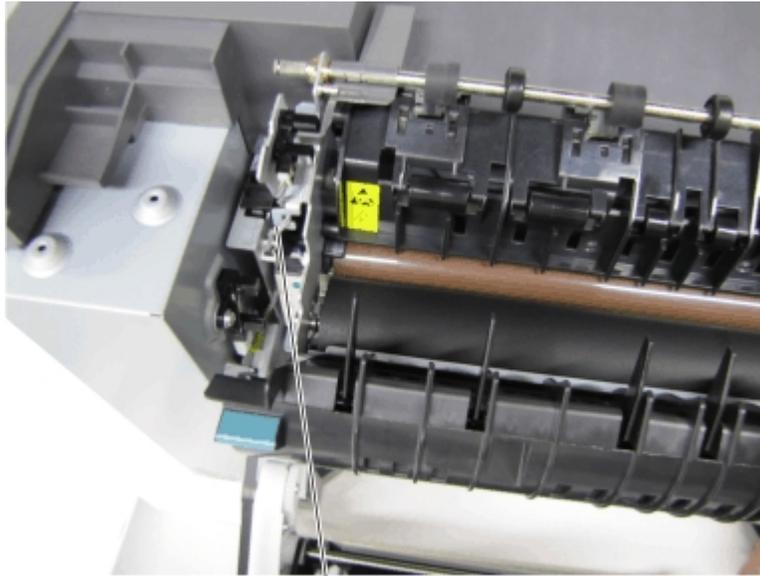
Installation notes:

- a Reinstall the spring bracket.
- b Connect the cable to the tray present sensor, and put the spring in place before installing the right lower frame.

Narrow media sensor removal

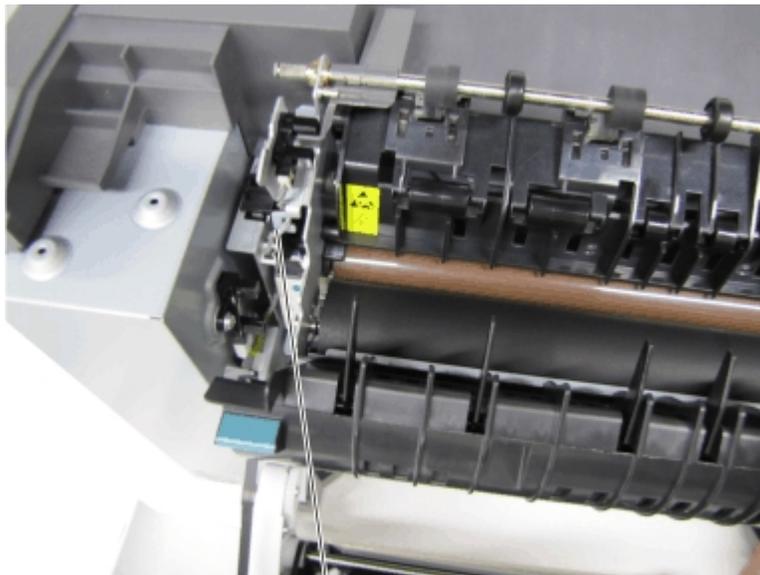
- 1 Open the front cover.
- 2 Unroute the cable (A) from its retainer.

Note: Be sure to pay close attention to the routing of the cable for re-installation.



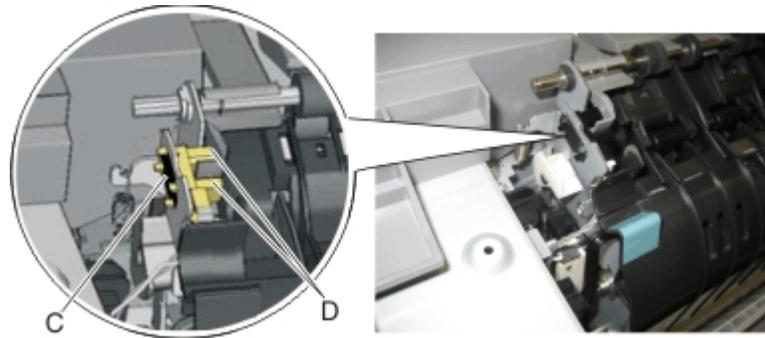
A

- 3 Disconnect the cable (B) from the narrow media sensor.



B

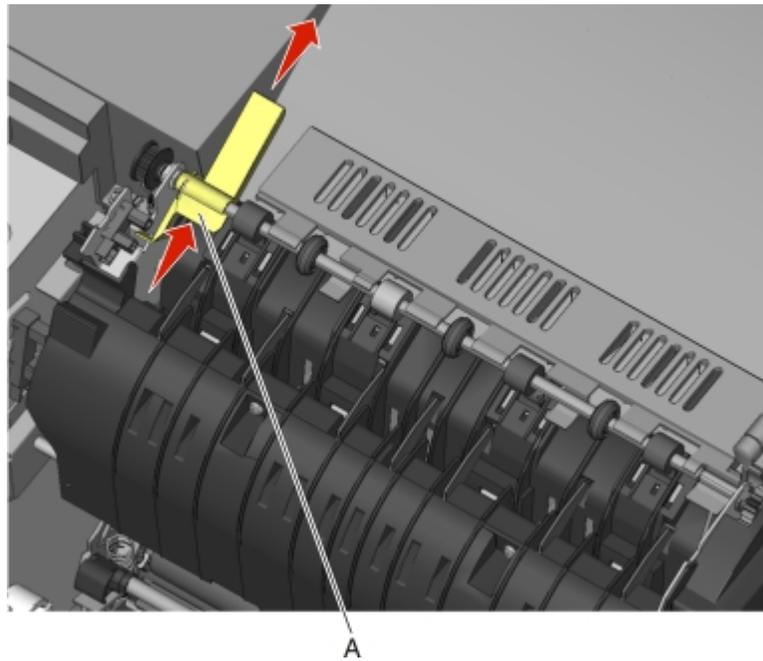
- 4 Remove the sensor retaining plate (C).
- 5 Gently remove the sensor from the bracket by pressing in on the latches (D).

**Installation notes:**

- Clean the contact surface where you removed the sensor retaining plate, or where you need to install the new one.
- Guide the latches that hold the sensor in the bracket into place.
- Squeeze the latches together until they latch to the metal frame.
- Remove the backing from the new plate, and place the plate on the surface between the sensor mounting legs.
- Reconnect the cable, and reroute the cable through the retainer.

Narrow media sensor flag removal

- 1 Open the front cover.
- 2 Press upward on the tab (A) to *unsnap* the narrow media sensor flag, and remove the flag.



Note: Be careful to not dislodge the sensor. Because of space, this flag should be installed on the fuser while the fuser is out.

Operator panel bezel removal

- 1 Lift the flatbed scanner on the right side.
- 2 Lift the bezel away from the operator panel, and remove.

Note: The picture below shows the bezel removal for the CX310 and CX410 models. The bezel for CX510 models is removed the same way.



Operator panel logo plate removal

- 1 Pull the logo plate forward from the bottom to *pop* it loose from the operator panel.



- 2 Remove the operator panel logo plate.

Note: The CX510 bezel is larger and requires a higher force to remove. It does not need to be removed except for replacement.

Operator panel removal (for CX310 and CX410 models only)

Installation warning: Replace one of the following components, and perform a POR before replacing a second component. Never replace both of the components without performing a POR after installing each one, or the printer may be rendered inoperable:

- Operator panel assembly
- Controller board

Note: The UICC card is part of the operator panel.

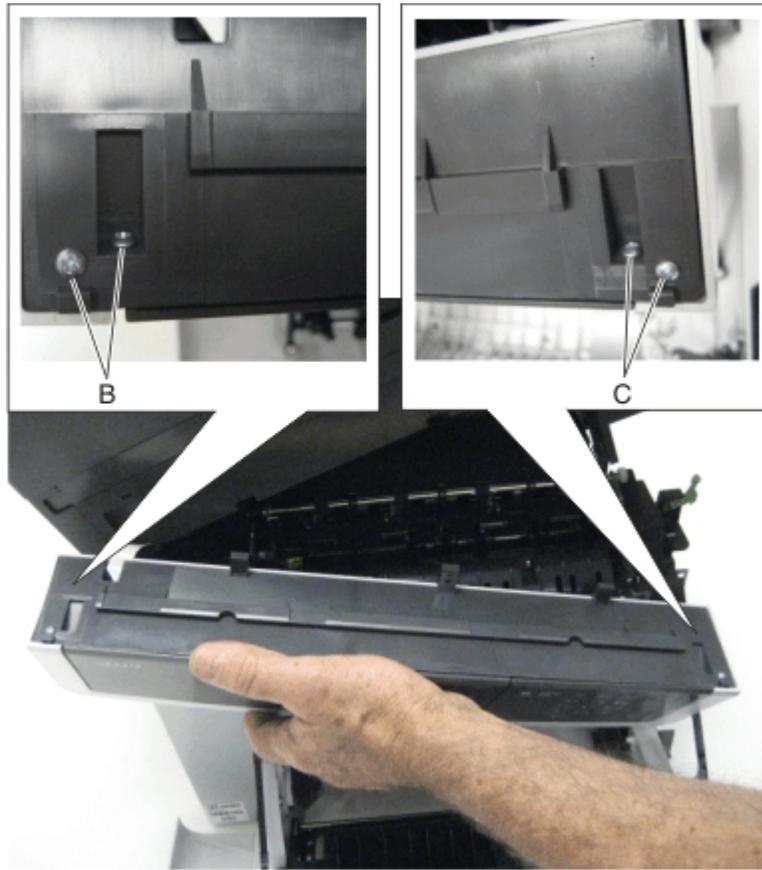
Note: The following parts (FRUs) can be accessed from this section:

- **Operator panel (one for each CX310 and CX410)**
- **Display and PCBA (CX310)**
- **Display (CX410)**
- **UICC PCBA (CX410)**
- **User interface support bracket (common to CX310 and CX410)**
- **Front operator panel cover (common to CX310 and CX410)**
- **Upper front (operator) cover (common to CX310 and CX410)**
- **Speaker (CX410)**

- 1 Lift the flatbed scanner assembly on the right side..
- 2 Remove the three screws (A) from beneath the operator panel.



- 3 Remove the two screws (B) from the left top side of the operator panel, and the two screws (C) from the right top side of the operator panel using a #2 Phillips screwdriver.

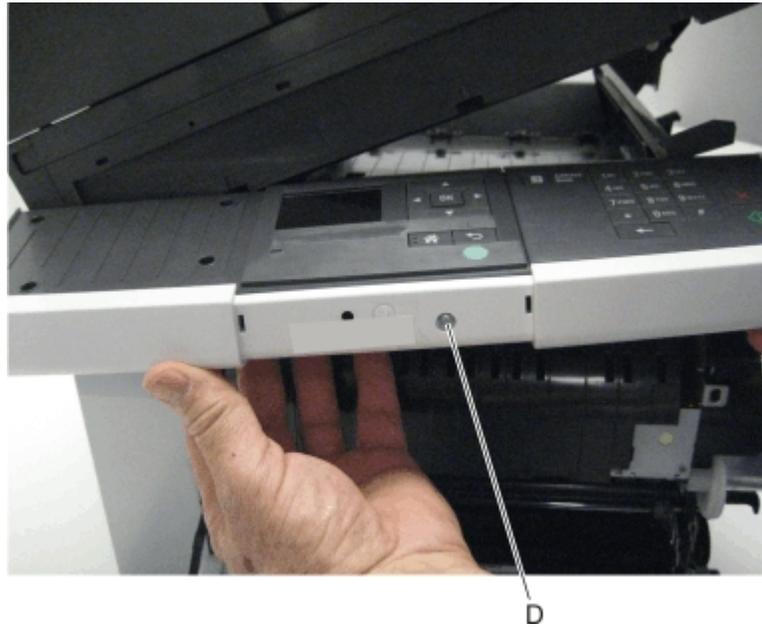


- 4 Disconnect the name plate cover from the operator panel.



- 5 Remove the operator panel bezel. See "Operator panel bezel removal" on page 278.

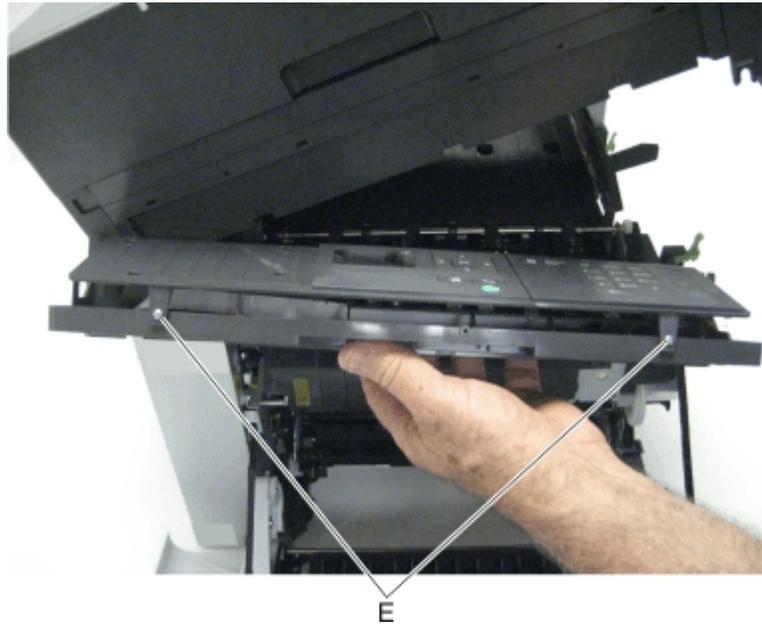
- 6 Remove the screw (D) from beneath the logo plate.



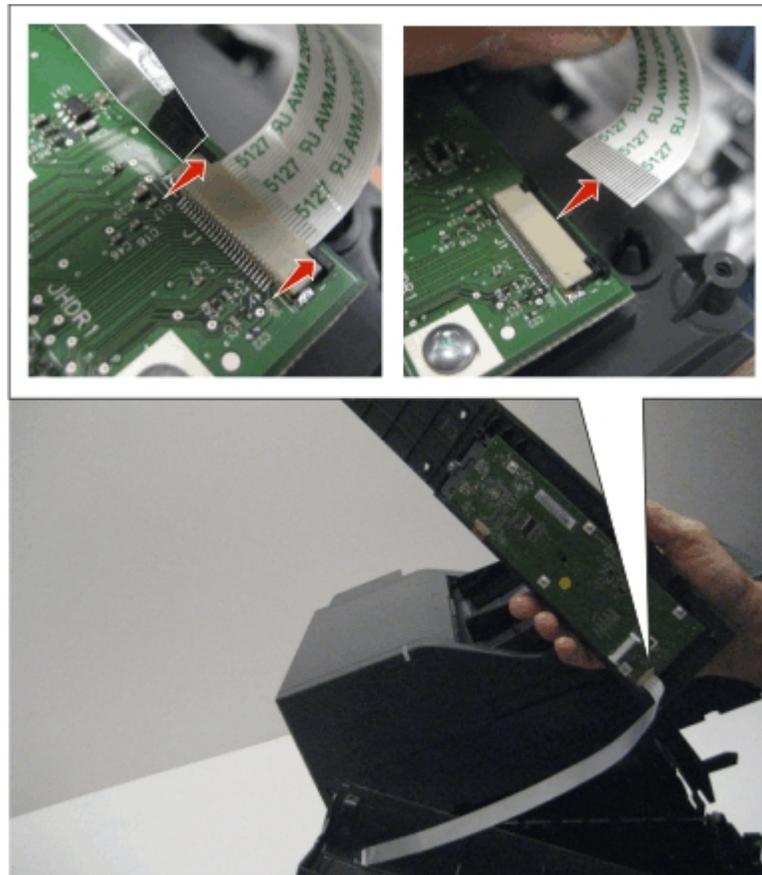
- 7 Remove the operator panel cover from the front of the printer.



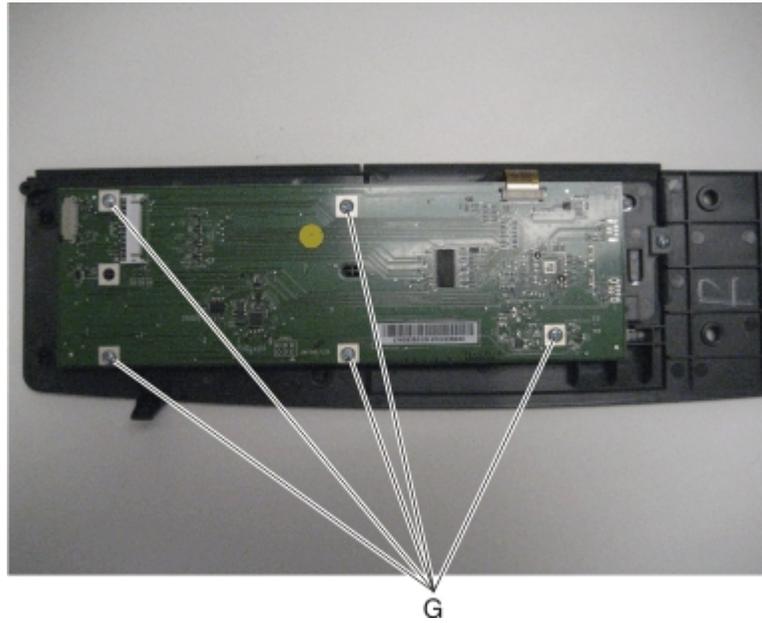
- 8 Remove the two screws (E) from the operator panel.



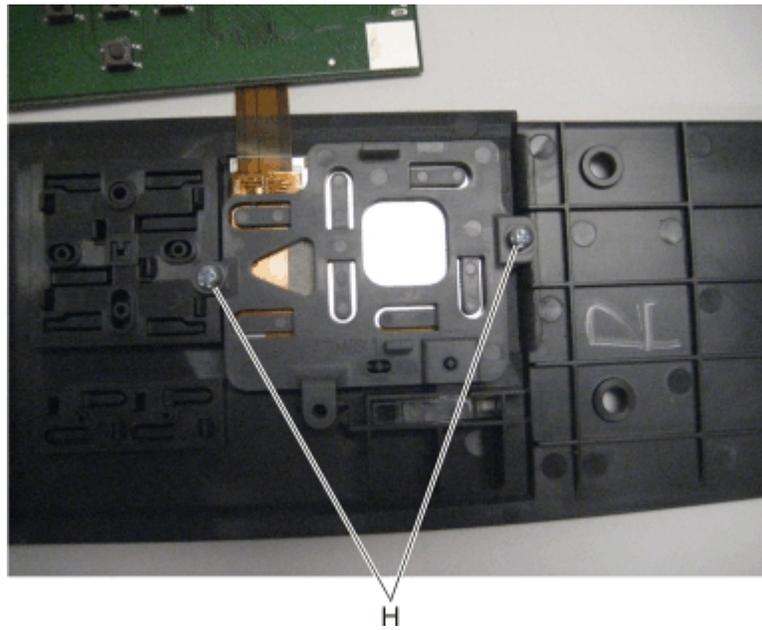
- 9 Lift the operator panel from the user interface support bracket.
- 10 Disconnect the ribbon cable from the cable connector on the operator panel board by sliding the two prongs forward.



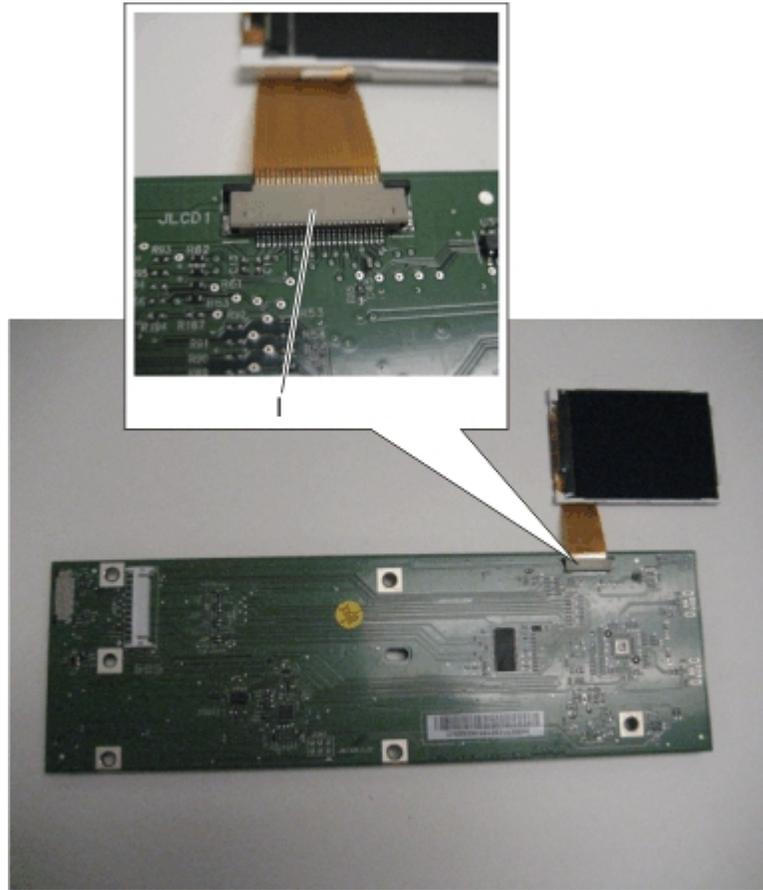
11 Remove the five screws (F) from the operator panel board.



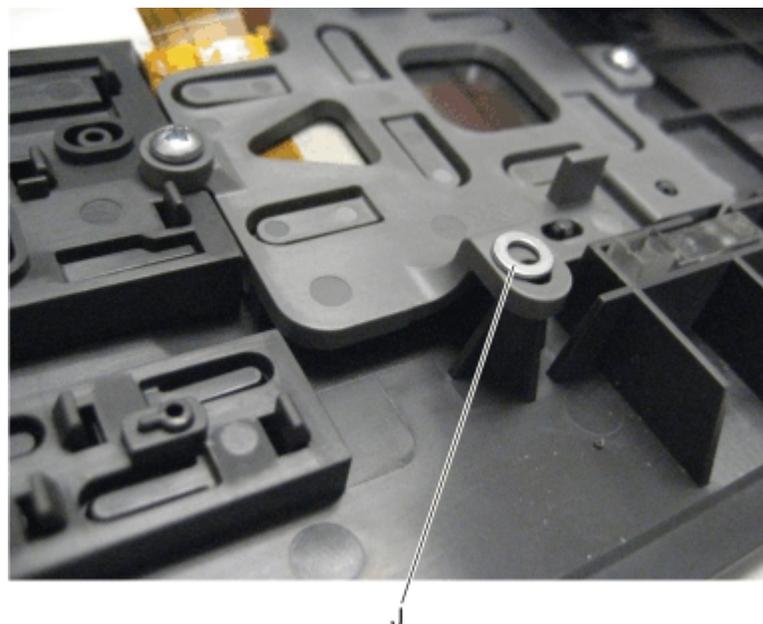
12 Remove the two screws (G) from the display bracket.



13 Disconnect the cable (H) from the operator panel board.



Installation note: When replacing the operator panel board, be sure to also replace the washer (I) that holds the display bracket in place.



Operator panel removal (for CX510 models only)

Installation warning: Replace one of the following components, and perform a POR before replacing a second component. Never replace both of the components without performing a POR after installing each one, or the printer may be rendered inoperable:

- Operator panel assembly
- Controller board

Note: The UICC card is part of the operator panel.

Note: The following parts (FRUs) can be accessed from this section:

- 7" display
- Small interface card
- Interface cable
- UICC PCBA
- Operator panel for 7" display
- User interface support bracket
- Upper front (operator) cover
- Speaker

- 1 Open the front cover.
- 2 Open the scanner to give access to the bottom operator module.
- 3 Remove the three screws (A).



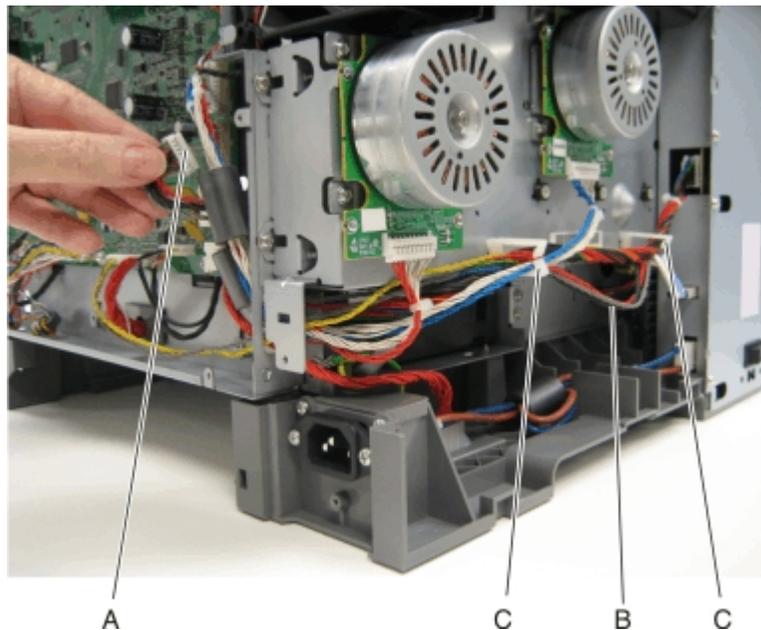
- 4 Carefully separate the module from that scanner and support the right end of the open door without stressing the cables.
- 5 Remove the bezel.
- 6 Remove the screw on the right rear side of the module which secures the bracket to the upper front cover.

- 7 Remove the two screws (B) at the top left and right holding the operator panel assembly, the upper front cover, and the user interface bracket together.
- 8 Pull the left and right sides of the upper front cover out enough to slide the operator panel assembly and bracket away from the cover.
- 9 Remove the two screws (C) holding the operator panel assembly to the user interface bracket.
- 10 Disconnect the flat cable from the controller card to the UICC.

Note: All of the FRUs listed above are now easily accessible.

Paper pick motor drive assembly (standard tray) removal

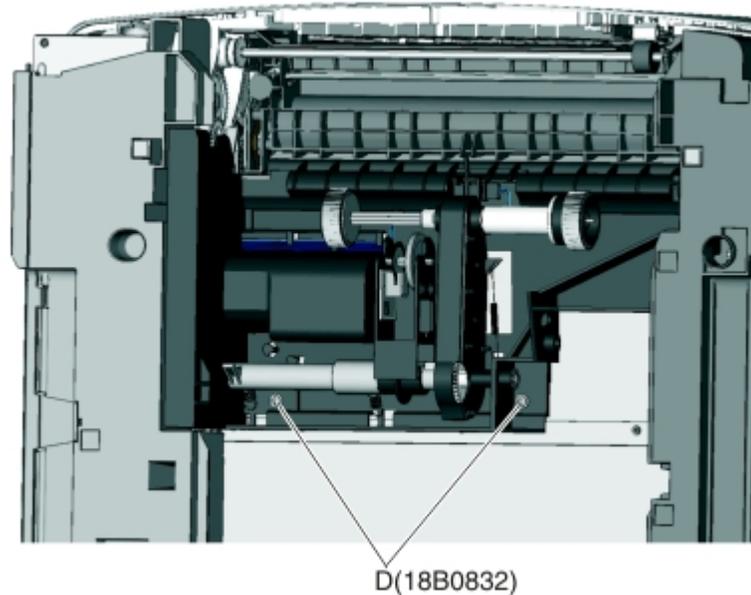
- 1 Remove the waste toner bottle. See “Waste toner bottle removal” on page 300.
- 2 Remove the imaging unit. See “Imaging unit (IU) removal” on page 262.
- 3 Remove the left cover assembly. See “Left cover assembly removal” on page 216.
- 4 Remove the rear cover. See “Rear cover removal” on page 218.
- 5 Disconnect the paper pick motor drive assembly cable connector (A) from JSP1 on the controller board.
- 6 Pull the cable (B) through the opening, and free the cables from their retainers (C) on the left.



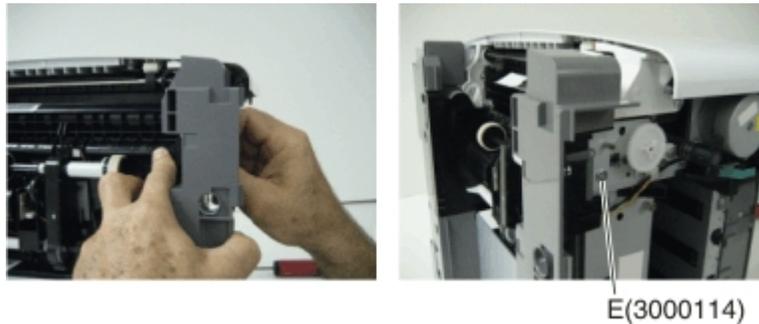
- 7 Partially reinstall the rear cover to protect the controller board, and turn the printer so that the rear cover rests on the table. The bottom should be facing you.

Warning—Potential Damage: For models with a wireless antenna, use supports to prevent the antenna from taking the weight of the printer.

- 8** Place the printer on its rear, and remove the two screws (D) from the bottom.



- 9** On the right side, loosen the screw (E) with a screwdriver, and hold the paper feed roller assembly in place as you use your fingers to remove the screw.



- 10** Move the right side of the paper feed roller assembly out to free the shaft from the opening in the frame.

Note: Pay close attention to the location of the shaft and opening for reinstallation.

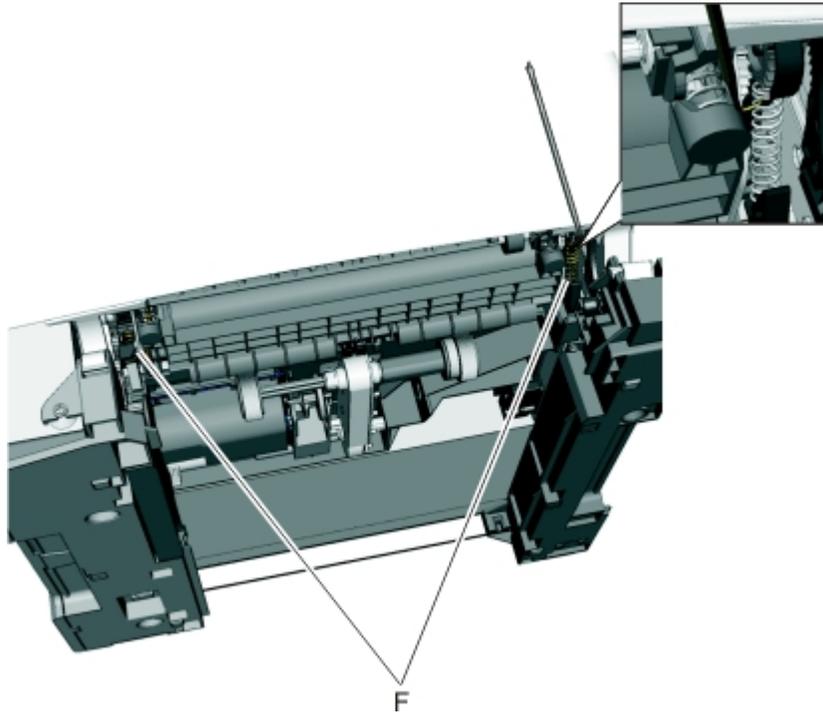
- 11** Remove the paper feed roller assembly.

Note: Be careful not to lose the springs.

Installation notes:

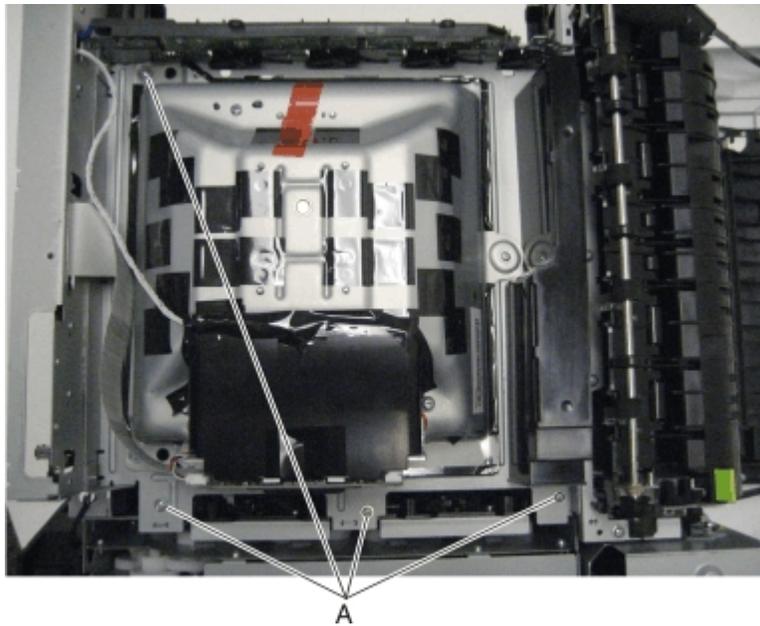
- a** Place the left side of the paper feed roller assembly in the printer. Make sure the shaft on the left side aligns with the hole in the frame.
- b** Install the left spring (F).
- c** Reinstall the three screws holding the paper feed roller assembly to the printer.
- d** Turn the printer to the proper upright position.
- e** Reroute the cable, making sure to place the cables into the two retainers on the left side.
- f** Remove the rear cover, and reconnect the cable.
- g** Replace the rear cover.

- h Install the right spring (F).



Printhead removal

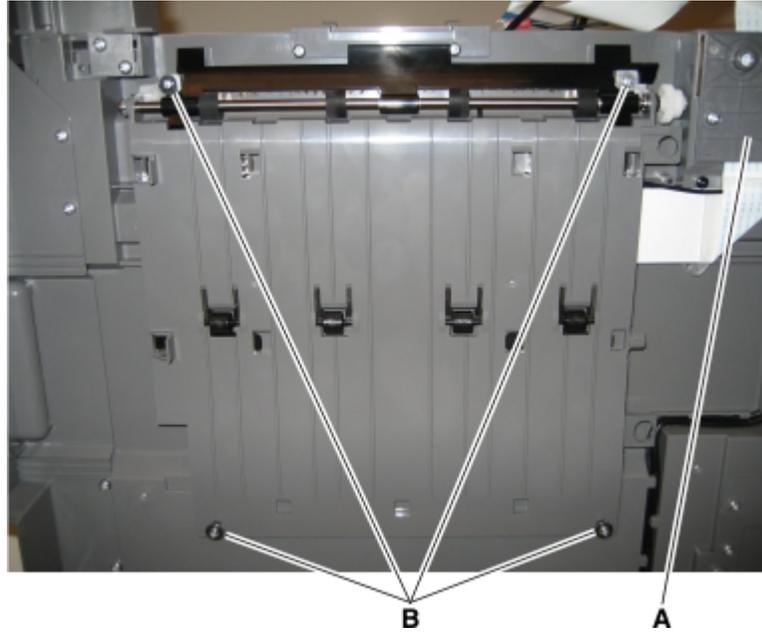
- 1 Remove the top cover assembly. See “Top cover assembly removal” on page 222.
- 2 Remove the four screws (A).



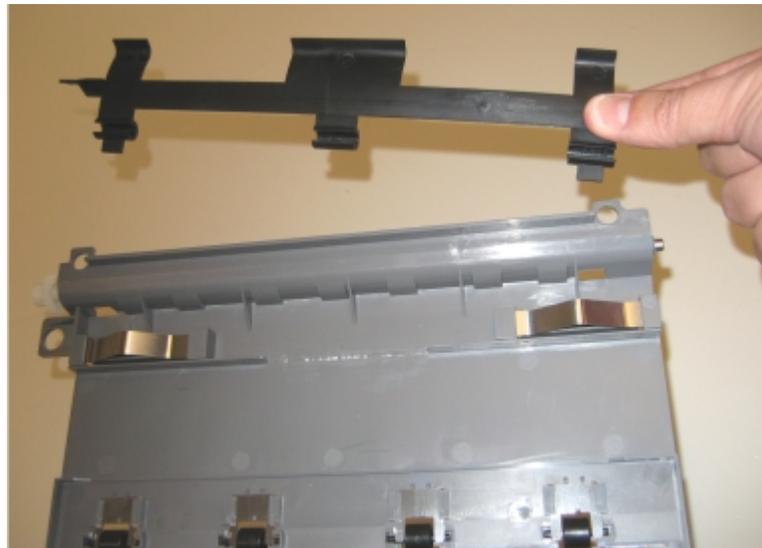
- 3 Remove the printhead.

Redrive unit removal

- 1 Remove the flatbed scanner assembly from the MFP. See “Flatbed scanner assembly removal” on page 249.
- 2 Place the flatbed facedown on a soft surface to avoid scratching the glass or marring the covers.
- 3 Remove the cable cover plate (A).



- 4 Remove the four screws (B) securing the redrive to the flatbed unit.
- 5 Remove the bin full sensor flag located on the rear shaft.



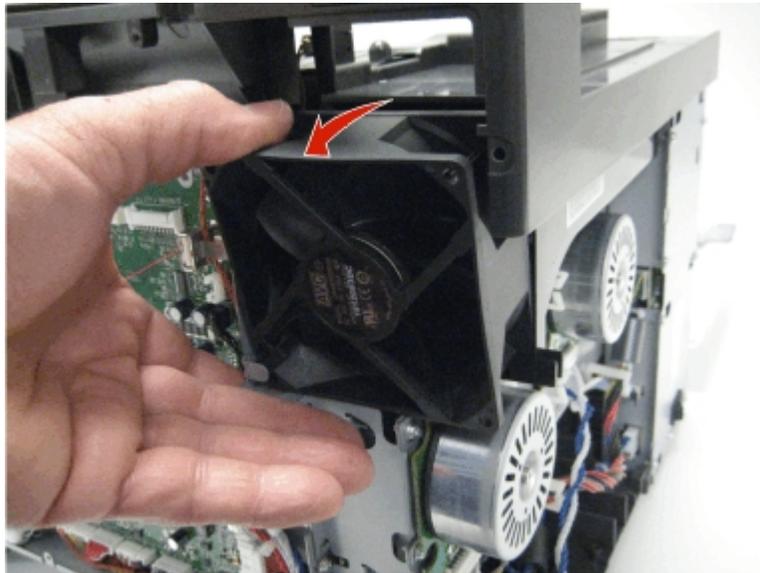
Note: Using a short (under 90mm long) #2 Phillips screwdriver, the redrive unit can be replaced by disconnecting the AIO link at the flatbed and lifting the flatbed just enough to access the left side screws. Be careful to not stress the cables in the left rear hinge.

Speaker removal

Note: The speaker (only in CX410 and CX510) is in the operator panel module. See “Operator panel removal (for CX310 and CX410 models only)” on page 279 and “Operator panel removal (for CX510 models only)” on page 285.

System fan removal

- 1 Remove the rear cover. See “Rear cover removal” on page 218.
- 2 Remove the left cover assembly. See “Left cover assembly removal” on page 216.
- 3 Remove the back AIO cable cover.
- 4 Unplug the top of the system fan from the controller board.
- 5 Unsnap the top of the system fan toward the rear.



- 6 Lift the system fan out, and remove.

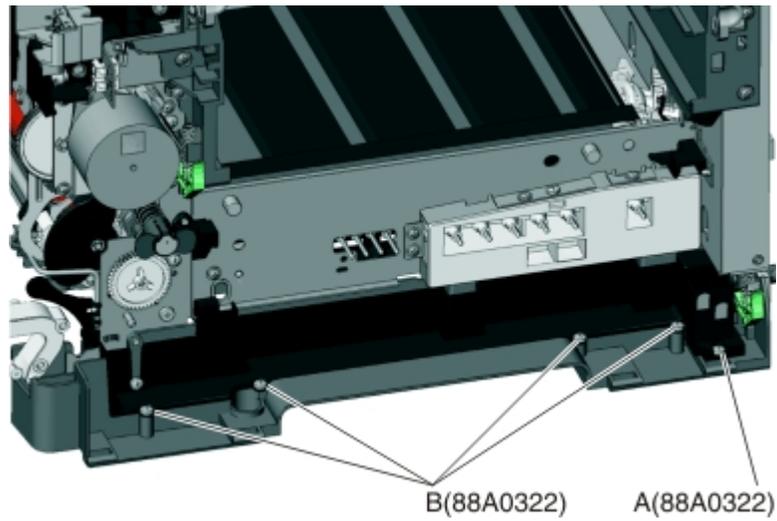
Note: Be careful to not pinch the cables at the top rear corner of the fan when snapping it into place.

Toner cartridge contacts removal

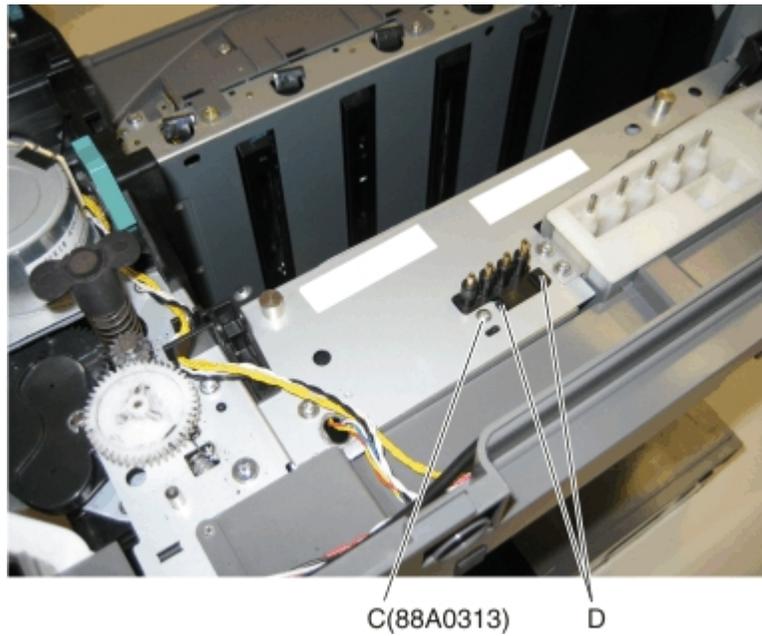
- 1 Remove the right cover assembly. See “Right cover assembly removal” on page 220.
- 2 Remove the waste toner bottle. See “Waste toner bottle removal” on page 300.
- 3 Remove the imaging unit. See “Imaging unit (IU) removal” on page 262.
- 4 Remove the rear cover. See “Rear cover removal” on page 218.
- 5 Remove the rear screw (A) in the waste toner bottle sensor contact to allow access to the cable cover.

Note: The waste toner bottle sensor contact does not need to be unplugged or removed.

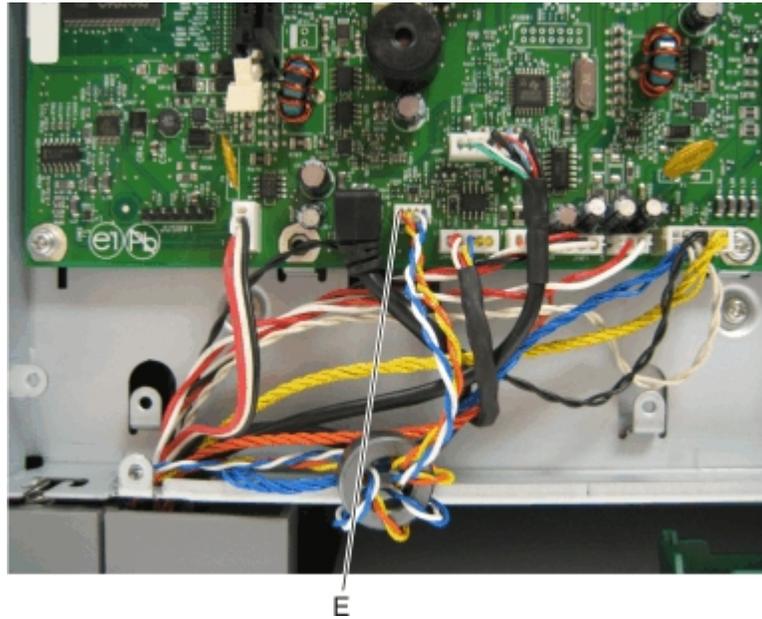
- 6 Remove the four screws (B) securing the cable cover, and remove the cable cover.



- 7 Rotate the printer to view the right side.
8 Lay the printer on its left side, and remove the screw (C) securing the spring contacts.
9 Release the tabs (D) on the spring contact, and slide to the left to remove.



- 10 Disconnect the cable (E) from the controller board at JSC1.



Installation note: Notice the assembly of the cable and toroid (if used), and reassemble the new contacts in the same manner.

- 11 Remove the cable from the retainer on the bottom of the printer.

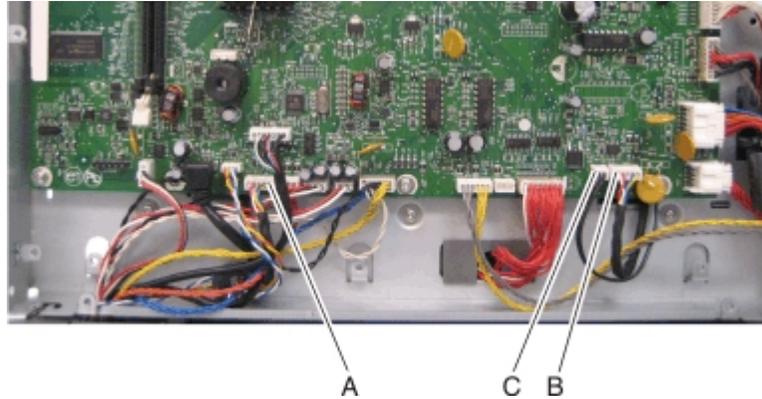
Toner density sensor (TDS) (left or right sensor) removal

Note: The toner density sensor is also called the toner patch sensor (TPS).

Note: The toner density sensors are the same, but the left sensor has a thermistor attached which needs to be removed when you install a new TDS on the left side. Reinstall the thermistor on the new TDS.

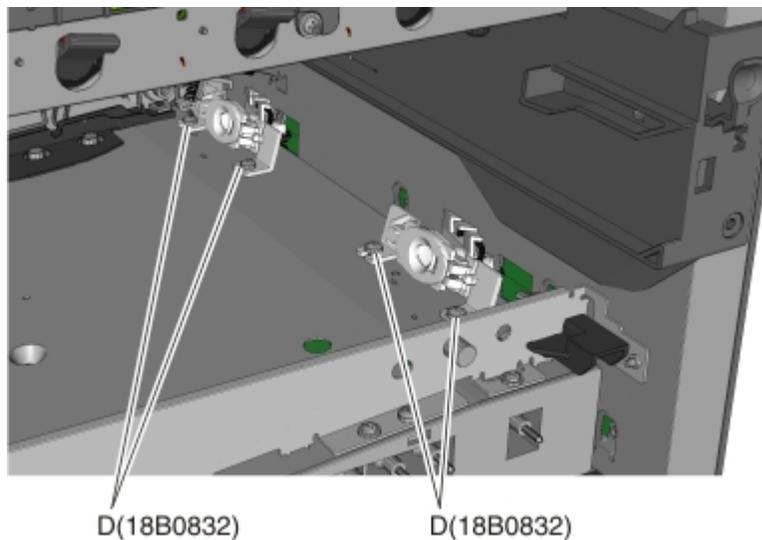
- 1 Remove the transfer module. See “Transfer module removal” on page 296.
- 2 Remove the rear cover. See “Rear cover removal” on page 218.

- 3** Disconnect the toner density sensor cable from JTDS1 connector (A) or JTDS2 connector (B) on the controller board. If you are removing the left toner density sensor, also disconnect the thermistor from JFUSES1 connector (C) on the controller board.



Note: Be sure to pay close attention to the routing of all cables for reinstallation.

- 4** Remove the four screws (D) from the left and right sensors.



Installation notes:

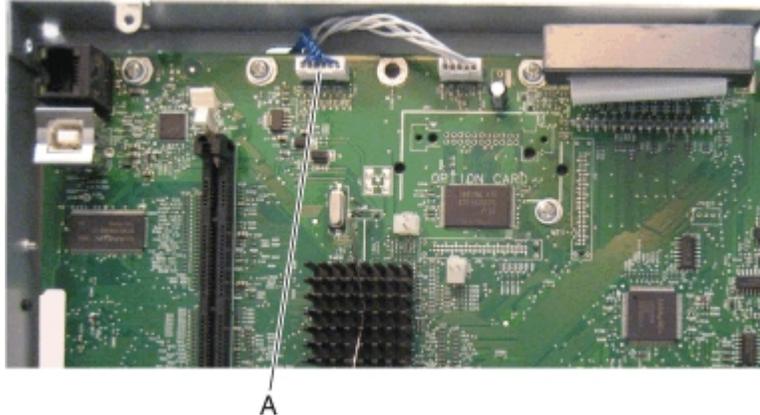
- Before beginning the installation of the new left or right toner density sensor, note the 32-digit TPS value printed on the barcode on the new FRU.
- After installation, perform the TPS Setup. Enter the factory preset alignment number.
 - a** Enter the Diagnostics Menu:
 - 1** Turn the printer off.
 - 2** Press and hold **3** and **6**.
 - 3** Turn the printer on.
 - 4** Release the buttons when the installed memory and processor speed displays.
 - b** Select **TPS SETUP** from Diag Menu, and press **Select**.
 - c** Select **Right** or **Left**, and press **Select**.
TPS Right 1-16 or **Left 1-16** appears above a blinking 0 in the left position.

- d** To enter a character or digit:
- 1** Press **Left** to decrease or **Right** to increase the blinking value.
 - 2** Pause for several seconds without pushing any buttons. The blinking value becomes solid. If the value is incorrect, then press **Back** to go back and reenter the number.
 - 3** Continue until the last value is reached.
 - 4** When the last of the 16 values is entered and becomes solid, **TPS Right 17-32** or **TPS Left 17-32** appears.
 - 5** Continue entering and pausing.
- e** After the 32nd number is entered and becomes solid, the number is automatically entered.
- If the number is incorrect, then **Checksum does not match** appears, and the original screen appears to reenter the value.
 - If the number is correct, then **Saving changes to NVRAM** appears.

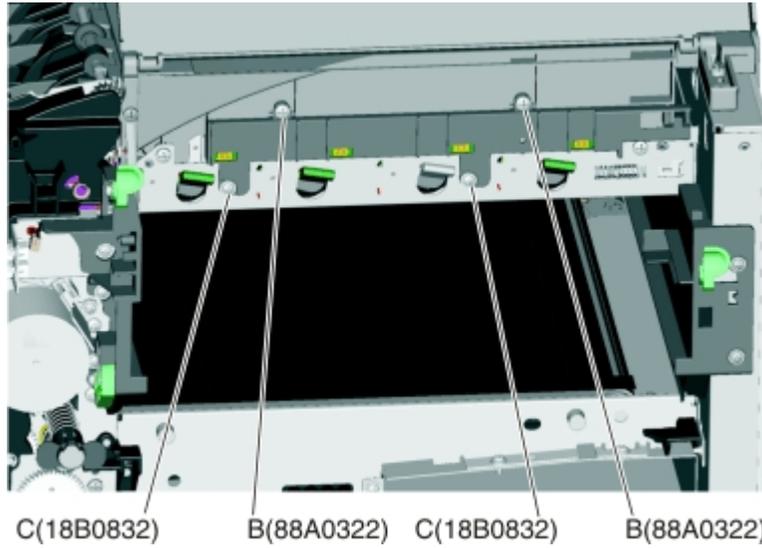
Toner meter cycle (TMC) card removal

- 1** Remove the imaging unit. See “Imaging unit (IU) removal” on page 262.
- 2** Remove the rear cover. See “Rear cover removal” on page 218.
- 3** Disconnect the TMC cable from JCTM1 connector (A), and push the toner meter cycle card cable through the frame opening.

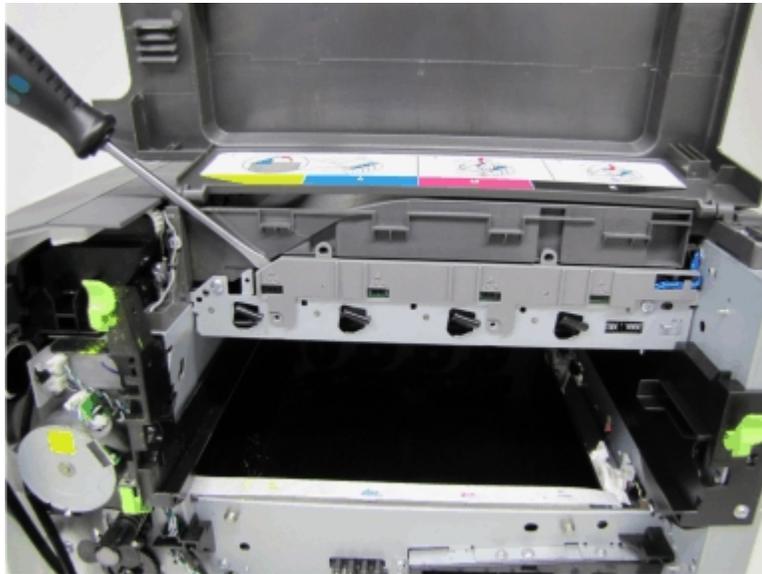
Note: Pay close attention to the routing of the cable for reinstallation.



- 4 Remove the two plastic screws (B), and the two metal screws (C).

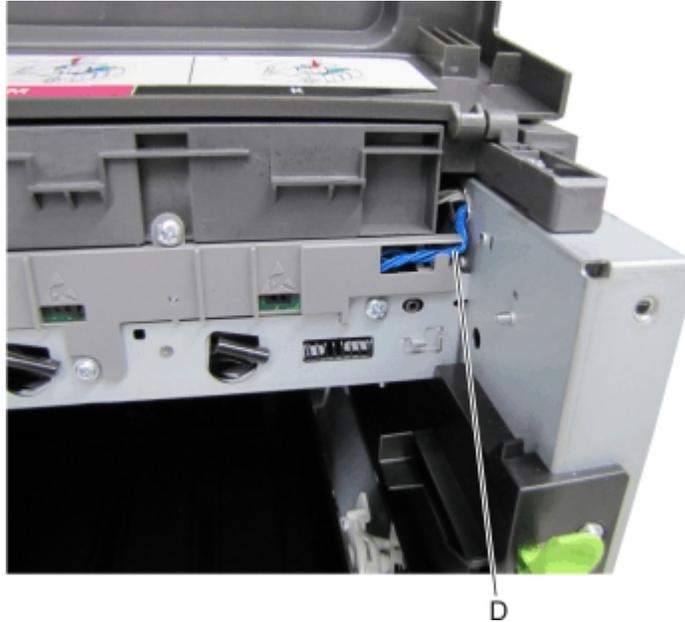


- 5 Slide a flat-blade screwdriver into the left side of the frame, and pry the card loose to remove.

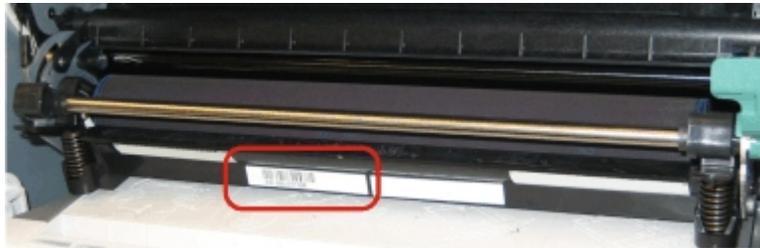


Installation notes:

- Be sure the cable (D) runs through the retainer.
- The toner meter cycle card is a tight fit. Insert the bottom edge inside the frame, and then push down on the top edge to clear the top cover.

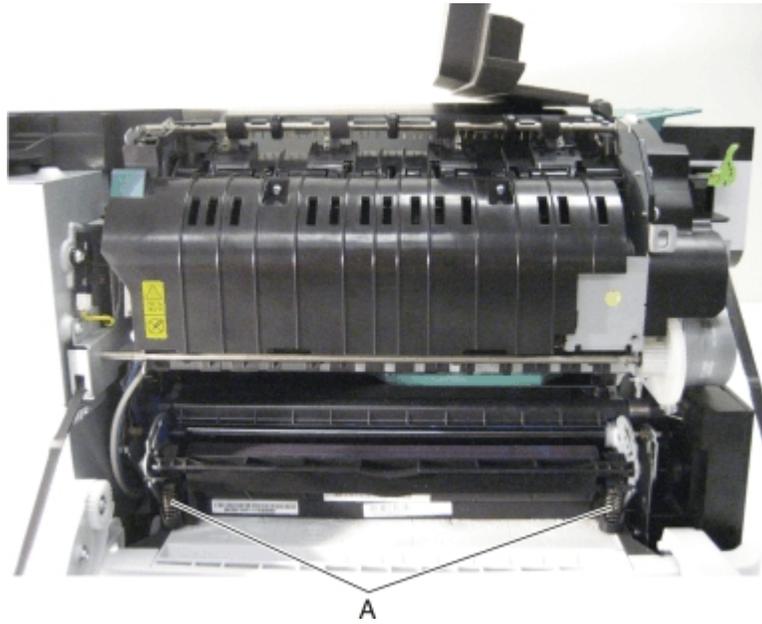
**Transfer module removal**

- 1 Write down the number of the new transfer module before installing it. You will need the 16-digit numeric value from the barcode after the installation, and it is easier to see at this point.

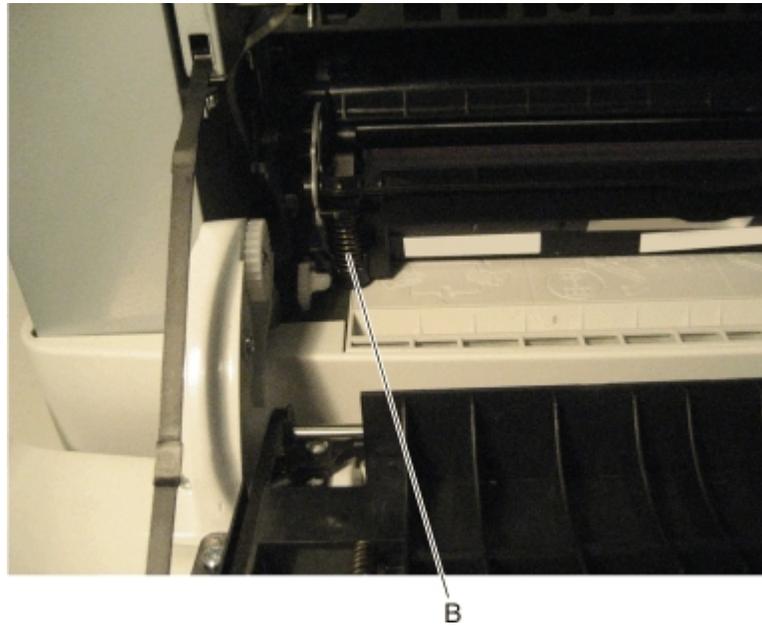


- 2 Remove the right cover assembly. See “Right cover assembly removal” on page 220.
- 3 Remove the waste toner bottle. See “Waste toner bottle removal” on page 300.
- 4 Remove the imaging unit (IU). See “Imaging unit (IU) removal” on page 262.

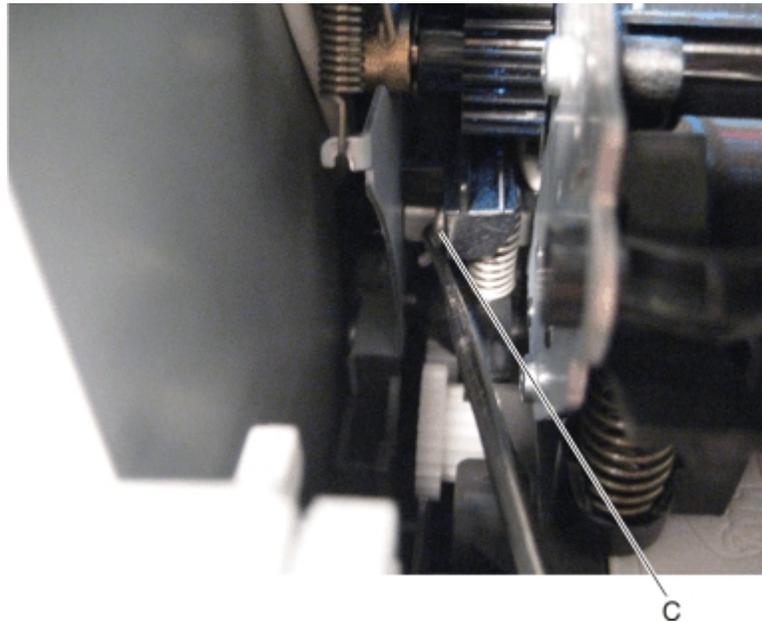
- 5 Disconnect the two springs from the side frames, leaving the right spring (A) attached to the transfer module or transfer module spring clamp.



- 6 Rotate the left spring (B) and the cam away from the transfer module so that the cam is held out of the transfer module path.



- 7 Rotate the release lever (C) in a counterclockwise direction with a springhook or needlenose pliers to decouple the transfer module while pulling the transfer module toward the front.

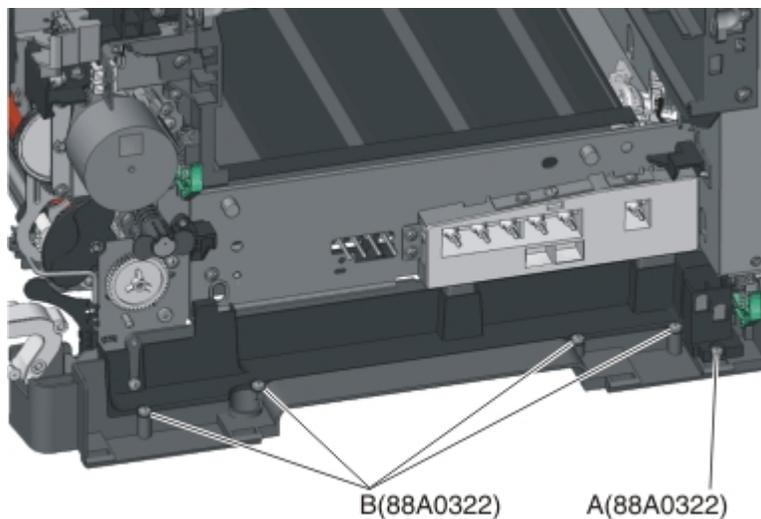


- 8 Hold the release lever as you pull out the transfer module for the first four inches (100 mm), but a quick, firm pull should overcome the latch at this point.

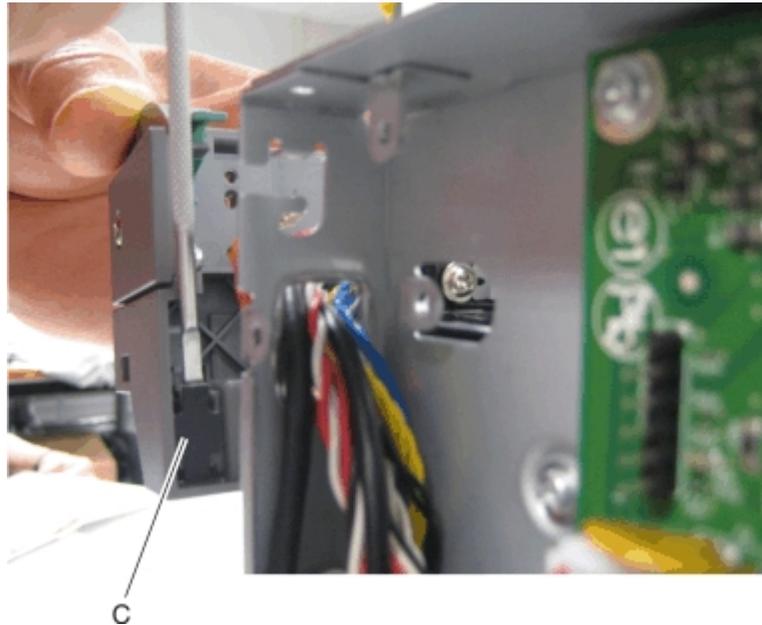
Tray present sensor removal

- 1 Remove the media tray.
- 2 Remove the imaging unit. See “Imaging unit (IU) removal” on page 262.
- 3 Remove the rear screw (A) in the waste toner bottle sensor contact to allow access to the cable cover.

Note: The waste toner bottle sensor contact does not need to be unplugged or removed.
- 4 Remove the four screws (B) from the cable cover, and remove the cable cover.



- 5 Remove the sensor retaining plate (C), and then pinch the latches together to remove the tray present sensor.



- 6 Disconnect the tray present sensor cable.

Installation notes:

- a Clean the contact surface where you removed the sensor retaining plate, or where you need to install the new one.
Install the sensor.
- b Remove the backing from the new plate, and place the plate on the surface between the sensor mounting posts.
- c Connect the cable to the tray present sensor.
- d Replace the spring.

USB port connector removal

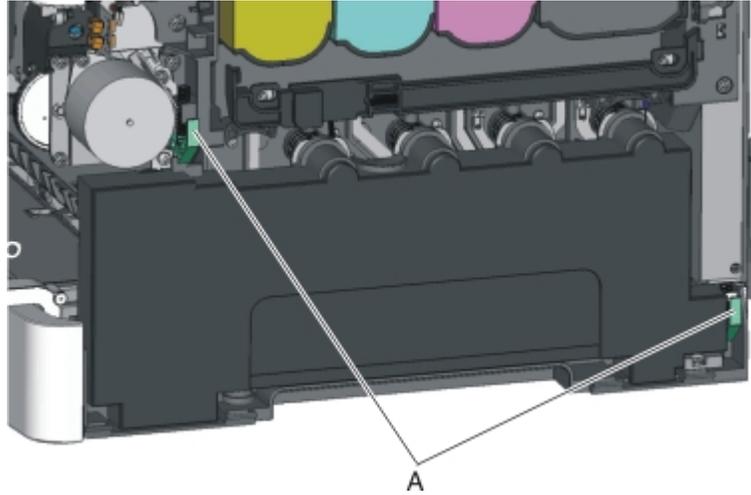
Note: The FRU includes the USB port connector and cable.

- 1 Remove the flatbed scanner assembly. See “Flatbed scanner assembly removal” on page 249.
- 2 Remove the operator panel. See “Operator panel removal (for CX310 and CX410 models only)” on page 279 or “Operator panel removal (for CX510 models only)” on page 285.
- 3 Remove the USB connector fastened to the operator panel assembly.
- 4 Remove the two screws from the small cover plate.
- 5 Remove the USB cable from the flatbed scanner assembly, noting the access on each end.
Note: Do not reposition any of the cables.
- 6 Reinstall the cover plate.

Waste toner bottle removal

Note: The waste toner bottle is not a FRU.

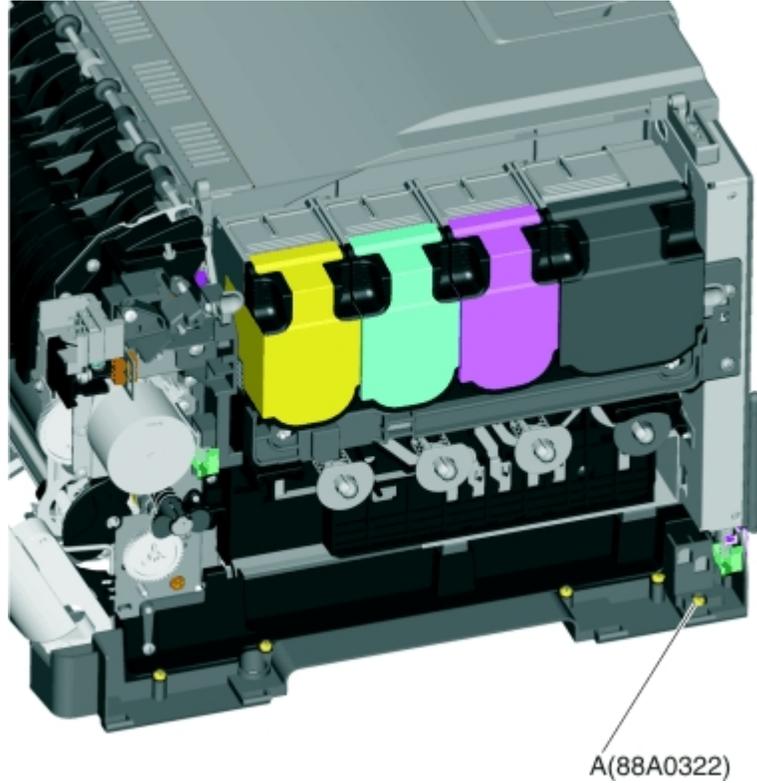
- 1 Remove the right cover assembly. See “Right cover assembly removal” on page 220.
- 2 Press the two tabs (A) to remove the waste toner bottle.



Waste toner bottle contact block removal

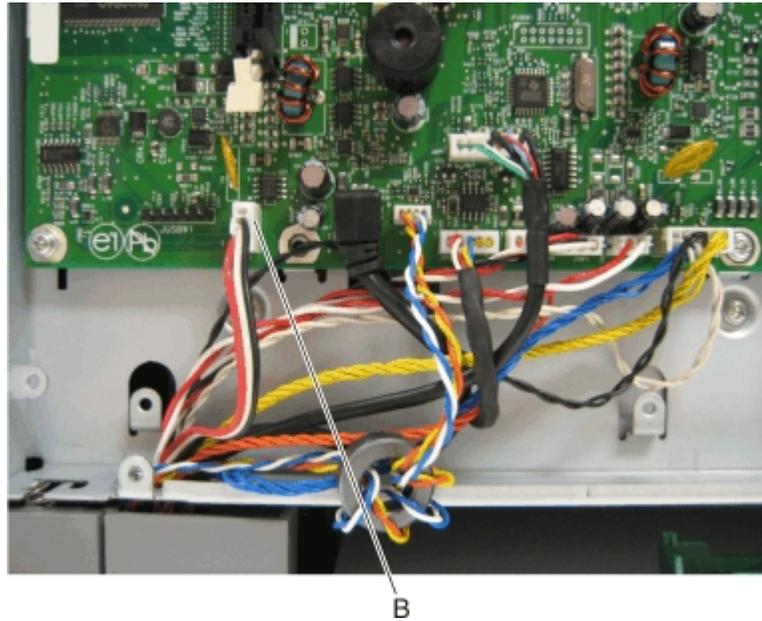
Note: The waste toner bottle is not a FRU.

- 1 Remove the waste toner bottle. See “Waste toner bottle removal” on page 300.
- 2 Remove the screw (A) from the back of the waste toner bottle block.



- 3 Remove the rear cover. See “Rear cover removal” on page 218.

- 4 Disconnect the waste toner bottle contact block (B) from the controller board.



- 5 Remove the waste toner bottle contact block.

Options removal

- “650-sheet duo drawer tray assembly removal” on page 303
- “650-sheet duo drawer assembly removal” on page 303
- “Dust cover removal” on page 305
- “Pick tires removal” on page 305

650-sheet duo drawer tray assembly removal

Pull out the drawer tray assembly to remove it.



650-sheet duo drawer assembly removal

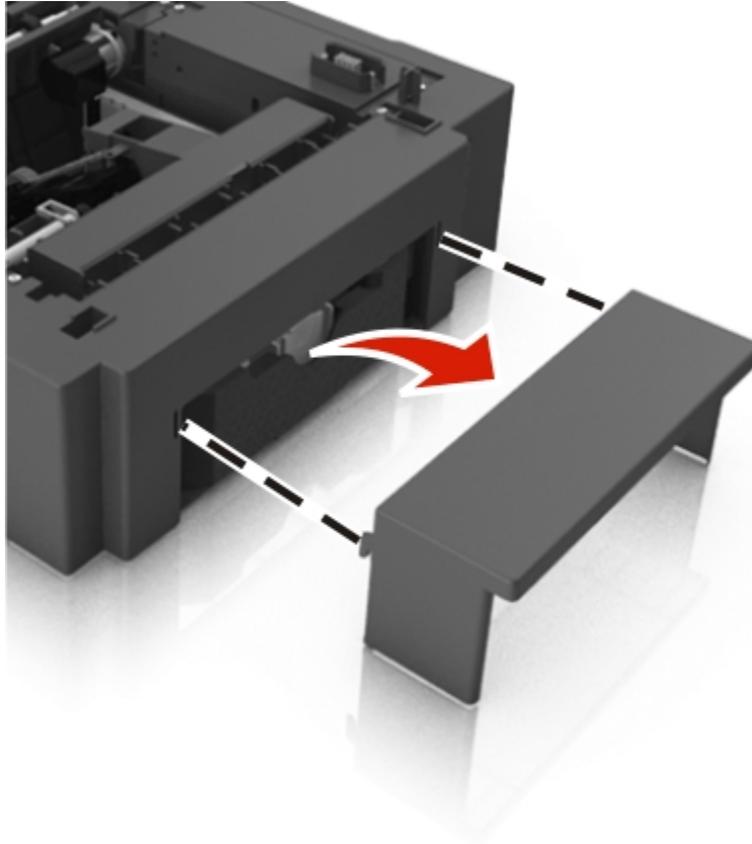
Warning—Potential Damage: Make sure the printer is turned off before removing the drawer assembly.

Carefully lift the printer, and set it aside on a flat surface to remove the drawer assembly from the printer.



Dust cover removal

Raise then pull the dust cover to remove it.



Pick tires removal

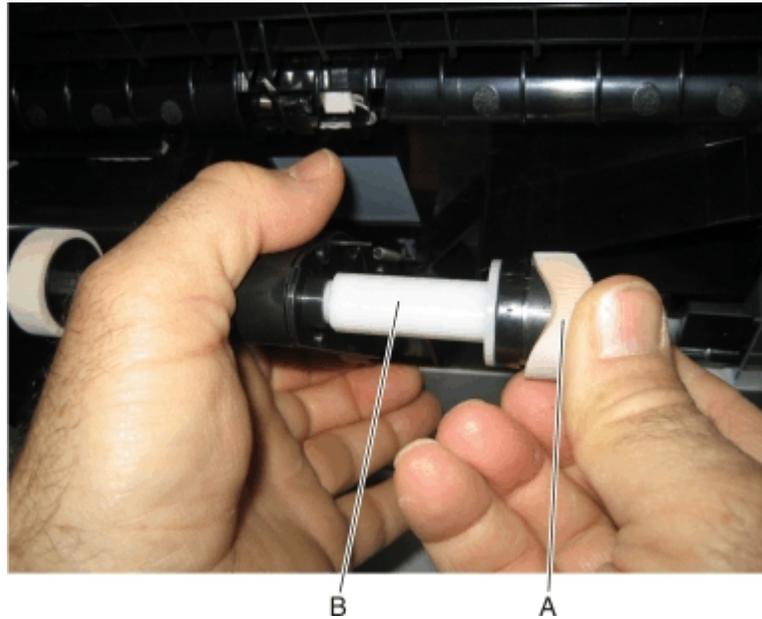
Note: You will need to have a soft, padded work surface for this removal.

Warning—Potential Damage: Remove only the rubber tires and not the paper pick tire assembly to avoid losing small parts.

Note: The paper pick tires for the standard media tray are located in the base printer. There are also tires in the optional 650-sheet Duo Drawer/MP feeder and the optional 550-sheet drawer. If you have one or both of these additional options, and you are having problems with media picking, replace these tires also. Always replace the paper pick tires in pairs. The tires come in a package of two.

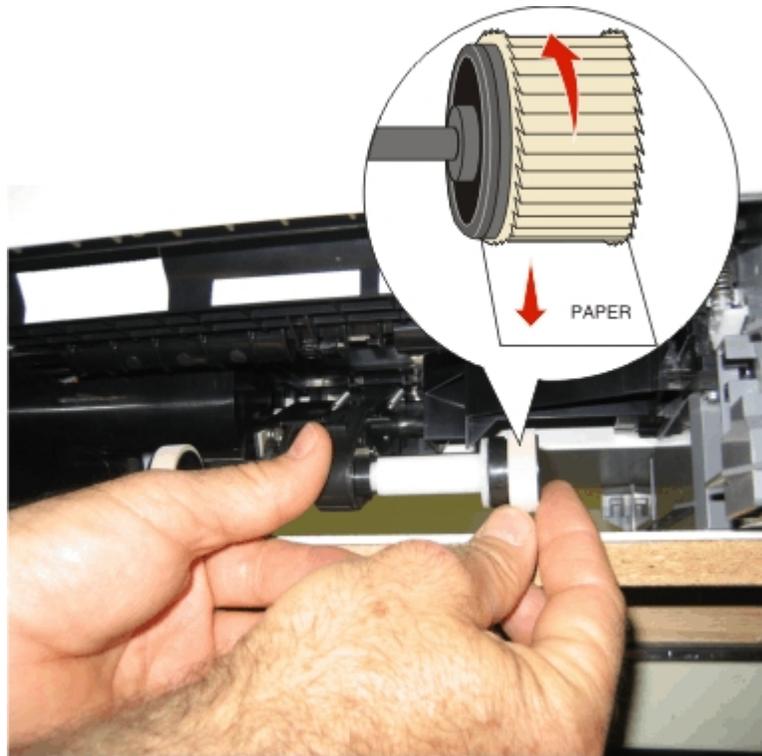
- 1 Remove the media tray.
- 2 Lower the paper pick motor drive assembly.

- 3 Remove the rubber tire (A) from the pick roll assembly (B). Repeat for the other tire.



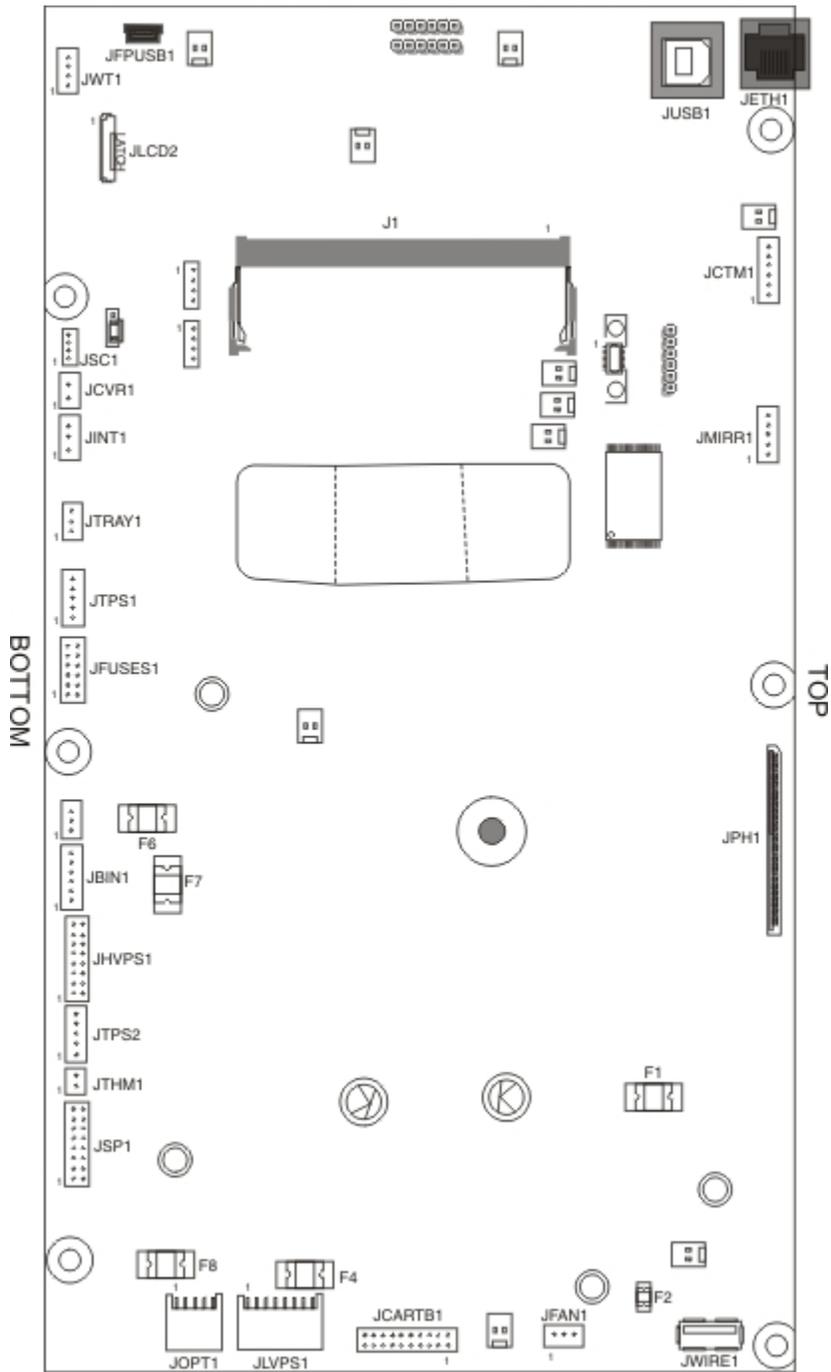
Installation note:

Install the new rubber tires with the surface texture turning in the direction as shown below.

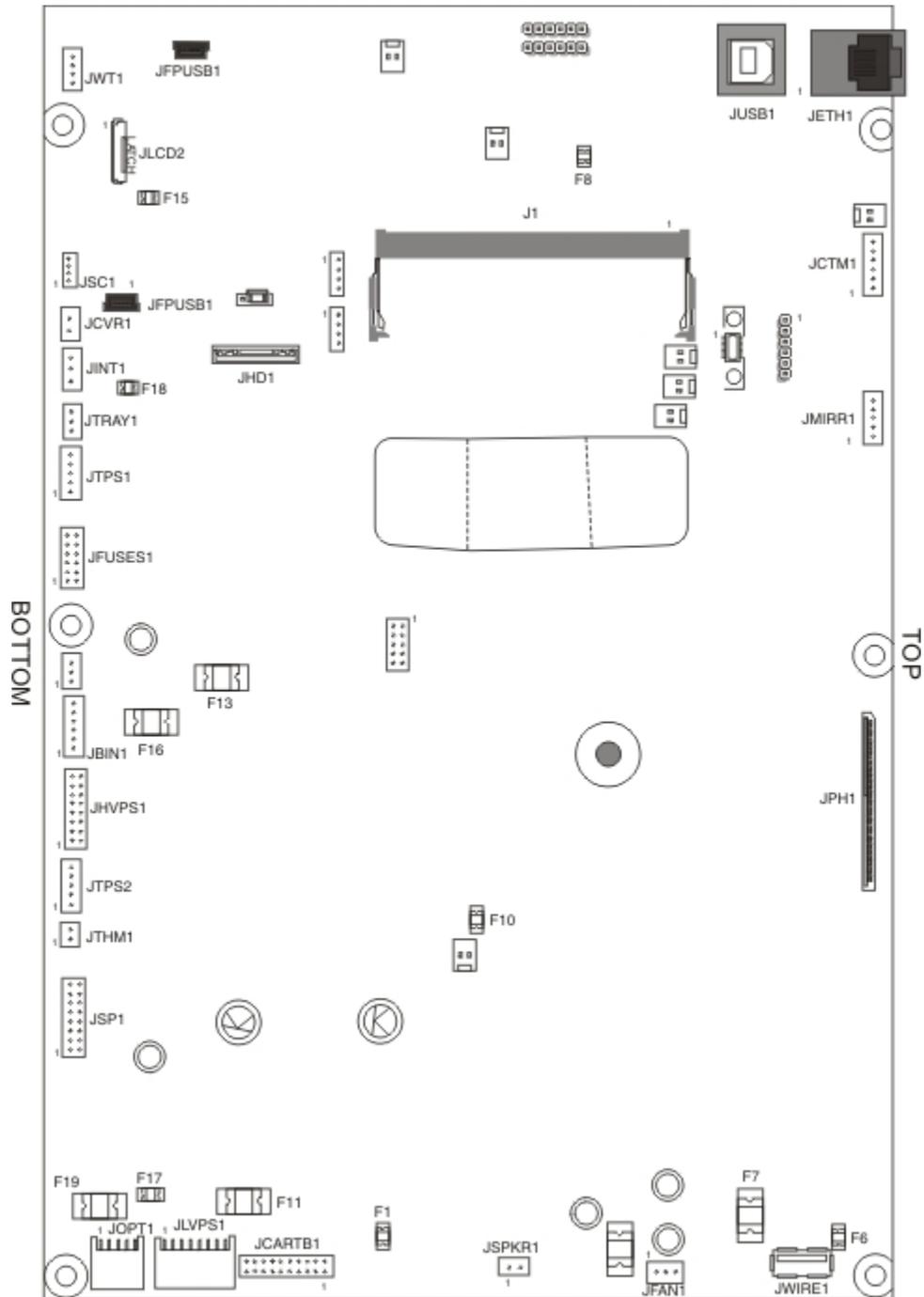


Note: Feel each rubber surface to verify it turns properly in the direction shown. The smoother surface pushes the paper toward the front of the printer.

Controller board for CX410 models:



Controller board for CX510 models:



See the table below for controller board connectors for CX310, CX410, and CX510 models:

Connector	Connects to	Pin no.	Signal
JADF1	Auto document feeder	15, 22	+3 V
		14, 16	+24 V
		17, 18, 23	Ground

Connector	Connects to	Pin no.	Signal
JBIN1	Narrow media sensor and fuser exit sensor <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Bin-full/narrow media—pins 1–3 • Fuser exit sensor—pins 4–6 	2	+3.3 V dc S_BIN_FB
		3	Ground
		5	+3.3 V dc FUSER_EXIT_SNSR
		6	Ground
JCARTB1	Drive motor for cartridges <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Black drive motor (rear motor) even pin numbers 2–20 • CMY (color) drive motor odd pin numbers 1–19 	4	+24 V dc V_CART2_WING_W
		6	+24 V dc V_CART2_WING_V
		8	+24 V dc V_CART2_WIND_U
		9	Ground
		10	+5 V dc_SW
		11	+5V dc_SW
		12	Ground
		13	+24 V dc V_CARTR1_WIND_U
		15	+24 V dc V_CARTR1_WIND_V
17	+24 V dc V_CARTR1_WIND_W		
JCCD1	Scanner	10,12	+5 V dc
		15, 16	+24 V dc
		1, 2, 7, 8, 13, 14, 17, 18, 23, 26, 29	Ground
JCTM1	Toner meter connector	1	+5V_SW
		6	Ground
JCVR1	Cover open switch	1	+24 V dc V_24V_CVR
		2	COVER_OPEN (cover open +0 V dc; cover closed +24 V dc)
JFAN1	System fan	1	+3.3 V dc FAN_FG
		2	Ground
JFAX1	Fax	N/A	Not testable in field
JFB1	FB stepper motor	N/A	Not testable in field

Connector	Connects to	Pin no.	Signal
JFUSES1	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Fuser • Motor pins—1–4 • Thermistor—black wire 5–6 • Duplex sensor (S1)—7–9 • Thermistor—white wire 10–11 	1	+24 V dc V_FUSER_PHA+ (doors closed)
		2	+24 V dc V_FUSER_PHA- (doors closed)
		3	+24 V dc V_FUSER_PHB+ (doors closed)
		4	+24 V dc V_FUSER_PHB- (doors closed)
		5	+2.3 V dc FUSER_HQ_THM
		6	FUSER_HK_THM_RTN, ground
		7	+5V_SW, +5 V dc
		8	Ground
		9	+3.3 V dc S1_MPF_SNS
		10	+2.5 V dc BUR_THM
		11	FUSER_BUR_THM_RTN, ground
		12	Ground, (no wire)
JFUSB1	Front panel USB	N/A	Not testable in field
JHVPS1	Developer/transfer HVPS	7	+3.3 V dc CMY_SRVO_OUT
		10	+3.3 V dc ITM_SRVO_OUT
		11	+3.3 V dc K_SRVO_OUT
		13	+24 V dc
		14	Ground
		16	Ground
JHS1	FB home sensor	1	+5 V dc
		2	Ground
JINT1	+5V safety interlock connector	1	+5 V dc VS_JINT-1
		2	Ground
		3	VS_INT, +5 V dc (door closed), 0 V dc (open)
JLCD1	Operator panel connector for CX410 and CX510 models	N/A	Not testable in the field

Connector	Connects to	Pin no.	Signal
JLVPS1	Low-voltage power supply	1	+5 V dc
		2	Ground
		3	+5 V dc
		4	Ground
		5	+5 V dc
		6	Ground
		7	+24 V dc
		8	Ground
		9	+24 V dc
		10	Ground
		11	+24 V dc
		12	Ground
		14	ZERO_XING_IN
		16	Ground
JMIRR1	Mirror motor connector	2	+3.3 V dc MM_LOCK
		4	Ground
		5	+24 V dc
JOPT1	Optional—Tray(s)	2	Ground
		3	Ground
		5	+24 V dc
		6	Ground
		7	+5 V dc +5V_OPTIONS
		9	Ground
JPH1	Printhead flat cable connector	N/A	Not testable in the field
JPJP1	Bin full sensor	2	3.3 V dc
		3	Ground
JSC1	Smart Chip cartridge	4	Ground

Connector	Connects to	Pin no.	Signal
JSP1	Smart pick drive (paper pick motor drive assembly) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Encoder—pins 1, 3, 5, 7, and 9 Smart pick—pins 2, 4 Motor—pins 6, 8, 10, 12 Input (S2) sensor—pins 13–16 	1	ANODE (no wire)
		2	+24 V dc M1_OUT1 (0 V dc with door open)
		3	Ground (no wire)
		4	+24 V dc M1_OUT2 (0 V dc with door open)
		6	Ground (no wire)
		7	Ground
		10	+5 V dc
		13	Ground (no wire)
		15	+5 V dc
		16	Ground
JTHM1	TPS thermistor connector	1	+1.5 V dc TPS_THERM_SNS
		2	TPS_SNS_RTN, ground
JSPKR1	Speaker	N/A	Not testable in the field
JTPS1	Toner patch sensor 1	3	Ground (no wire)
		5	Ground
JTPS2	Toner patch sensor 2	3	Ground (no wire)
		5	Ground
JTRAY1	Tray present sensor	2	+3.3 V dc
		3	Ground
JUSB1 Port	USB connector	N/A	N/A
JWIRE1	USB wireless connector	N/A	Not testable in the field
JWT1	Waste toner detection	3	+1.5 V dc
		4	Ground (no wire)

Maintenance

Inspection guide

The purpose of this Inspection guide is to aid you in identifying the intervals, based on page count, at which parts must be Inspected (for visible physical damage), cleaned, or replaced.

If any unsafe conditions exist, find out how serious the hazard could be and if you can continue before you correct the hazard.

As you service the machine, check for the following:

- Damaged, missing, or altered parts, especially in the area of the On/Off switch and the power supply
- Damaged, missing, or altered covers, especially in the area of the top cover and the power supply cover
- Possible safety exposure from any non-Lexmark attachments
- Printer and input options are sitting flat (for example, not sitting on cables or hanging over a ledge)
- Printer is properly set on any input options

Use the following tables to determine when specified parts should be inspected:

Lexmark CX310, CX410	EVERY SERVICE CALL	EVERY 200K	NOTES
Media tray - All			
Media tray side guides	Inspect	Inspect	Check for correct positioning.
Media tray length guides	Inspect	Inspect	Check for correct positioning.
Separation roller	Inspect, clean if needed	Replace	Clean with damp cloth.
Tray lift gear assembly	Inspect	Inspect	Ensure correct operation.
Transfer roller	Inspect	Replace	Ensure correct installation.
Fuser	Inspect	Replace	Ensure correct installation.
Media feeders - All			
Media tray pick roller	Inspect, clean if needed	Replace	Clean with a damp cloth.
MPF pick roller	Inspect, clean if needed	Inspect, clean if needed	Clean with a damp cloth.
Covers and doors			
Rear door	Inspect	Inspect	Ensure correct operation and closure.
Fuser access door	Inspect	Inspect	Ensure correct operation and closure.
Paper path			
Duplex path	Inspect	Inspect	Check for media fragments and tears.

Miscellaneous			
Toner spillage	Clean	Clean	Remove all toner spillage from the printer.
Pick tires	Inspect, clean if needed	Inspect, clean if needed	Check for toner contamination.
Lexmark CX510	EVERY SERVICE CALL	EVERY 200K	NOTES
Media tray - All			
Media tray side guides	Inspect	Inspect	Check for correct positioning.
Media tray length guides	Inspect	Inspect	Check for correct positioning.
Separation roller	Inspect, clean if needed	Replace	Clean with damp cloth.
Tray lift gear assembly	Inspect	Inspect	Ensure correct operation.
Media feeders - All			
Media tray pick roller	Inspect, clean if needed	Replace	Clean with damp cloth.
MPF pick roller	Inspect, clean if needed	Inspect, clean if needed	Clean with damp cloth.
Transfer roller	Inspect	Replace	Ensure correct installation.
Fuser	Inspect	Replace	Ensure correct installation.
Fuser wiper	Inspect	Inspect	Ensure correct operation.
Covers and doors			
Rear door	Inspect	Inspect	Ensure correct operation.
Fuser access door	Inspect	Inspect	Ensure correct operation and closure.
Paper path			
Duplex path	Inspect	Inspect	Ensure media fragments and tears are not present.
Miscellaneous			
Toner spillage	Clean	Clean	Remove all toner spillage from the printer.
Pick tires	Inspect, clean if needed	Inspect, clean if needed	Check for toner contamination.

Scheduled maintenance

The operator panel displays the message *80* or *Scheduled Maintenance* when it reaches certain page counts. It is necessary to replace the appropriate maintenance kit at certain intervals to maintain the print quality and reliability of the printer. If needed, reset the maintenance counter after performing scheduled maintenance.

Maintenance kits

After 85,000 printed pages (sides) a maintenance kit may be required.

It is necessary to replace the fuser assembly and ITU to maintain the print quality and reliability of the printer. The parts are available as a maintenance kit with the following part numbers:

Part number and kit	Contents
40X7615—115V Maintenance Kit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 115V fuser • ITU
40X7616—230V Maintenance Kit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 230V fuser • ITU
40X7617—100V Maintenance Kit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 100V fuser • ITU

The ADF requires scheduled maintenance at each 200K page-count interval. It is necessary to replace the ADF feed roller, the ADF pick roller, and the ADF separation roller guide at this interval to maintain ADF media feed reliability. The parts are available as a maintenance kit with the following part number:

40X7530—200K ADF Maintenance Kit (MFP only)

When performing the 160K, 320K, or 480K scheduled maintenance procedure, the following areas should be cleaned of media dust and toner contamination:

- Media trays
- PC cartridge area
- Developer housings area (480K)
- Transfer roll area
- Duplex area
- Standard bin
- Bridge unit area (if equipped)
- Finisher media bins (if equipped)

Resetting the Roller Kit counter

After replacing a roller kit, the roller kit counter must be reset to zero to clear the “81 Replace Roller kit” message.

To reset the maintenance count:

- 1 Turn off the printer.
- 2 Enter the Configuration Menu.
 - a Press and hold the **2** and **6** buttons simultaneously.
 - b Turn on the printer.

c Release the buttons after 10 seconds. The Configuration Menu appears on the LCD.

3 Touch **Reset Roller Kit Counter** from the Configuration Menu.

4 From the options displayed, select the roller kit to reset.

5 Touch **Yes** to reset the roller kit counter value. Touch **No** or **Back** to return to the previous menu.

The roller kit count resets to zero, and the LCD returns to the Configuration Menu.

Preventive maintenance

Between scheduled maintenance intervals, paper feed, paper transport, and image quality problems can occur. Some preventive maintenance procedures can help prevent issues like these.

Device-specific preventive maintenance

To clean the touchscreen and key pad, use the LCD cleaning cloth. A single two-step LCD cleaning cloth is stored in the compartment beneath the exit tray. Additional cleaning cloths are available.

The following table lists the parts needed to perform preventive maintenance:

Parts needed to perform preventive maintenance

Part number	Description	Maintenance interval
40X0392	LCD cleaning kit	As needed

Lubrication specification

Lubricate only when parts are replaced or as needed, not on a scheduled basis. Use of lubricants other than those specified in this service manual can cause premature failure. Some unauthorized lubricants might chemically attack polycarbonate parts.

Use the following lubricants:

- IBM no. 10 oil, PN/ 1280443 (Approved equivalents: Mobil DTE27, Shell Tellus 100, Fuchs Renolin MR30)
- IBM no. 23 grease
- Grease P/N 99A0394 and Nyogel type 744—Use this type of lubricant to lubricate the Fuser Drive Assembly.
- Nyogel 744—Use this type of lubricant to lubricate the ITU and Cartridge Drive Assemblies.

The motor drive FRUs contain the proper lubricant in the FRU. Use only the lubricant included.

Cleaning the printer

Cleaning the exterior of the printer

- 1 Make sure that the printer is turned off and unplugged from the electrical outlet.



CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD: To avoid the risk of electric shock when cleaning the exterior of the printer, unplug the power cord from the wall outlet and disconnect all cables from the printer before proceeding.

- 2 Remove paper from the standard exit bin.
- 3 Dampen a clean, lint-free cloth with water.

Warning—Potential Damage:

Do not use household cleaners or detergents, as they might damage the finish of the printer.

- 4 Wipe only the outside of the printer, making sure to include the standard exit bin.
- 5 Make sure the paper support and standard exit bin are dry before beginning a new print job.

Cleaning the scanner glass

Clean the scanner glass if you encounter print quality problems, such as streaks on copied or scanned images.

- 1 Slightly dampen a soft, lint-free cloth or paper towel with water.
- 2 Open the scanner cover.



- 3 Wipe the areas shown below, and let them dry.



Scanner areas

Callout	Description
1	White underside of the ADF cover
2	White underside of the scanner cover
3	Scanner glass
4	ADF glass

- 4 Close the scanner cover.

Cleaning the printhead lenses

- 1 Open the front door.
- 2 Slide the release lever to the left to unlock the cover.
- 3 Open the cover.
- 4 Locate the printhead wipers.
- 5 Gently pull the printhead wiper out until it stops, and then slowly slide it back into place.
- 6 Close the cover.
- 7 Slide the release lever to the right to lock the cover.
- 8 Close the front door.

Parts catalog

- “Legend” on page 320
- “Assembly 1: Covers” on page 321
- “Assembly 2: Scanner” on page 323
- “Assembly 3: Paperpath” on page 325
- “Assembly 4: Operator panels” on page 329
- “Assembly 5: Electronics” on page 333
- “Assembly 6: Cables” on page 337
- “Assembly 7: Media drawers and trays” on page 339
- “Assembly 8: Options and miscellaneous” on page 341
- “Screw and retainer identification table” on page 342

Legend

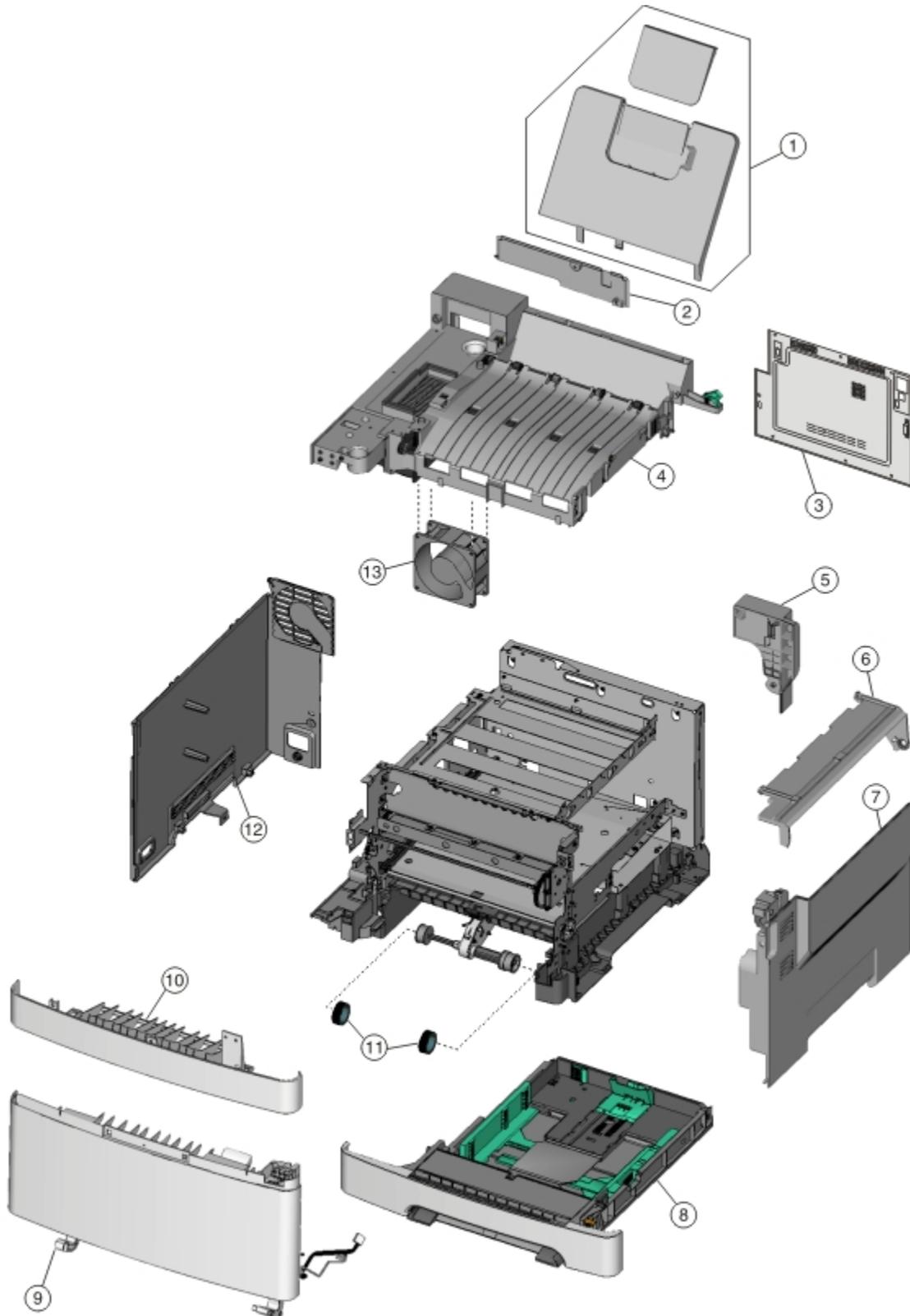
The following column headings are used in the parts catalog:

- **Asm-index**—Identifies the assembly and the item in the diagram. For example, 3-1 indicates Assembly 3 and item 1 in the table.
- **Part number**—Identifies the unique number that correlates with the part.
- **Units/mach**—Refers to the number of units actually used in the base machine or product.
- **Units/option**—Refers to the number of units in a particular option.
- **Units/FRU**—Refers to the number of units in a particular FRU.
- **Description**—A brief description of the part.

The following abbreviations are used in the parts catalog:

- **NS** (not shown) in the Asm-index column indicates that the part is procurable but is not pictured in the illustration.
- **PP** (parts packet) in the Description column indicates that the part is contained in a parts packet.

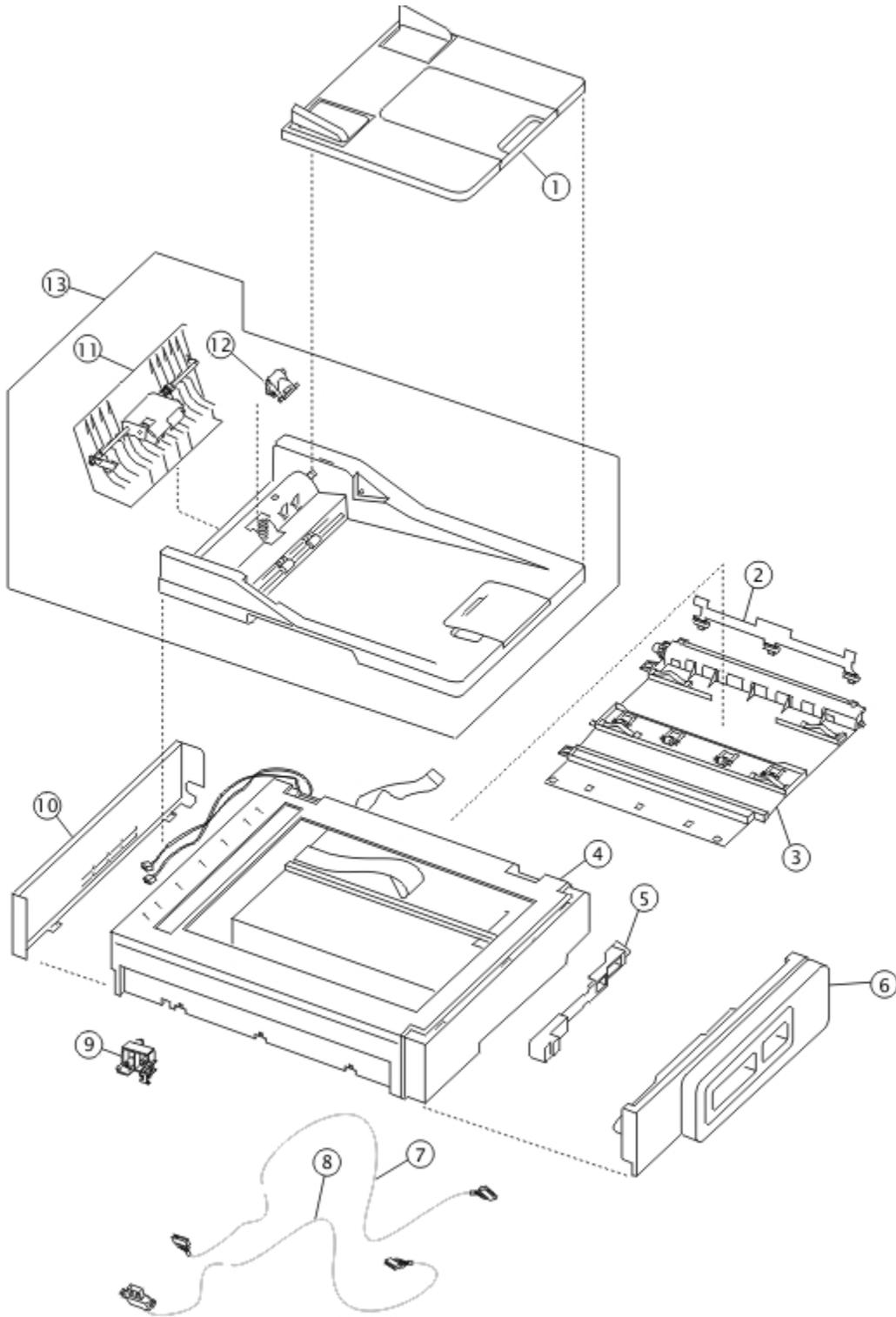
Assembly 1: Covers



Assembly 1: Covers

Asm-index	P/N	Units/mach	Units/FRU	Description	Removal procedure
1-1	40X7811	1	1	Output bin tray	"Output bin tray and exit bail removal" on page 213
2	40X7810	1	1	Back AIO cable cover	
3	40X7845	1	1	Rear cover, CX310	"Rear cover removal" on page 218
3	40X7846	1	1	Rear cover, CX410	"Rear cover removal" on page 218
3	40X7814	1	1	Rear cover, CX510	"Rear cover removal" on page 218
4	40X7809	1	1	Top cover assembly (includes fan)	"Top cover assembly removal" on page 222
5	40X7824	1	1	AIO link	"AIO link removal" on page 233
6	40X7802	1	1	Toner AIO cover	"AIO toner cover removal" on page 232
7	40X7823	1	1	Right AIO cover	"Right cover assembly removal" on page 220
8	40X7645	1	1	250-sheet tray assembly	"Paper pick motor drive assembly (standard tray) removal" on page 286
9	40X7801	1	1	Front cover	"Front cover assembly removal" on page 214
10	40X5490	1	1	Front middle cover	"Front middle cover removal" on page 216
11	40X5168	2	2	Pick tires	"Pick tires removal" on page 305
12	40X7632	1	1	Left cover	"Left cover assembly removal" on page 216
13	40X7634	1	1	System fan	"System fan removal" on page 290
NS	40X8089	1	1	650-sheet drawer	"650-sheet duo drawer assembly removal" on page 303
NS	40X8091	1	1	650-sheet tray assembly	"650-sheet duo drawer tray assembly removal" on page 303
NS	40X7812	1	1	Media bail	"Output bin tray and exit bail removal" on page 213

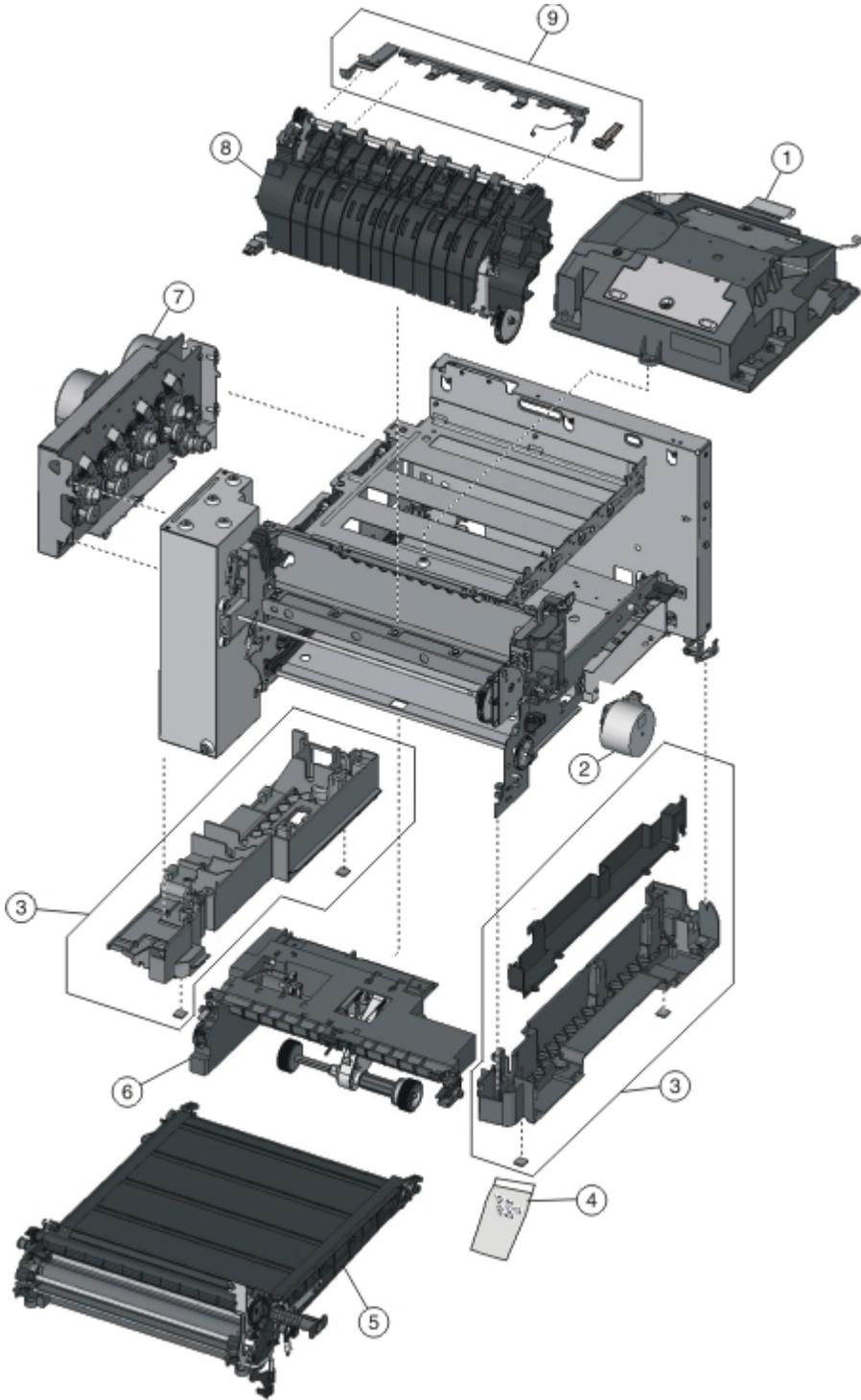
Assembly 2: Scanner



Assembly 2: Scanner

Asm-index	P/N	Units/mach	Units/FRU	Description	Removal procedure
2-1	40X9054	1	1	ADF input tray	
2	40X5872	1	1	Bin full flag	
3	40X7833	1	1	Redrive assembly	
4	40X7829	1	1	Flatbed scanner assembly	
5	40X7827	1	1	AIO release lever with spring	
6	40X7819	1	1	Right scanner cover	
7	N/A	1	1	See "Operator panels" on page 329.	
8	40X5480	1	1	USB thumbdrive cable (CX510)	
8	40X7836	1	1	USB thumbdrive cable (CX410)	
9	40X7822	1	1	Flatbed pivot link (front left)	
9	40X7834	1	1	Flatbed pivot link (rear right)	
10	40X7820	1	1	Left scanner cover	
11	40X7842	1	1	Simplex top cover assembly	
11	40X7843	1	1	Duplex ADF top cover assembly	
12	40X6247	1	1	Simplex separator pad assembly	
12	40X9108	1	1	Duplex separator roller assembly	
13	40X7830	1	1	Duplex ADF assembly	
13	40X7831	1	1	Simplex ADF assembly	
NS	40X9110	1	1	Restraint pad	
NS	40X6243	1	1	Flatbed cushion	
NS	40X2252	1	4	Redrive spacer screws	

Assembly 3: Paperpath

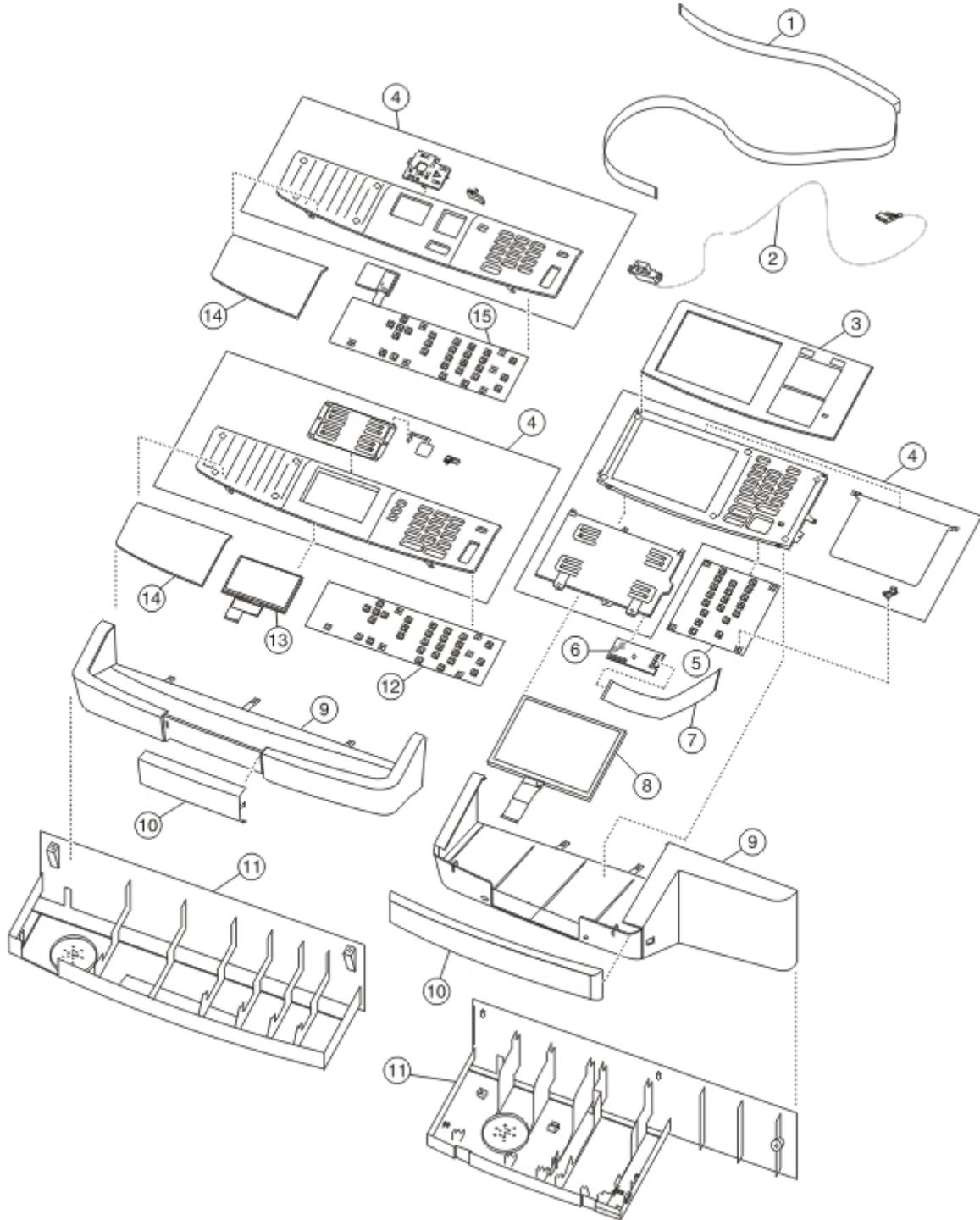


Assembly 3: Paperpath

Asm-index	P/N	Units/mach	Units/FRU	Description	Removal procedure
3-1	40X7627	1	1	Printhead	
2	40X7629	1	1	Fuser drive motor assembly	
3	40X7646	1	1	Lower left frame and lower right frame with cable cover	“Lower left frame removal” on page 266, “Lower right frame removal” on page 272
4	40X7648	1	2X	Miscellaneous screws <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Taptite M3 L6 panhead screw (10) • M3x6 panhead screw (3) • Shoulder screw (1) • M3.5 internal lock washer (3) • M3x8 screw (3) • 3.5x6mm flat top screw (5) • 3.5x8.. flat top screw (5) • Taptite M3 L4.5 panhead screw (3) • M3x8LG W-HD machine screw (3) • Metal ROLN M3.5 8L screw (2) • Plastic ROLN 2.9 8L screw (6) • Plastic ROLN 3.5 6L screw (10) • Plastic ROLN 3.5 8L screw (4) • Plastic ROLN 3.5 10L screw (2) • M3.5x8 SEMS machine screw (3) 	
4	40X7832	1	1	Screw packet	
4	40X7652	1	1	Miscellaneous screws <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Front cover latch (2x) • ITU holddown (2x) • Fuser holddown (2x) • Primary tray bias (2x) 	
5	40X7610	1	1	Transfer module	
6	40X7614	1	1	Paper pick motor drive assembly	
7	40X7628	1	1	Main gear drive assembly with motors	
8	40X7622	1	1	Fuser assembly, 110 V	
8	40X7623	1	1	Fuser assembly, 220 V	
8	40X7624	1	1	Fuser assembly, 100 V	
9	40X0411	1	1	Narrow media flag	

Asm-index	P/N	Units/mach	Units/FRU	Description	Removal procedure
NS	40X7617	1	1	100 V maintenance kit	
NS	40X7615	1	1	115 V maintenance kit	
NS	40X7616	1	1	230 V maintenance kit	

Assembly 4: Operator panels

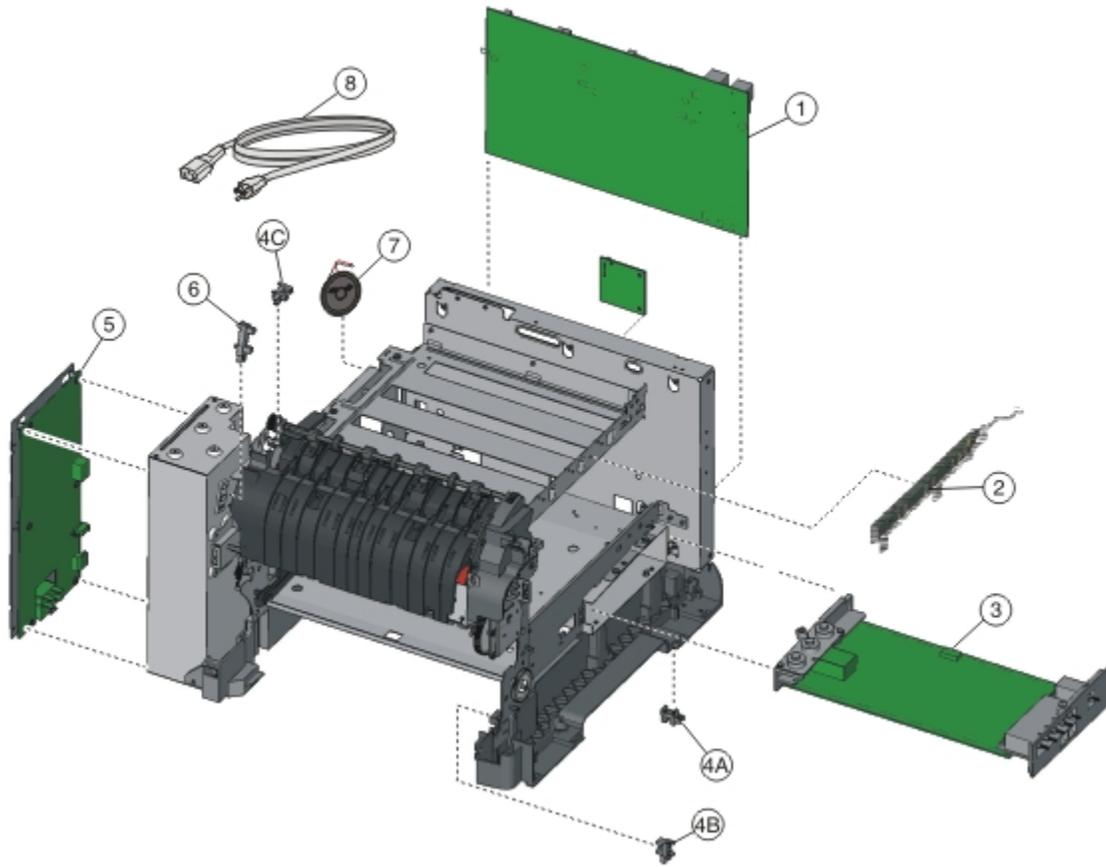


Assembly 4: Operator panels

Asm-index	P/N	Units/mach	Units/FRU	Description	Removal procedure
4-1	40X7835	1	1	UICC to controller board (CX310, CX410)	"Controller board removal" on page 235
1	40X7837	1	1	UICC to controller board (CX510)	"Controller board removal" on page 235
2	40X7836	1	1	USB cable (CX410)	"Operator panel removal (for CX310 and CX410 models only)" on page 279
2	40X5480	1	1	USB cable (CX510)	"Operator panel removal (for CX510 models only)" on page 285
3	40X7818	1	1	Bezel (CX510)	"Operator panel bezel removal" on page 278
4	40X7807	1	1	Operator panel assembly (CX310)	"Operator panel removal (for CX310 and CX410 models only)" on page 279
4	40X7800	1	1	Operator panel assembly (CX410)	"Operator panel removal (for CX310 and CX410 models only)" on page 279
4	40X7815	1	1	Operator panel assembly (CX510)	"Operator panel removal (for CX510 models only)" on page 285
5	40X9130	1	1	PCBA MFP UICC (CX510)	"Operator panel removal (for CX510 models only)" on page 285
6	40X9115	1	1	Interface card (CX510)	"Operator panel removal (for CX510 models only)" on page 285
7	40X7828	1	1	Cable (interface card to UICC)	"Operator panel removal (for CX310 and CX410 models only)" on page 279, "Operator panel removal (for CX510 models only)" on page 285
8	40X7861	1	1	Display (CX510)	"Operator panel removal (for CX510 models only)" on page 285
9	40X7838	1	1	Upper front cover (CX510)	"Operator panel removal (for CX510 models only)" on page 285

Asm-index	P/N	Units/mach	Units/FRU	Description	Removal procedure
9	40X7839	1	1	Upper front cover (CX310, CX410)	"Operator panel removal (for CX310 and CX410 models only)" on page 279
10	40X7808	1	1	Front logo cover (CX310, CX410)	"Operator panel logo plate removal" on page 278
10	40X7816	1	1	Front logo cover (CX510)	"Operator panel logo plate removal" on page 278
11	40X7840	1	1	User interface support bracket (CX310, CX410)	"Operator panel removal (for CX310 and CX410 models only)" on page 279
11	40X7841	1	1	User interface support bracket (CX510)	"Operator panel removal (for CX510 models only)" on page 285
12	40X9114	1	1	PCBA (CX410)	"Operator panel removal (for CX310 and CX410 models only)" on page 279
13	40X7116	1	1	Display (CX410)	"Operator panel removal (for CX310 and CX410 models only)" on page 279
14	40X7803	1	1	Operator panel bezel (CX410)	"Operator panel bezel removal" on page 278
14	40X7817	1	1	Operator panel bezel (CX310)	"Operator panel bezel removal" on page 278
15	40X7821	1	1	Display and PCBA (CX310)	"Operator panel removal (for CX310 and CX410 models only)" on page 279
NS	40X6517	1	1	Speaker	"Speaker removal" on page 290

Assembly 5: Electronics

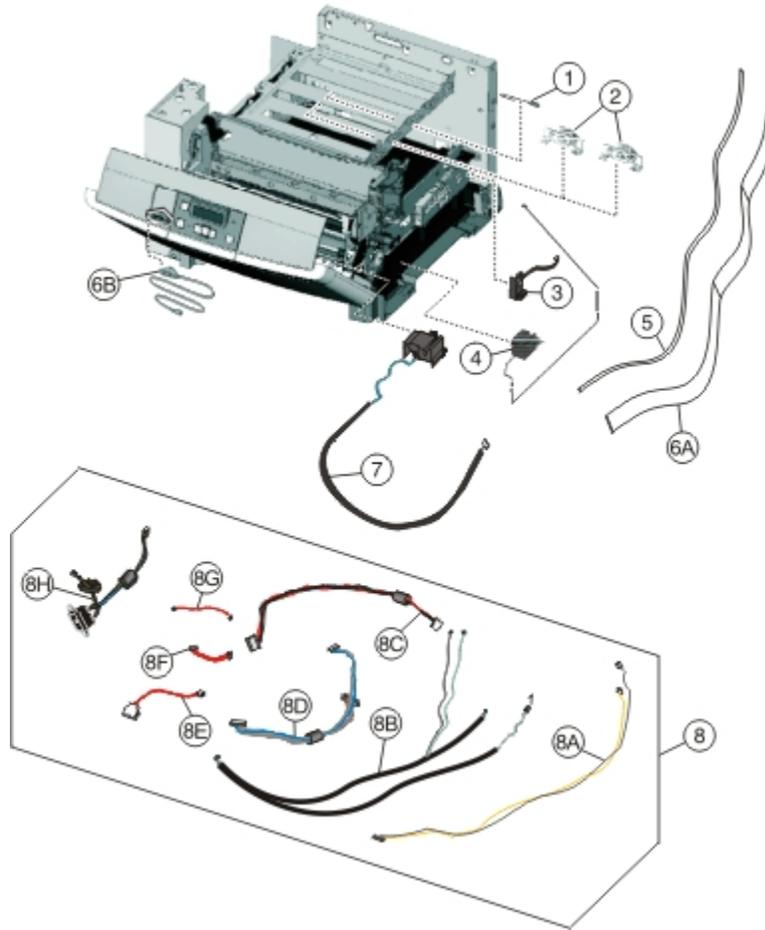


Assembly 5: Electronics

Asm-index	P/N	Units/mach	Units/FRU	Description	Removal procedure
4-1	40X7804	1	1	Controller board, CX310	"Controller board removal" on page 235
1	40X7805	1	1	Controller board, CX410	"Controller board removal" on page 235
1	40X7806	1	1	Controller board, CX510	"Controller board removal" on page 235
2	40X7620	1	1	Toner meter cycle card assembly	"Toner meter cycle (TMC) card removal" on page 294
3	40X7625	1	1	High-voltage power supply	"High-voltage power supply (HVPS) removal" on page 258
4	40X7301	3	1	Photo sensor and retainer (one per package), used for: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Tray present sensor (4A) • Duplex sensor (4B) • Narrow media sensor (4C) 	"Tray present sensor removal" on page 298, "Duplex sensor removal" on page 241, "Narrow media sensor removal" on page 276
5	40X7626	1	1	Low-voltage power supply (universal power supply)	"Low-voltage power supply (LVPS) assembly removal" on page 264
6	40X5413	1	1	Fuser exit sensor	"Fuser exit sensor removal" on page 256

Asm-index	P/N	Units/mach	Units/FRU	Description	Removal procedure
7	40X6517	1	1	Speaker	"Speaker removal" on page 290
8	40X1766	1	1	Power cord, 2.5 m (straight): USA, Canada, Bolivia, Peru (shown)	N/A
8	40X0288	1	1	Power cord, 2.5 m (straight): Argentina	N/A
8	40X0301	1	1	Power cord, 2.5 m (straight): Australia	N/A
8	40X0259	1	1	Power cord, 2.5 m (straight): Brazil	N/A
8	40X0273	1	1	Power cord, 2.5 m (straight): Chile, Uruguay, Italy	N/A
8	40X1774	1	1	Power cord, 2.5 m (straight): Denmark	N/A
8	40X0275	1	1	Power cord, 2.5 m (straight): Israel	N/A
8	40X3609	1	1	Power cord, 2.5 m (straight): Japan	N/A
8	40X1792	1	1	Power cord, 2.5 m (straight): Korea	N/A
8	40X3141	1	1	Power cord, 2.5 m (straight): Paraguay	N/A
8	40X0303	1	1	Power cord, 2.5 m (straight): PRC	N/A
8	40X1773	1	1	Power cord, 2.5 m (straight): South Africa	N/A
8	40X1772	1	1	Power cord, 2.5 m (straight): Switzerland	N/A
8	40X1791	1	1	Power cord, 2.5 m (straight): Taiwan	N/A
8	40X0271	1	1	Power cord, 2.5 m (straight): United Kingdom	N/A
8	40X7229	1	1	Power cord, 2.5 m (straight): India	N/A
9	40X7852	1	1	N/A	N/A
NS	40X8448	1	1	Fax interface cable	N/A
NS	40X7813	1	1	AIO cables <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Redrive jam or bin full sensor cable • 770 mm ground cable • Speaker cable 	N/A

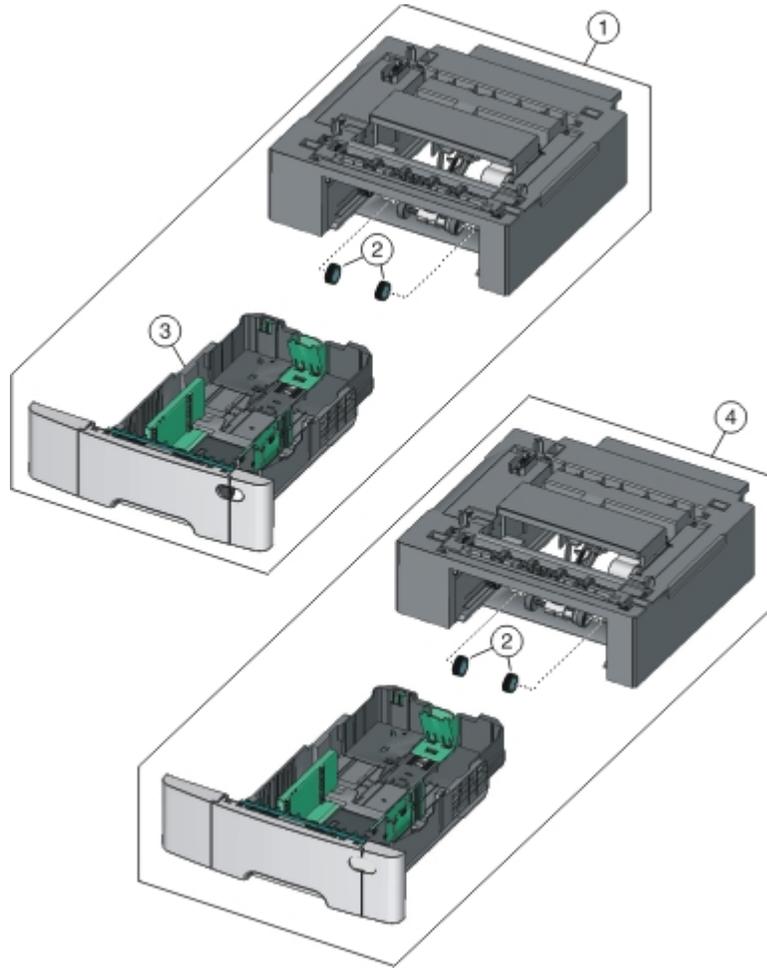
Assembly 6: Cables



Assembly 6: Cables

Asm-index	P/N	Units/mach	Units/FRU	Description	Removal procedure
5-1	40X5429	1	1	Transfer module paper path thermistor	N/A
2	40X5414	2	1	Toner density sensors, left or right (one in package)	N/A
3	40X7046	1	1	Waste toner bottle sensor	N/A
4	40X7636	4	1	Toner cartridge contacts (Pogo pin)	N/A
5	40X7835	1	1	Operator panel cable, CX310	N/A
6	40X7618	1	1	Front and right side interlock switch cover assembly	N/A
7	40X7647	1	1	Cable packet, used for: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Fuser exit/narrow media to controller board (8A) • Fuser motor, thermistor, and duplex sensor to controller board (8B) • LVPS to controller board (8C) • CMY/K motors to controller board (8D) • Tray 2 to controller board (8E) • HVPS to controller board (8F) • Tray present sensor to controller board (8G) • AC power to LVPS (8H) • Speaker cable (NS) 	N/A
NS	40X8670	1	1	Printhead-to-controller board cable	N/A

Assembly 7: Media drawers and trays



Assembly 7: Media drawers and trays

Asm-index	P/N	Units/mach	Units/FRU	Description	Removal procedure
7-1	40X8089	1	0	Optional 650-sheet duo drawer (complete) - (includes 100-sheet MPF)	"650-sheet duo drawer assembly removal" on page 303
2	40X5168	2	2	Pick tires	pick-tire-removal-topic
3	40X8091	1	1	650-sheet Duo Drawer tray assembly	"650-sheet duo drawer tray assembly removal" on page 303
4	40X8090	1	1	Optional 550-sheet drawer (complete) - CX410 and CX510 only	N/A

Assembly 8: Options and miscellaneous

Asm-index	P/N	Units/opt	Units/FRU	Description	Removal procedure
6-NS	40X7615	1	1	115 V Maintenance kit (fuser, transfer module, duplex reference edge)	N/A
NS	40X7616	1	1	230 V Maintenance kit (fuser, transfer module, duplex reference edge)	N/A
NS	40X7617	1	1	100 V Maintenance kit (fuser, transfer module, duplex reference edge)	N/A
NS	40X8555	1	1	256MB DDR DRAM DIMM card assembly	N/A
NS	40X1455	1	1	64MB Flash card memory	N/A
NS	40X8568	1	1	Korean font card assembly	N/A
NS	40X8557	1	1	Simplified Chinese font card assembly	N/A
NS	40X8556	1	1	Traditional Chinese font card assembly	N/A
NS	40X8569	1	1	Japanese font card assembly	N/A
N/A	40X1368	1	1	USB Cable, packaged (2 m)	N/A
NS	3049485	1	1	Field relocation package assembly	N/A
NS	40X7060	1	1	Wireless print server (external)	N/A

Screw and retainer identification table

The following table contains screw and fastener descriptions, locations, and quantities necessary to service the printer. Pay careful attention to each screw type location when performing a removal. You must install the correct screw type in each location during reassembly.

The size of the screws and fasteners are as close to their actual size as possible, as long as the printout is not scaled or resized.

Screw and retainer identification table

P/N	Screw type	Location	Qty
18B0832 	Taptite M3 L6 panhead screw	Controller board	6
		EP drive	6
		Fuser drive assembly	2
		Fuser sensor	1
		Left cover	1
		Lower left frame	4
		LVPS assembly	6
		LVPS cage	4
		Paper pick motor drive assembly	2
		Rear cover	8
		Toner density sensor	4
		Toner meter cycle	2
		Top cover	5
Wireless antenna	1		
18B1236 	M3x6 panhead screw	Lower right frame	1
3000114 	Shoulder screw	Paper pick motor drive assembly	1
3000167 	M3.5 internal lock washer	Fuser assembly	1
		Top cover	1

3001435	M3x8 screw	Lower right frame	1
3003334	3.5x6 mm flat top screw	CX410 display bracket	3
		CX510 UICC card	5
3005980	3.5x8 mm flat top screw	Front door	5
3068020	Taptite M3 L4.5 Panhead screw	Lower right frame	3
88A0154	M3x8LG W-HD MCH screw	Printhead	3
88A0481	M3.5x8 SEMS MACH screw	Fuser assembly	1
		Top cover	1
88A0213	Metal ROLN m3.5 8L screw	Lower left frame ground cable	1
88A0313	Plastic ROLN 2.9 8L screw	Toner cartridge contacts	1
		CS410 UICC card	5

88A0322 	Plastic ROLN 3.5 6L screw	AC receptacle Cable cover CX510 Display support bracket Duplex aligner Duplex reference edge Front door CX410 and CX510 Front USB connector HVPS Left cover Lower left frame Operator panel CX510 Operator panel back cover CX510 speaker Toner meter cycle Toner supply door Top cover Waste toner bottle contact	2 5 4 4 3 4 2 1 3 1 4 3 2 2 1 4 1
88A0323 	Plastic ROLN 3.5 8L screw	AC receptacle Duplex aligner	2 2
88A0324 	Plastic ROLN 3.5 10L screw	Duplex aligner	2

Appendix A: Printer specifications

- “Power specifications” on page 345
- “Electrical specifications” on page 345
- “Operating clearances for CX310 models” on page 346
- “Operating clearances for CX410 and CX510 models” on page 347
- “Acoustics” on page 347
- “Environment” on page 348
- “Processor” on page 348

Power specifications

The average nominal power requirements for the base printer configuration are shown in the following table (power levels are shown in watts):

Note: Some modes may not apply to all models.

Printing states	Power
Off	0.0W
Sleep Mode	7W
Hibernate Mode	1W
Standby Mode	50W
Ready Mode	40W
Simplex printing	500W
Duplex printing	550W

Maximum current shown in amp ergs.

Notes:

- Using a power converter or inverter is not recommended.
- The CX310, CX410, and CX510 models are ENERGY STAR Qualified.
- All models ship with Sleep Mode set to On.

Electrical specifications

Low-voltage models

- 100 to 127 V ac at 50 to 60 hertz (Hz) nominal
- 90 to 137 V ac, extreme

High-voltage models

- 220 to 240 V ac at 50 to 60 hertz (Hz) nominal (not available in all countries and regions)

Operating clearances for CX310 models

Note: Allow additional clearance around the printer for adding options, such as additional input trays.



Operating clearances for CX310 models

1	Right side	152 mm (6 in.)
2	Front	508 mm (20 in.)
3	Left side	76 mm (3 in.)
4	Rear	102 mm (4 in.)
5	Top	254 mm (10 in.)

Operating clearances for CX410 and CX510 models

Note: Allow additional clearance around the printer for adding options, such as additional input trays.



Operating clearances for CX410 and CX510 models

1	Right side	305 mm (12 in.)
2	Front	508 mm (20 in.)
3	Left side	76 mm (3 in.)
4	Rear	101.02 mm (4 in.)
5	Top	762 mm (30 in.)

Acoustics

All measurements are made in accordance with ISO 7779 and conform with ISO 9296.

Note: Some modes may not apply to all models.

Acoustic measurements for CX310 models

Status	1-meter average sound pressure dBA
Printing	48 dBA
Ready	Inaudible

Acoustic measurements for CX410 and CX510 models

Status	1-meter average sound pressure dBA
Printing	50 dBA
Ready	Inaudible

Note: Values are subject to change. See <http://support.lexmark.com> for current values.

Environment

Printer Temperature and Humidity

- Operating
 - Temperature: 60 to 90° F (15.6 to 32.2° C)
 - Relative humidity: 8 to 80%
 - Maximum wet bulb temperature: 73° F (22.8° C)
 - Altitude: 10,000 ft. (0 to 3,048 meters)
 - Atmospheric pressure: 74.6 kPa
- Power off
 - Temperature: 50 to 110° F (10 to 43.3° C)
 - Relative humidity: 8 to 80%
 - Maximum wet bulb temperature: 80.1° F (26.7° C)
 - Altitude: 10,000 ft. (0 to 3,048 meters)
 - Atmospheric pressure: 74.6 kPa
- Ambient operating environment*
 - Temperature: 60 to 90° F (15.6 to 32.2° C)
 - Relative humidity: 8 to 80%
- Storage and shipping (packaged printer) with or without print cartridge
 - Temperature: -40 to 110° F (-40 to 43.3° C)

*In some cases, performance specifications (such as paper OCF, EP cartridge usage) are measured at an ambient condition.

Processor

1.2 GHZ Power PC processor

Appendix B: Options and features

- “Available internal options” on page 349
- “Media handling options” on page 349
- “Option configurations” on page 350

Lexmark CX310, CX410, and CX510 support only Lexmark CX310, CX410, and CX510 paper-handling options. These options are not compatible with any other Lexmark printer. Some of the following options are not available in every country or region.

Available internal options

- Memory cards
 - Printer memory
 - Flash memory
 - Fonts
- Firmware cards
 - Bar Code
 - PrintCryption™
- Printer hard disk
- Lexmark™ Internal Solutions Ports (ISP)
 - RS-232-C Serial ISP
 - Parallel 1284-B ISP
 - MarkNet™ N8250 802.11 b/g/n Wireless ISP
 - MarkNet N8130 10/100 Fiber ISP
 - MarkNet N8120 10/100/1000 Ethernet ISP

Media handling options

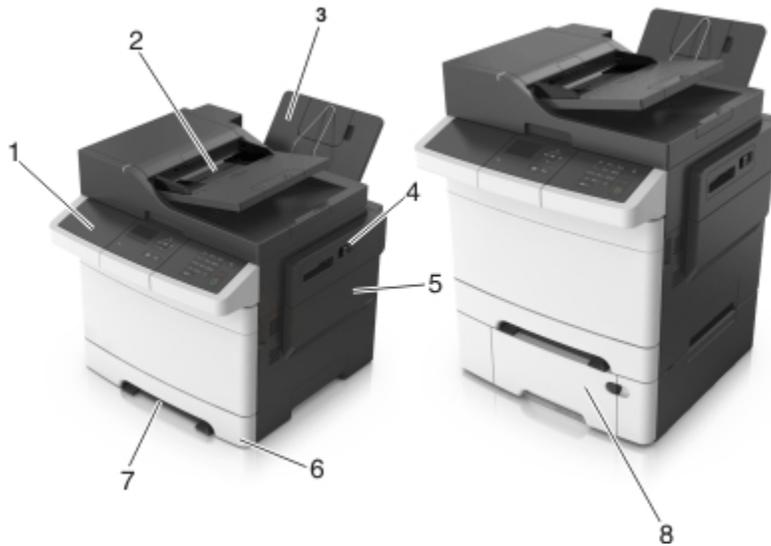
Note: Some media handling options may not be available for all models.

Input options:

- Standard integrated 250-sheet tray (Tray 1)
- Standard 100-sheet multipurpose feeder
- Standard 1-sheet manual feed slot
- Optional 550-sheet tray (CX410 and CX510 models only)

Output options

- Standard 100-sheet sensing bin
- Optional 650-sheet duo tray with integrated multipurpose feeder (Tray 2)



Output options

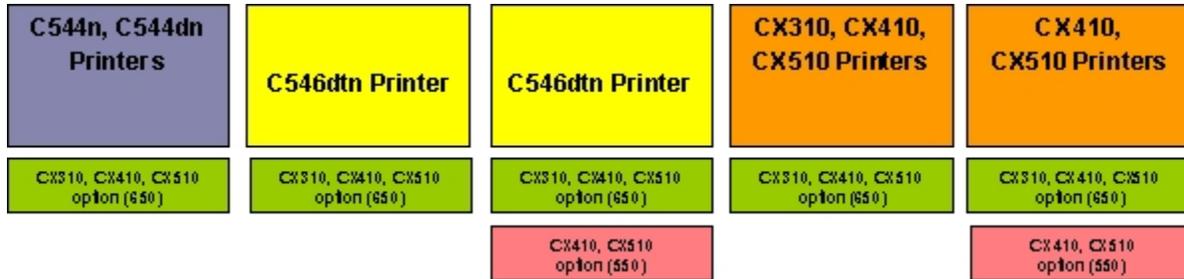
1	Printer control panel
2	Automatic document feeder (ADF)
3	Standard bin
4	Top door latch
5	Right side cover
6	Standard 250-sheet tray (Tray 1)
7	Manual feeder
8	Optional 650-sheet duo tray with integrated multipurpose feeder (Tray 2)

Option configurations

The CX310, CX410, and CX510 optional drawers can be configured to run in a stacked configuration. Unlike the C544n and C544dn printers, the CX310, CX410, and CX510 printers support a maximum of two stacked optional drawers—one 650 DuoDrawer at tray 2, and an additional 550 drawer at tray 3. The CX310, CX410, and CX510 DuoDrawers are also designed to be downward compatible with the C544n and C544dn printers. Because the C544n and C544dn 650 DuoDrawer, and the CX310, CX410, and CX510 650 DuoDrawer and 550 drawer share the same autoconnect features, there are several ways in which the drawers can be stacked together. The following describes three types of option configurations.

Supported configurations

These configurations are valid and supported. The options are designed and tested according to these types of configurations.



Unsupported configurations

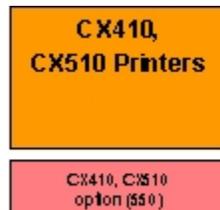
These configurations are invalid and would result to an **Invalid Input Config** error on a CX310, CX410, or CX510 printer, or **Too Many Trays Attached** error on a C544n or C544dn printer.



Unclaimed configuration

This configuration is not supported and unclaimed, though the printer may not declare an error. This configuration is functional but is not a valid configuration.

Warning—Potential Damage: The engine code and the options are not designed and tested thoroughly on this configuration. This could result to unpredictable printer operation.



Appendix C: Theory of operation

- “Paper path and transport components” on page 352
- “Print engine theory” on page 355
- “ADF theory” on page 359
- “Color theory” on page 361

Paper path and transport components

- “Paper path information” on page 352
- “Transport components” on page 353
- “Bubble sensors” on page 353
- “Duplexing” on page 354

For an image to be printed, the paper or specialty media has to be moved from an input source (such as a tray) into the printer and eventually exit into an output source.

The most important component in this process is this paper itself. Old, damaged, or out-of-specification paper can and will cause feed and transport problems. If you encounter problems, you should always check the paper first. See “Media guidelines” on page 20. In addition, it is always good practice to check the printer and driver settings to see if the paper being used matches the user’s settings. It is not uncommon to find a user printing on cardstock with the printer programmed to print on a plain paper setting.

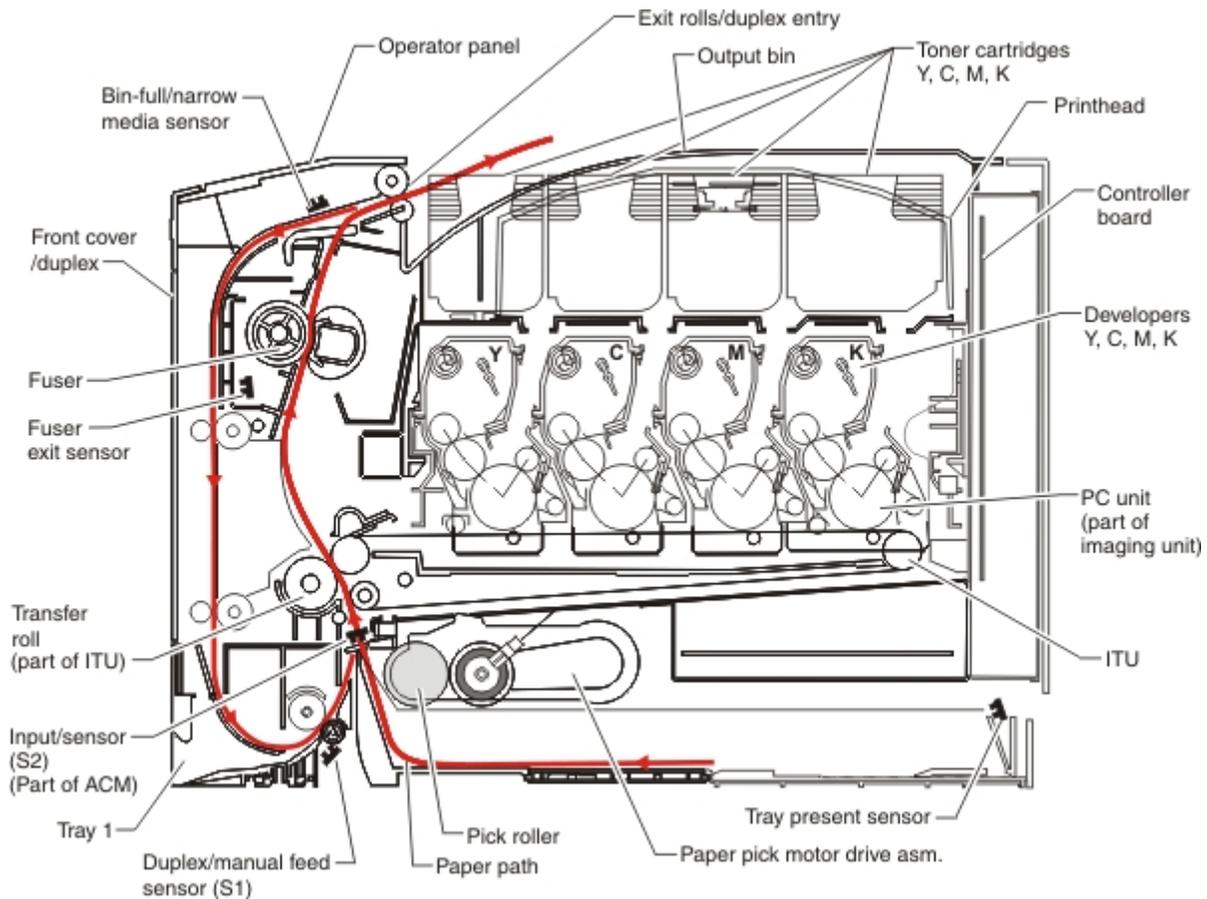
The printer’s feed and transport components can fail and cause paper jams or other feed and transport problems. These components should be examined for damage or wear and replaced if necessary.

Paper path information

The printer has a simple C-shaped paper path. The tray 1 paper is shown in red and the optional 650-sheet Duo Drawer paper path is not shown.

Paper is fed from the rear of the printer and travels upward through the front cover.

There is a duplex unit on the printers. The duplex unit is built into the front cover and Tray 1.



Note: The ACM is also known as the paper feed roller assembly.

Transport components

The paper is fed from the tray into the printer by a pick roll and sent to two sets of feed rollers which time the paper to enter the Electrophotographic Process (EP Process) at just the right moment. The feed rollers push the paper to the transfer module where the image is transferred to the page.

The transfer roller moves the paper to the fuser where heat and pressure are applied to the page. The fuser rollers push the paper toward the exit bin and past the exit sensor. The exit rollers guide the paper into the output bin.

Note: If the printer posts a paper jam message but no paper is found, paper dust or paper particles may have fallen into one of the sensor eyes. Use a can of compressed air to gently clean the sensor.

Bubble sensors

The printer uses two bubble sensors to adjust the speed of the fuser motor to better avoid image smearing and paper jams.

The fuser bubble sensor, located before the fuser in the paper path, senses the bubble, or amount of curve in the paper, when it hits the fuser rollers. If the curve is too great, the fuser motor speeds up to avoid causing a paper jam. If the curve is too small, the motor slows to avoid smearing the image.

The redrive bubble sensor, located before the fuser exit rollers in the paper path, senses the bubble in the paper as it exits the fuser. It then adjusts the fuser motor speed as necessary to avoid jams and smearing on the trailing edge of the paper.

Duplexing

Printers with duplex support use a secondary paper path to print on the second side of a sheet of paper. The duplexing process is summarized as follows:

After the first side of the paper is printed and the trailing edge of the paper clears the fuser exit sensor, the fuser motor engages to reverse the paper direction and feed it into the duplex unit. The pick motor also reverses. The pick motor drives the duplex aligner rolls (A), which push the media down to the bottom turnaround in the paper tray and gate aligner (B).

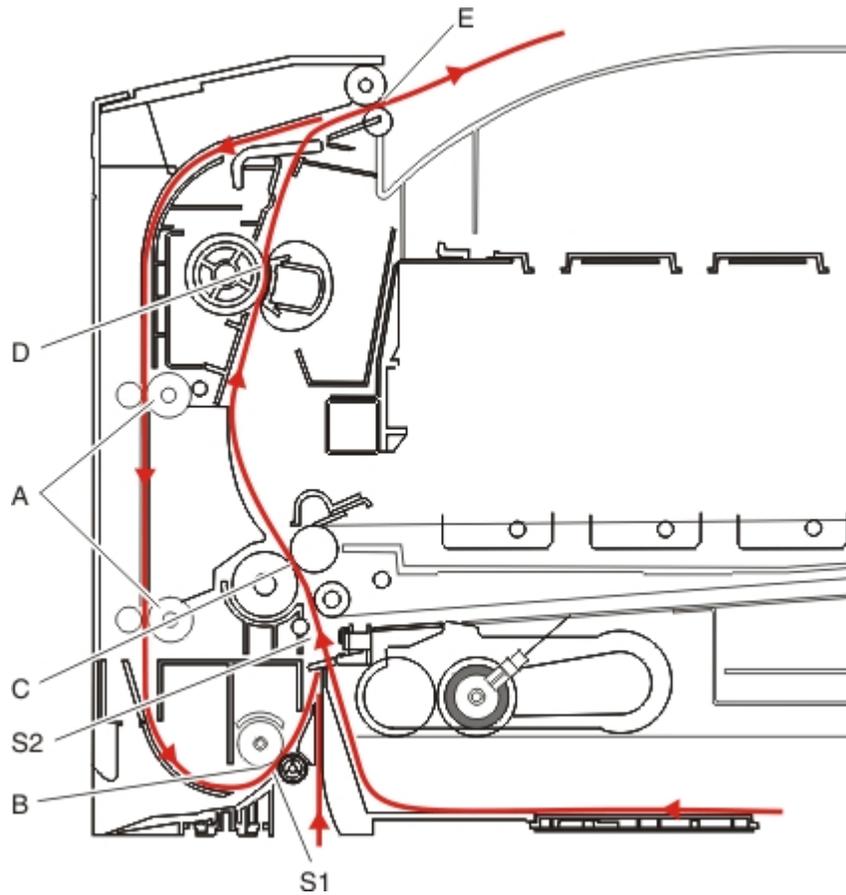
Note: While the sheet is being transported through the duplex unit, it is the only piece of paper being processed by the print engine. A user should not attempt to insert a piece of paper into the manual paper feed while a duplex job is being processed. This would cause a paper jam error.

When the trailing edge of the media clears the fuser, the fuser engine rotates forward to prepare the fuser for the page traveling through the duplex unit.

As the media reaches the gate aligner, a sensor (S1) is triggered, indicating the presence of the leading edge.

When the S1 sensor is triggered, the paper continues to the (S2) sensor. When the S2 signal is detected, the speed of the pick motor is adjusted to accommodate the speed of the transfer belt, ensuring the proper registration of the image on the media. The paper travels to the transfer module (C), and the second image is transferred to the reverse side of the media.

Once the image is transferred, the media travels to the fuser (D), the fuser exit rolls (E), and then to the output bin.



Print engine theory

- “Electrophotographic process (EP process)” on page 355
- “Electrophotographic process basics” on page 355

Electrophotographic process (EP process)

The method that all laser and LED printers use to print is called the electrophotographic process. These machines use differences in charge to manipulate and move toner from the print cartridge to the printed page.

Even though the basic EP Process is the same for every laser and LED printer, the specifics for each printer are different.

Electrophotographic process basics

This printer is a single-laser printer that use four print cartridges (cyan, yellow, magenta, and black) to create text and images on paper.

The printer has four photoconductors (sometimes called a photodeveloper cartridge or PC unit) built into the print cartridges and an image transfer unit (ITU). Each color toner is painted to its respective photoconductor at the same time. The transfer belt passes under the four photoconductors and the four-color image is produced and transferred to the paper in one pass.

During the printing process, the printer follows the six basic EP Process steps to create its output to the page.

- 1 Charge the photoconductor.
- 2 Expose the photoconductor with the laser.
- 3 Develop toner on the photoconductor.
- 4 First transfer to the ITU, and second transfer to the paper.
- 5 Fuse the toner to the paper.
- 6 Clean/erase the photoconductor and the ITU.

In summary, the printer's controller board receives print data and the command to print. The controller board then initiates the print process. The controller board is the command center for the EP process and coordinates the various motors and signals.

The high-voltage power supply (HVPS) sends charge to various components in the EP process. The laser fires on the photoconductors and alters the surface charge relative to the planed image for each photoconductor. Each photoconductor rotates past its respective developer roll, and toner is developed on the surface of each photoconductor. The four separate color images are then transferred to the transfer belt on the ITU as it passes under the photoconductors. After the image is transferred to the transfer belt, the photoconductors are cleaned and recharged.

The transfer belt carries the four-colored image towards the transfer rolls. Paper is picked up from the tray and carried to the transfer roll where the image is transferred from the transfer belt to the paper. The timing of the paper pick is determined by the speed of the transfer belt.

The paper is carried to the fuser rollers where heat and pressure are applied to the page to permanently bond the toner to the page. The fuser rollers push the paper into the output bin. The transfer unit is cleaned and the process begins again for the next page.

Step 1: Charge

During the charge step, voltage is sent from the HVPS to the charge roller beside each of the four photoconductors. In this printer, the charge roll is part of the photoconductor unit in the print cartridges.

The charge roller puts a uniform negative charge over the entire surface of the photoconductor to prepare it for the laser beam.

Service tips

- If the surface of the charge roller is damaged (such as a nick or pit), it will cause the charge on the photoconductor to be uneven. This will cause a repeating mark on the printed page. Check the service manual for the repeating marks table.
- If the charge roller is severely damaged, the surface of the photoconductor will not be properly charged and heavy amounts of toner will be deposited on the photoconductor. This will cause the printed page to be saturated with 100% of each color. The imaging basket will need to be replaced sooner.

Step 2: Expose

During the expose step, the laser fires a focused beam of light at the surface of each photoconductor and writes an invisible image, called a latent image or electrostatic image, for each color.

The laser beam only discharges the surface where the beam hits the photoconductor. This creates a difference in charge potential between the exposed area and the rest of the photoconductor surface.

Service tips

- The laser beam passes through a glass lens as it exits the laser unit. If this lens gets contaminated with toner or other debris, it will cause vertical streaking of white/lightness on the page. Cleaning the lens will solve the problem.
- Never touch the surface of the photoconductor with your bare hand. The oil from your skin may cause a charge differential on the surface, and toner will not properly stick. The result would be repeating blotches of voids/light print on a page. Then the photoconductor will have to be replaced.
- The surface of the photoconductor is coated with an organic substance that makes it sensitive to light. Be sure to cover the photoconductor when you are working on the printer so you don't "burn" it. If exposed to light for too long, it will cause light/dark print quality problems and will have to be replaced.

Step 3: Develop

When the laser exposes the photoconductor, the HVPS sends charge to the developer roll. For each color, the print cartridge engages the photoconductor so it is in contact with the surface. Because of the charge difference between the toner on the developer roller and the electrostatic image created by the laser, the toner is attracted to areas of the photoconductor surface exposed by the laser.

This process would be similar to using glue to write on a can and then rolling it over glitter. The glitter sticks to the glue but won't stick to the rest of the can.

Service tips

- Never touch the surface of the developer roller with your bare hand. The oil from your skin may cause a charge differential on the surface, and toner will not stick properly. The result would be repeating blotches of voids/light print on a page. Then the affected cartridge will have to be replaced.
- If the developer roller is damaged, it will not contact the surface of the photoconductor properly. The result could be repeating marks, thin vertical voids, or thin vertical lines of color on the printed page. Check the surface of the developer for damage.

Step 4a: First transfer

When the latent images are developed on each Photoconductor, the HVPS sends voltage to the 1st Transfer Rollers inside the ITU.

The charge difference between the developed toner image on the Photoconductor surface and the 1st Transfer Roller causes the images to transfer to the surface of the ITU belt for each color. This takes place by a direct surface-to-surface contact between the Photoconductors and the ITU transfer belt.

Service tips

- Never touch the surface of the ITU belt with your bare hand. The oil from your skin will cause a charge differential on the surface, and toner will not stick properly. The result would be repeating blotches of voids/light print on a page. Then the ITU belt will have to be replaced.
- Do not use solvents or other cleaners to clean the ITU belt surface. No matter how careful you are, the surface will be compromised, causing scratches or a charge differential that will produce voids or light blotches on the printed page. Then the ITU belt will need to be replaced.

Step 4b: Second transfer

When the four planes of color are transferred to the transfer belt from the photoconductors, the image is carried toward the transfer roll, which is also part of the ITU. Based on the speed of the transfer belt, the proper time to send the signal to pick the paper from an input source is determined. The pick is timed so that the paper passes between the transfer belt and transfer roll when the image on the belt reaches the second transfer area.

The HVPS sends voltage to the transfer roll to create a positive charge. When the image on the transfer belt reaches the transfer roll, the negatively charged toner clings to the paper and the entire image is transferred from the transfer belt to the paper.

Service tips

- If the transfer roller has nicks, pits, or flat spots on it, the surface doesn't come into contact with the paper and transfer unit. This will cause voids or light spots on the page or repeating voids/light areas.
- If the transfer roller does not engage the transfer unit, or does not have voltage coming from the HVPS, the toner will not fully transfer from the transfer unit; the entire page will be very light or blank. Any toner that does transfer will be due to a "contact" transfer instead of a "charge" transfer. Check the HVPS contacts to the transfer roller.

Step 5: Fuse

When the image has been fully transferred to the paper, the transfer roll helps move the paper into the fuser area.

The fuser applies heat and pressure to the page to melt the toner particles and bond them permanently to the paper. The fuser moves the paper to the redrive rolls which move the paper to the output bin.

Service tips

- If the fuser rollers are damaged, they can cause toner to be pulled off the page or cause paper jams.
- Toner that rubs off a printed page can be a sign of a malfunctioning fuser or an improper paper setting. Always check the paper type setting before replacing the fuser. A common mistake is to print on heavier media (such as cardstock) with the paper type set to plain paper.
- When removing paper jams from the fuser, be sure to use the fuser release tabs to relieve the pressure on the page. In addition, never pull unfused toner through the fuser if you can help it; try to back the jammed page out of the fuser in the opposite direction it was travelling.

Step 6: Clean/Erase

There are two main cleaning processes that take place during the EP Process. One process cleans the transfer belt, and the other cleans the photoconductors.

Transfer unit clean

When the toner image on the transfer belt has been transferred to the page, the transfer belt rotates around and is cleaned by the cleaning blade (G). This occurs for every page that is printed.

After the toner is moved to the cleaning blade, the toner is moved to the waste toner area using an auger system.

Photoconductor clean/erase

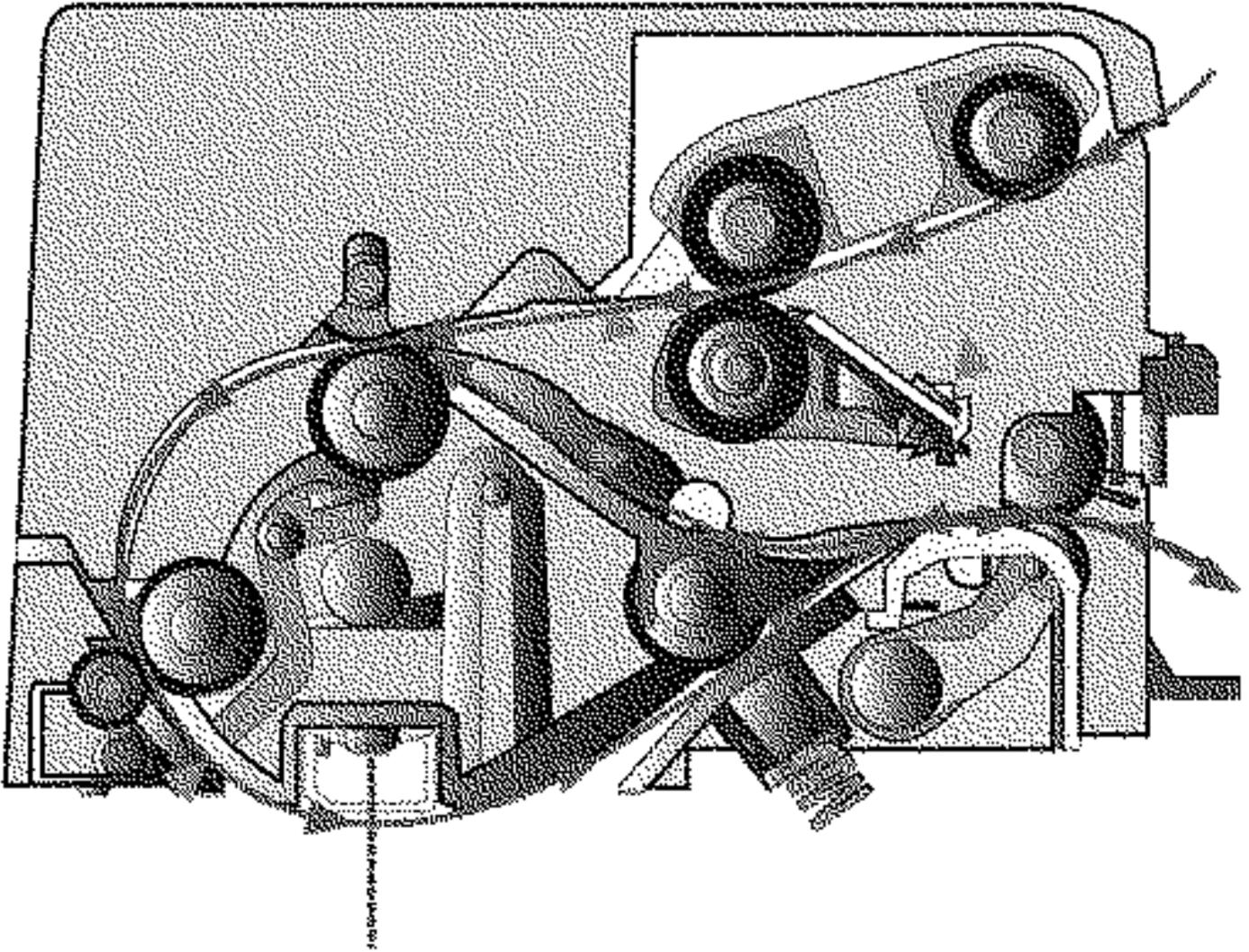
After each plane of color has been transferred to the transfer belt from the photoconductors, a cleaning blade (H) scrapes the remaining toner from the surface of each photoconductor. This is the clean/erase process.

Now the photoconductor surface is prepared to restart the EP Process. This cleaning/erasing cycle happens after each plane of color is transferred to the transfer belt.

ADF theory

ADF theory of operation

ADF cross section



ADF cross section

1	Document sensor
2	Pickup roller
3	Separator roller
4	Stage and interval sensors
5	Paperfeed 1 roller
6	Paperfeed 2 roller
7	Feed sensor

8	Scan area
9	Duplex sensor
10	Eject 2 roll
11	Exit roller

The duplex ADF enables the user to create duplex scans automatically, eliminating the need to stop the scanning process to flip the media being duplicated over. The ADF uses DC motors with encoder wheels, and a series of sensors to determine the media's position in the paper path during the scan process. The following steps are performed in creating a duplex scan on the duplex ADF:

Note: The simplex ADF uses only one motor for all paper transport functions, and does not have de-skew capabilities. The scanner control unit, on the controller board receives a command to create a scan, fax, or copy.

- 1** The scanner control unit, on the controller board receives a command to create a scan, fax, or copy.
- 2** A signal is sent to the ADF to poll the document sensor (1) to check if the media to be scanned is in the correct position. The media must be placed in the ADF input tray so it actuates the document sensor. If the ADF document sensor isn't actuated, a flatbed scan is run by default.
- 3** If the media has actuated the document sensor, then an ADF scan is executed. At this point the pickup roller (2) on the pick arm assembly drops and advances the paper into the ADF. To minimize the possibility of multiple sheets being fed, a counter rotating separator roll (3) is used. After passing through pick assembly, the media actuates the stage and interval sensors (4). Actuating these sensors determines that this will be the first side of the document to be scanned.
- 4** In addition the stage sensors are used to determine and correct document skew if it is present. If the stage sensors are actuated at different times, then the paper is slowly fed to the paper feed 1 roller. The feed motor encoder wheel count tracks the paper location in the paper path.
- 5** When the paper reaches the paper feed 1 roller (5), the stationary state of the paper feed 1 roller acts as a registration roll, causing the paper to de-skew.
- 6** When the encoder count reaches a certain count, the paper feed 1 roller advances the now de-skewed paper to the paper feed 2 roller (6) and the feed sensor (7). If the paper does not actuate the feed sensor before a certain encoder count is attained, a paper jam error is generated.
- 7** When the feed sensor is actuated the paper advances to the scan area (8). While the paper is advancing to the scan area, the DC motor encoder generates a count which is stored in an on-board counter. These counts along with the feed sensor ensure that the media is travelling at the correct speed through the scan area. The speed the document travels through the ADF scan area is dependent on the image DPI specified by the user.
- 8** After a predetermined number of counts, the media reaches the scan area and the image acquisition process is initiated. While the image acquisition process is executing, the feed sensor is being polled to determine if the trailing edge of the media has reached the sensor.
- 9** Once the trailing edge of the scan media has reached the feed sensor, that sensor goes to the off position. After the feed sensor is switched off, the image acquisition process continues for a predetermined length of time.
- 10** When the image acquisition process is completed, the trailing edge of the media continues to the reverse point. If the scan job is simplex, then the media continues to the exit roller (11) and exits the ADF.
- 11** If the scan job is a duplex scan job, then the feed motor is reversed with a swing gear when the trailing edge of the media reaches the reverse point. A swing gear moves the diverter gate to the down position.

- 12 The reversed exit roll (10) pulls the paper back into the ADF. The eject 2 roll then moves the media to the duplex sensor. When the duplex sensor (9) is actuated, the exit roll stops. Also, the duplex sensor indicates that this is the second side of the media to be scanned.
- 13 After actuating the duplex sensor, eject2 roll moves the media to the paper feed 1 roll, and the feed sensor. Like the first pass of the media, the image acquisition process is repeated for the second side of the media.
- 14 When the trailing edge of the media reaches the reverse point the second time, the swing gear again moves the diverter gate to the down position and the exit roll reverses. The paper goes back into the ADF unit for a third time. The paper passes through the paper path, but no imaging occurs. This pass is to turn the paper over to the original side up. On the third pass of the media trailing edge over the reverse point, the eject two roller does not reverse and the paper passes out of the ADF.

Color theory

- “Color theory” on page 361

Color theory

What is RGB color?

Red, green, and blue light can be added together in various amounts to produce a large range of colors observed in nature. For example, red and green can be combined to create yellow. Televisions and computer monitors create colors in this manner. RGB color is a method of describing colors by indicating the amount of red, green, or blue needed to produce a certain color.

What is CMYK color?

Cyan, magenta, yellow, and black inks or toners can be printed in various amounts to produce a large range of colors observed in nature. For example, cyan and yellow can be combined to create green. Printing presses, inkjet printers, and color laser printers create colors in this manner. CMYK color is a method of describing colors by indicating the amount of cyan, magenta, yellow, and black needed to reproduce a particular color.

How is color specified in a document to be printed?

Software programs typically specify document color using RGB or CMYK color combinations. Additionally, they allow users to modify the color of each object in a document. For more information, see the software program Help topics.

How does the printer know what color to print?

When a user prints a document, information describing the type and color of each object is sent to the printer. The color information is passed through color conversion tables that translate the color into the appropriate amounts of cyan, magenta, yellow, and black toner needed to produce the desired color. The object information determines the application of color conversion tables. For example, it is possible to apply one type of color conversion table to text while applying a different color conversion table to photographic images.

Should I use PostScript or PCL emulation? What settings produce the best color?

The PostScript driver is strongly recommended for best color quality. The default settings in the PostScript driver provide the preferred color quality for the majority of printouts.

Why doesn't the printed color match the color I see on the computer screen?

The color conversion tables used in Auto Color Correction mode generally approximate the colors of a standard computer monitor. However, because of technology differences that exist between printers and monitors, there are many colors that can also be affected by monitor variations and lighting conditions.

The printed page appears tinted. Can I adjust the color?

Sometimes a printed page may appear tinted (for example, everything printed seems to be too red). This can be caused by environmental conditions, paper type, lighting conditions, or user preference. In these instances, adjust the Color Balance setting to create a more preferable color. Color Balance provides the user with the ability to make subtle adjustments to the amount of toner being used in each color plane. Selecting positive or negative values for cyan, magenta, yellow, and black (from the Color Balance menu) will slightly increase or decrease the amount of toner used for the chosen color. For example, if a printed page has a red tint, then decreasing both magenta and yellow could potentially improve the color balance.

My color transparencies seem dark when they are projected. Is there anything I can do to improve the color?

This problem most commonly occurs when projecting transparencies with reflective overhead projectors. To obtain the highest projected color quality, transmissive overhead projectors are recommended. If a reflective projector must be used, then adjusting the Toner Darkness setting to 1, 2, or 3 will lighten the transparency. Make sure to print on the recommended type of color transparencies.

What is manual color correction?

When manual color correction is enabled, the printer employs user-selected color conversion tables to process objects. However, Color Correction must be set to Manual, or no user-defined color conversion will be implemented. Manual color correction settings are specific to the type of object being printed (text, graphics, or images), and how the color of the object is specified in the software program (RGB or CMYK combinations).

Notes:

- Manual color correction is not useful if the software program does not specify colors with RGB or CMYK combinations. It is also not effective in situations in which the software program or the computer operating system controls the adjustment of colors.
- The color conversion tables—applied to each object when Color Correction is set to Auto—generate preferred colors for the majority of documents.

To manually apply a different color conversion table:

- 1 Press **Menu** to open the Admin menus.
- 2 Select **Settings**, and press **Select**.
- 3 Select **Quality**, and press **Select**.
- 4 Select **Color Correction**, and press **Select**.
- 5 Select **Manual**, and press **Select**.
The printer is in manual mode, and you need to select a color conversion table.
- 6 Press **Back** to return to the Quality menu, select **Manual Color**, and press **Select**.
- 7 Select the appropriate color conversion table for the affected object type.

Color conversion tables

Object type	Color conversion tables
RGB Image RGB Text RGB Graphics	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Vivid—Produces brighter, more saturated colors and may be applied to all incoming color formats. • sRGB Display—Produces an output that approximates the colors displayed on a computer monitor. Black toner usage is optimized for printing photographs. • Display—True Black—Produces an output that approximates the colors displayed on a computer monitor. Uses only black toner to create all levels of neutral gray. • sRGB Vivid—Provides an increased color saturation for the sRGB Display color correction. Black usage is optimized for printing business graphics. • Off—No color correction is implemented.
CMYK Image CMYK Text CMYK Graphics	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • US CMYK—Applies color correction to approximate the SWOP (Specifications for Web Offset Publishing) color output. • Euro CMYK—Applies color correction to approximate EuroScale color output. • Vivid CMYK—Increases the color saturation of the US CMYK color correction setting. • Off—No color correction is implemented.

How can I match a particular color (such as a corporate logo)?

From the printer Quality menu, nine types of Color Samples sets are available. These are also available from the Color Samples page of the Embedded Web Server. Selecting any sample set generates a multiple-page printout consisting of hundreds of colored boxes. Either a CMYK or RGB combination is located on each box, depending on the table selected. The observed color of each box is obtained by passing the CMYK or RGB combination labelled on the box through the selected color conversion table.

To print Color samples from the printer:

- 1 Press **Menu** to open the Admin menus.
- 2 Select **Settings**, and press **Select**.
- 3 Select **Quality**, and press **Select**.
- 4 Select **Color Samples**, and press **Select**.
- 5 Select the **Color Conversion** table to print, and press **Select**.

By examining Color Samples sets, a user can identify the box whose color is the closest to the desired color. The color combination labelled on the box can then be used for modifying the color of the object in a software program. For more information, see the software program Help topics. Manual color correction may be necessary to utilize the selected color conversion table for the particular object.

Selecting which Color Samples set to use for a particular color-matching problem depends on the Color Correction setting being used (Auto, Off, or Manual), the type of object being printed (text, graphics, or images), and how the color of the object is specified in the software program (RGB or CMYK combinations). When the printer Color Correction setting is set to Off, the color is based on the print job information; and no color conversion is implemented.

Note: The Color Samples pages are not useful if the software program does not specify colors with RGB or CMYK combinations. Additionally, certain situations exist in which the software program or the computer operating system adjusts the RGB or CMYK combinations specified in the program through color management. The resulting printed color may not be an exact match of the Color Samples pages.

What are detailed Color Samples and how do I access them?

Detailed Color Samples sets are available only through the Embedded Web Server of a network printer. A detailed Color Samples set contains a range of shades (displayed as colored boxes) that are similar to a user-defined RGB or CMYK value. The likeness of the colors in the set are dependent on the value entered in the RGB or CMYK Increment box.

To access a detailed Color Samples set from the Embedded Web Server:

- 1 Open a Web browser.
- 2 In the address bar, type the network printer IP address.
- 3 Click **Configuration**.
- 4 Click **Color Samples**.
- 5 Click **Detailed Options** to narrow the set to one color range.
- 6 When the Detailed Options page appears, select a color conversion table.
- 7 Enter the RGB or CMYK color number.
- 8 Enter an Increment value from 1–255.
Note: The closer the value is to 1, the narrower the color sample range will appear.
- 9 Click **Print** to print the detailed Color Samples set.

Appendix D: Acronyms

Acronyms

ASIC	Application-Specific Integrated Circuit
BLDC	Brushless DC Motor
BOR	Black Only Retract
C	Cyan
CCD	Charge Coupled Device
CCP	Carbonless Copy Paper
CRC	Cyclic Redundancy Check
CSU	Customer Setup
DIMM	Dual Inline Memory Module
DRAM	Dynamic Random Access Memory
EDO	Enhanced Data Out
EP	Electrophotographic Process
EPROM	Erasable Programmable Read-Only Memory
ESD	Electrostatic Discharge
FRU	Field Replaceable Unit
GB	Gigabyte
HCF	High-Capacity Feeder
HCIT	High-Capacity Input Tray
HCOF	High-Capacity Output Finisher
HVPS	High Voltage Power Supply
ITU	Image Transfer Unit
K	Black
LCD	Liquid Crystal Display
LDAP	Lightweight Directory Access Protocol
LED	Light-Emitting Diode
LVPS	Low Voltage Power Supply
M	Magenta
MB	Megabyte
MFP	Multi-Function Printer
MPF	Multipurpose Feeder
MROM	Masked Read Only Memory
MS	Microswitch

NVM	Nonvolatile Memory
NVRAM	Nonvolatile Random Access Memory
OEM	Original Equipment Manufacturer
OPT	Optical Sensor
PC	Photoconductor
pel, pixel	Picture element
POR	Power-On Reset
POST	Power-On Self Test
PSD	Position Sensing Device
PWM	Pulse Width Modulation
RIP	Raster Imaging Processor
ROM	Read Only Memory
SDRAM	Synchronous Dual Random Access Memory
SIMM	Single Inline Memory Module
SRAM	Static Random Access Memory
TPS	Toner Patch Sensing
UICC	User Interface Controller Card
UPR	Used Parts Return
V ac	Volts alternating current
V dc	Volts direct current
VTB	Vacuum Transport Belt
Y	Yellow

Index

D

diagnostics 0

E

error codes 0

W

wiring diagrams 0

Part number index

P/N	Part name	Page
3049485	Field relocation package assembly.....	341
40X0259	Power cord, 2.5 m (straight): Brazil.....	335
40X0271	Power cord, 2.5 m (straight): United Kingdom.....	335
40X0273	Power cord, 2.5 m (straight): Chile, Uruguay, Italy.....	335
40X0275	Power cord, 2.5 m (straight): Israel.....	335
40X0288	Power cord, 2.5 m (straight): Argentina.....	335
40X0301	Power cord, 2.5 m (straight): Australia.....	335
40X0303	Power cord, 2.5 m (straight): PRC.....	335
40X0411	Narrow media flag.....	326
40X1368	USB Cable, packaged (2 m).....	341
40X1455	64MB Flash card memory.....	341
40X1766	Power cord, 2.5 m (straight): USA, Canada, Bolivia, Peru (shown).....	335
40X1772	Power cord, 2.5 m (straight): Switzerland.....	335
40X1773	Power cord, 2.5 m (straight): South Africa.....	335
40X1774	Power cord, 2.5 m (straight): Denmark.....	335
40X1791	Power cord, 2.5 m (straight): Taiwan.....	335
40X1792	Power cord, 2.5 m (straight): Korea.....	335
40X2252	Redrive spacer screws.....	324
40X3141	Power cord, 2.5 m (straight): Paraguay.....	335
40X3609	Power cord, 2.5 m (straight): Japan.....	335
40X5168	Pick tires.....	322, 340
40X5413	Fuser exit sensor.....	334
40X5414	Toner density sensors, left or right (one in package).....	338
40X5429	Transfer module paper path thermistor.....	338
40X5480	USB cable (CX510).....	330
40X5480	USB thumbdrive cable (CX510).....	324
40X5490	Front middle cover.....	322
40X5872	Bin full flag.....	324
40X6243	Flatbed cushion.....	324
40X6247	Simplex separator pad assembly.....	324
40X6517	Speaker.....	331, 335
40X7046	Waste toner bottle sensor.....	338

P/N	Part name	Page
40X7060	Wireless print server (external).....	341
40X7116	Display (CX410).....	331
40X7229	Power cord, 2.5 m (straight): India.....	335
40X7301	Photo sensor and retainer.....	334
40X7610	Transfer module.....	326
40X7614	Paper pick motor drive assembly.....	326
40X7615	115 V maintenance kit.....	327
40X7615	115 V Maintenance kit (fuser, transfer module, duplex reference edge).....	341
40X7616	230 V maintenance kit.....	327
40X7616	230 V Maintenance kit (fuser, transfer module, duplex reference edge).....	341
40X7617	100 V maintenance kit.....	327
40X7617	100 V Maintenance kit (fuser, transfer module, duplex reference edge).....	341
40X7618	Front and right side interlock switch cover assembly.....	338
40X7620	Toner meter cycle card assembly.....	334
40X7622	Fuser assembly, 110 V.....	326
40X7623	Fuser assembly, 220 V.....	326
40X7624	Fuser assembly, 100 V.....	326
40X7625	High-voltage power supply.....	334
40X7626	Low-voltage power supply (universal power supply).....	334
40X7627	Printhead.....	326
40X7628	Main gear drive assembly with motors.....	326
40X7629	Fuser drive motor assembly.....	326
40X7632	Left cover.....	322
40X7634	System fan.....	322
40X7636	Toner cartridge contacts (Pogo pin).....	338
40X7645	250-sheet tray assembly.....	322
40X7646	Lower left frame and lower right frame with cable cover.....	326
40X7647	Cable packet.....	338
40X7648	Screw packet.....	326
40X7652	Spring packet.....	326
40X7800	Operator panel assembly (CX410).....	330
40X7801	Front cover.....	322
40X7802	Toner AIO cover.....	322
40X7803	Operator panel bezel (CX410).....	331

P/N	Part name	Page
40X7804	Controller board, CX310.....	334
40X7805	Controller board, CX410.....	334
40X7806	Controller board, CX510.....	334
40X7807	Operator panel assembly (CX310).....	330
40X7808	Front logo cover (CX310, CX410).....	331
40X7809	Top cover assembly (includes fan).....	322
40X7810	Back AIO cable cover.....	322
40X7811	Output bin tray.....	322
40X7812	Media bail.....	322
40X7813	AIO cables.....	335
40X7814	Rear cover, CX510.....	322
40X7815	Operator panel assembly (CX510).....	330
40X7816	Front logo cover (CX510).....	331
40X7817	Operator panel bezel (CX310).....	331
40X7818	Bezel (CX510).....	330
40X7819	Right scanner cover.....	324
40X7820	Left scanner cover.....	324
40X7821	Display and PCBA (CX310).....	331
40X7822	Flatbed pivot link (front left).....	324
40X7823	Right AIO cover.....	322
40X7824	AIO link.....	322
40X7827	AIO release lever with spring.....	324
40X7828	Cable (interface card to UICC).....	330
40X7829	Flatbed scanner assembly.....	324
40X7830	Duplex ADF assembly.....	324
40X7831	Simplex ADF assembly.....	324
40X7832	Screw packet.....	326
40X7833	Redrive assembly.....	324
40X7834	Flatbed pivot link (rear right).....	324
40X7835	Operator panel cable, CX310.....	338
40X7835	UICC to controller board (CX310, CX410).....	330
40X7836	USB cable (CX410).....	330
40X7836	USB thumbdrive cable (CX410).....	324
40X7837	UICC to controller board (CX510).....	330

P/N	Part name	Page
40X7838	Upper front cover (CX510).....	330
40X7839	Upper front cover (CX310, CX410).....	331
40X7840	User interface support bracket (CX310, CX410).....	331
40X7841	User interface support bracket (CX510).....	331
40X7842	Simplex top cover assembly.....	324
40X7843	Duplex ADF top cover assembly.....	324
40X7845	Rear cover, CX310.....	322
40X7846	Rear cover, CX410.....	322
40X7852	N/A.....	335
40X7861	Display (CX510).....	330
40X8089	650-sheet drawer.....	322
40X8089	Optional 650-sheet duo drawer (complete) - (includes 100-sheet MPF).....	340
40X8090	Optional 550-sheet drawer (complete) - CX410 and CX510 only.....	340
40X8091	650-sheet Duo Drawer tray assembly.....	340
40X8091	650-sheet tray assembly.....	322
40X8448	Fax interface cable.....	335
40X8555	256MB DDR DRAM DIMM card assembly.....	341
40X8556	Traditional Chinese font card assembly.....	341
40X8557	Simplified Chinese font card assembly.....	341
40X8568	Korean font card assembly.....	341
40X8569	Japanese font card assembly.....	341
40X8670	Printhead-to-controller board cable.....	338
40X9054	ADF input tray.....	324
40X9108	Duplex separator roller assembly.....	324
40X9110	Restraint pad.....	324
40X9114	PCBA (CX410).....	331
40X9115	Interface card (CX510).....	330
40X9130	PCBA MFP UICC (CX510).....	330
N/A	Operator panel cable.....	324

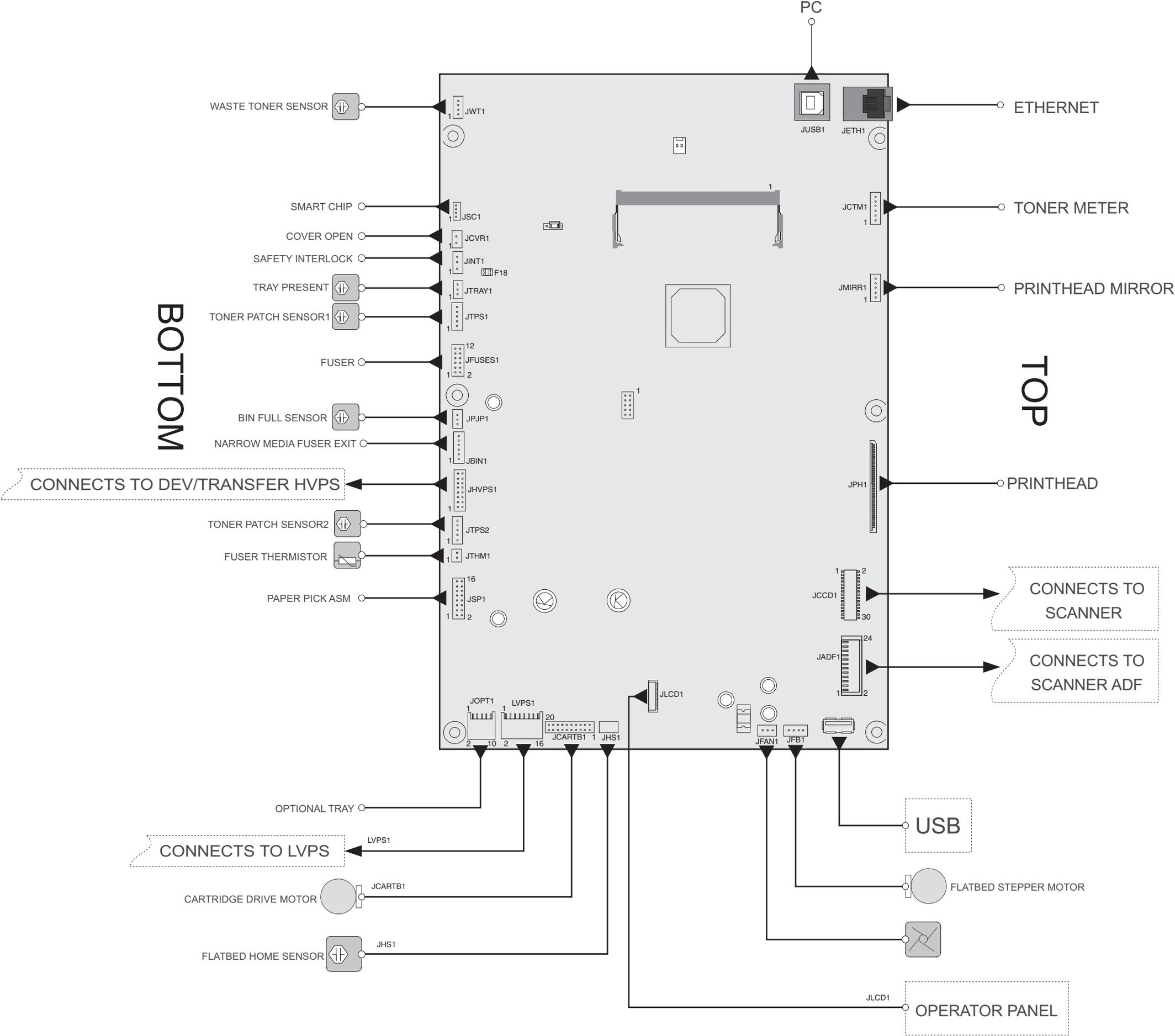
Part name index

P/N	Part name	Page
40X7617	100 V maintenance kit.....	327
40X7617	100 V Maintenance kit (fuser, transfer module, duplex reference edge).....	341
40X7615	115 V maintenance kit.....	327
40X7615	115 V Maintenance kit (fuser, transfer module, duplex reference edge).....	341
40X7616	230 V maintenance kit.....	327
40X7616	230 V Maintenance kit (fuser, transfer module, duplex reference edge).....	341
40X7645	250-sheet tray assembly.....	322
40X8555	256MB DDR DRAM DIMM card assembly.....	341
40X1455	64MB Flash card memory.....	341
40X8089	650-sheet drawer.....	322
40X8091	650-sheet Duo Drawer tray assembly.....	340
40X8091	650-sheet tray assembly.....	322
40X9054	ADF input tray.....	324
40X7813	AIO cables.....	335
40X7824	AIO link.....	322
40X7827	AIO release lever with spring.....	324
40X7810	Back AIO cable cover.....	322
40X7818	Bezel (CX510).....	330
40X5872	Bin full flag.....	324
40X7828	Cable (interface card to UICC).....	330
40X7647	Cable packet.....	338
40X7804	Controller board, CX310.....	334
40X7805	Controller board, CX410.....	334
40X7806	Controller board, CX510.....	334
40X7116	Display (CX410).....	331
40X7861	Display (CX510).....	330
40X7821	Display and PCBA (CX310).....	331
40X7830	Duplex ADF assembly.....	324
40X7843	Duplex ADF top cover assembly.....	324
40X9108	Duplex separator roller assembly.....	324
40X8448	Fax interface cable.....	335
3049485	Field relocation package assembly.....	341

P/N	Part name	Page
40X6243	Flatbed cushion.....	324
40X7822	Flatbed pivot link (front left).....	324
40X7834	Flatbed pivot link (rear right).....	324
40X7829	Flatbed scanner assembly.....	324
40X7618	Front and right side interlock switch cover assembly.....	338
40X7801	Front cover.....	322
40X7808	Front logo cover (CX310, CX410).....	331
40X7816	Front logo cover (CX510).....	331
40X5490	Front middle cover.....	322
40X7624	Fuser assembly, 100 V.....	326
40X7622	Fuser assembly, 110 V.....	326
40X7623	Fuser assembly, 220 V.....	326
40X7629	Fuser drive motor assembly.....	326
40X5413	Fuser exit sensor.....	334
40X7625	High-voltage power supply.....	334
40X9115	Interface card (CX510).....	330
40X8569	Japanese font card assembly.....	341
40X8568	Korean font card assembly.....	341
40X7632	Left cover.....	322
40X7820	Left scanner cover.....	324
40X7646	Lower left frame and lower right frame with cable cover.....	326
40X7626	Low-voltage power supply (universal power supply).....	334
40X7628	Main gear drive assembly with motors.....	326
40X7812	Media bail.....	322
40X7852	N/A.....	335
40X0411	Narrow media flag.....	326
40X7807	Operator panel assembly (CX310).....	330
40X7800	Operator panel assembly (CX410).....	330
40X7815	Operator panel assembly (CX510).....	330
40X7817	Operator panel bezel (CX310).....	331
40X7803	Operator panel bezel (CX410).....	331
N/A	Operator panel cable.....	324
40X7835	Operator panel cable, CX310.....	338
40X8090	Optional 550-sheet drawer (complete) - CX410 and CX510 only.....	340

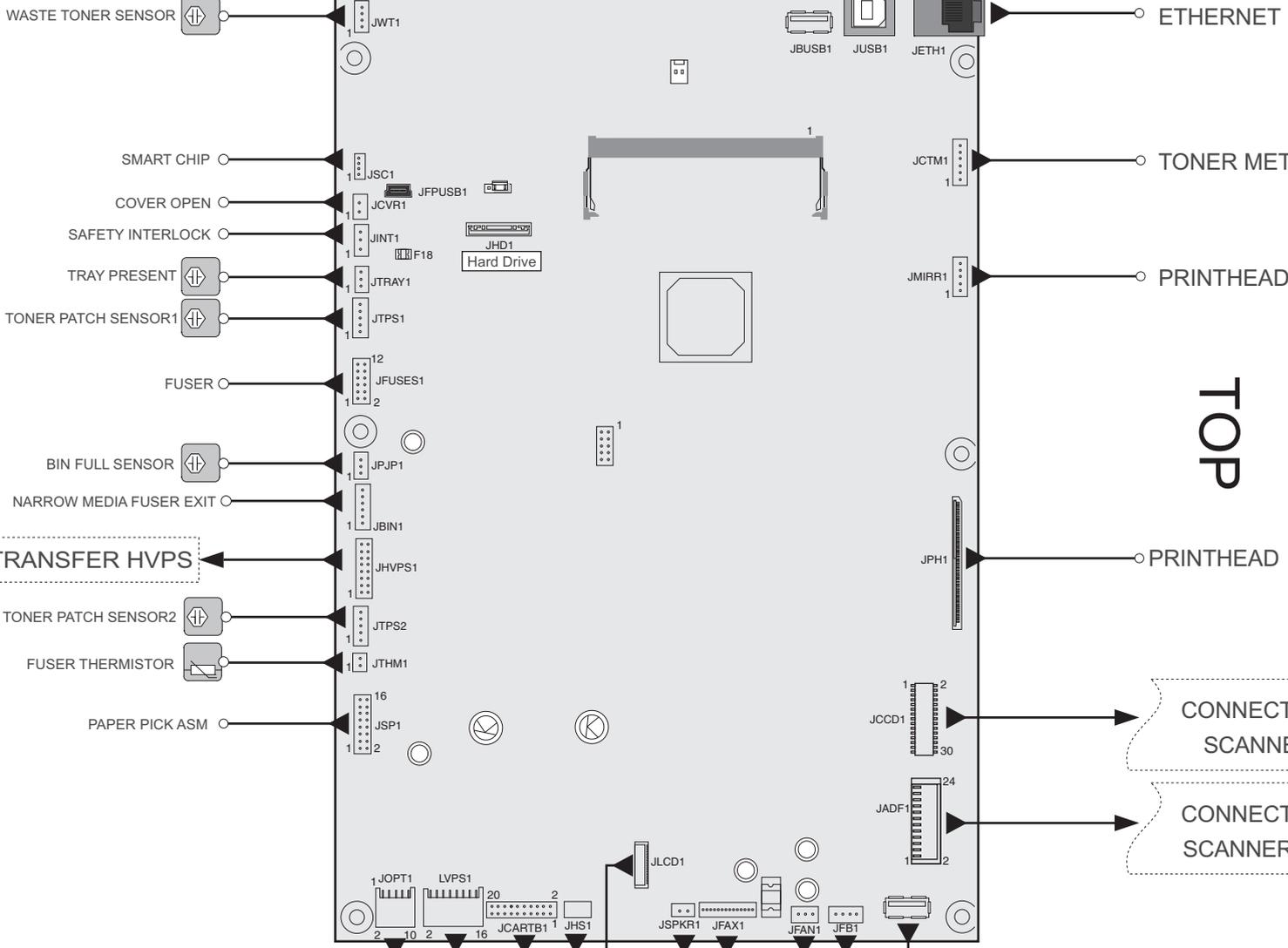
P/N	Part name	Page
40X8089	Optional 650-sheet duo drawer (complete) - (includes 100-sheet MPF).....	340
40X7811	Output bin tray.....	322
40X7614	Paper pick motor drive assembly.....	326
40X9114	PCBA (CX410).....	331
40X9130	PCBA MFP UICC (CX510).....	330
40X7301	Photo sensor and retainer.....	334
40X5168	Pick tires.....	322, 340
40X0288	Power cord, 2.5 m (straight): Argentina.....	335
40X0301	Power cord, 2.5 m (straight): Australia.....	335
40X0259	Power cord, 2.5 m (straight): Brazil.....	335
40X0273	Power cord, 2.5 m (straight): Chile, Uruguay, Italy.....	335
40X1774	Power cord, 2.5 m (straight): Denmark.....	335
40X7229	Power cord, 2.5 m (straight): India.....	335
40X0275	Power cord, 2.5 m (straight): Israel.....	335
40X3609	Power cord, 2.5 m (straight): Japan.....	335
40X1792	Power cord, 2.5 m (straight): Korea.....	335
40X3141	Power cord, 2.5 m (straight): Paraguay.....	335
40X0303	Power cord, 2.5 m (straight): PRC.....	335
40X1773	Power cord, 2.5 m (straight): South Africa.....	335
40X1772	Power cord, 2.5 m (straight): Switzerland.....	335
40X1791	Power cord, 2.5 m (straight): Taiwan.....	335
40X0271	Power cord, 2.5 m (straight): United Kingdom.....	335
40X1766	Power cord, 2.5 m (straight): USA, Canada, Bolivia, Peru (shown).....	335
40X7627	Printhead.....	326
40X8670	Printhead-to-controller board cable.....	338
40X7845	Rear cover, CX310.....	322
40X7846	Rear cover, CX410.....	322
40X7814	Rear cover, CX510.....	322
40X7833	Redrive assembly.....	324
40X2252	Redrive spacer screws.....	324
40X9110	Restraint pad.....	324
40X7823	Right AIO cover.....	322
40X7819	Right scanner cover.....	324
40X7648	Screw packet.....	326

P/N	Part name	Page
40X7832	Screw packet.....	326
40X7831	Simplex ADF assembly.....	324
40X6247	Simplex separator pad assembly.....	324
40X7842	Simplex top cover assembly.....	324
40X8557	Simplified Chinese font card assembly.....	341
40X6517	Speaker.....	331, 335
40X7652	Spring packet.....	326
40X7634	System fan.....	322
40X7802	Toner AIO cover.....	322
40X7636	Toner cartridge contacts (Pogo pin).....	338
40X5414	Toner density sensors, left or right (one in package).....	338
40X7620	Toner meter cycle card assembly.....	334
40X7809	Top cover assembly (includes fan).....	322
40X8556	Traditional Chinese font card assembly.....	341
40X7610	Transfer module.....	326
40X5429	Transfer module paper path thermistor.....	338
40X7835	UICC to controller board (CX310, CX410).....	330
40X7837	UICC to controller board (CX510).....	330
40X7839	Upper front cover (CX310, CX410).....	331
40X7838	Upper front cover (CX510).....	330
40X7836	USB cable (CX410).....	330
40X5480	USB cable (CX510).....	330
40X1368	USB Cable, packaged (2 m).....	341
40X7836	USB thumbdrive cable (CX410).....	324
40X5480	USB thumbdrive cable (CX510).....	324
40X7840	User interface support bracket (CX310, CX410).....	331
40X7841	User interface support bracket (CX510).....	331
40X7046	Waste toner bottle sensor.....	338
40X7060	Wireless print server (external).....	341



BOTTOM

TOP



CONNECTS TO DEV/TRANSFER HVPS

CONNECTS TO SCANNER

CONNECTS TO SCANNER ADF

CONNECTS TO LVPS

USB

CONNECTS TO FAX

SPEAKER

OPERATOR PANEL

